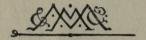


Property of Canadian Committee on Modern Languages on M.A. BUCHAMAN, University of Joronto Preparty of Consignor Son Modern Languages

Con Modern Languages

University of Toronto

MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE FRENCH COURSE IL—SECOND YEAR



MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED LONDON - BOMBAY - CALCUTTA - MADRAS MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
NEW YORK • BOSTON • CHICAGO
DALLAS • SAN FRANCISCO

THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA, Ltd. toronto

LaF.Gn F248 mp.2

MACMILLAN'S

PROGRESSIVE FRENCH COURSE

II.—SECOND YEAR

CONTAINING AN ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR WITH COPIOUS EXERCISES, NOTES, AND VOCABULARIES

BY

GEUGÈNE-FASNACHT

FORMERLY ASSISTANT-MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL
EDITOR OF MACMILLAN'S SERIES OF 'FOREIGN SCHOOL CLASSICS,' AUTHOR OF
MACMILLAN'S 'PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COURSE

232763 20.5.29.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED ST. MARTIN'S STREET, LONDON

COPYRIGHT

First Edition printed 1877

Reprinted 1879; January and June 1880, 1881

New Edition, February 1884; Reprinted December 1884, 1886, 1888, 1889

New Edition 1890, printed by R. & R. CLARK, LIMITED, Edinburgh

Reprinted 1891, 1892, 1893, 1894, 1895, 1896, 1897, 1898, 1899, 1900, 1901, 1902, 1903,

1904, 1905, 1906, 1907, 1908, 1910, 1912, 1915, 1916, 1918

PREFACE TO THE NEW ENLARGED EDITION (1890).

The ever-increasing calls for new Editions of this Class-book, so far from justifying the compiler in resting on his oars, put him under the obligation of bringing it still nearer to the wants of teachers and students—succès oblige.

The fundamental principle underlying the whole Course—theory and practice running in parallel lines throughout—remains unaltered. The order of the Lessons, too, and the colloquial character of the Exercises, having now stood successfully the severe test of twelve years' practical work in hundreds of classrooms, have been left untouched.

In those few points of detail, however, where the subjectmatter clearly seemed to call for more careful and lucid exposition, the pruning hook has been applied with unsparing hand.*

The Appendices have been considerably enlarged—not because it is deemed expedient to burden the pupil's memory with long lists of unusual words (many of which will not be wanted in a lifetime)—but in order to meet the wants of students who have to stand the ordeal of captious Examinations. So long as a candidate's efficiency will be gauged by the sheer memory work of cut-and-dried strings of words and phrases, rather than by a clear understanding of fundamental principles, the Compiler has no alternative but to submit under protest to the stern economic law of "supply and demand."

* §§ 12, IV., 15. Classification of Nouns and Adjectives.

29A. Order of Pers. Pronouns in objective relation.

33, II. Different ways of rendering he, she, it, they.

37. Formation of Adverbs.

Lesson 3. Formation of Adverbs.

Lesson 3. Interrogative Construction.

10 (C. D.) Conditional. 20. Infinitive.

43. Construction of il faut.

85-95. Ten Exercises added, for practice on the Syntax of Prepositions.

NICES OF THE NEW CONTRACTOR MANAGEMENT

or product to the term that you are do not produce on the second of the

The property of the property o

Total particular of the properties of the particular of the partic

The state of the s

CONTENTS

N.B.—The Sections and Exercises marked † are those added in the enlarged Edition (1890).

	THE VERB.							
SECT			PAGE					
1.	A. Classification of Verbs		1					
	B. Formation of Tenses		. 2-3					
	C. Auxiliary Verb Avoir		4-5					
	D. Auxiliary Verb Etre	a (. 6-7					
0	7 D C							
2.	THE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS							
	I. Simple Tenses		8-11					
	II. Compound Tenses III. Interrogative Form of Conjugation IV. Negative V. Interrogative-Negative Form		12-13					
	III. Interrogative Form of Conjugation	r .	. 14					
	IV. Negative,		14					
	V. Interrogative-Negative Form		. 15					
3.	Peculiarities of Regular Verbs		16-17					
4.	Comparative Table of Tenses in French and English		. 18					
	Passive Voice		. 19					
6.	Reflective Verbs		20-21					
7.	Impersonal Verbs		22 - 23					
	STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS:							
Q	FIRST CONJUGATION: aller, s'en aller, envoyer		24-25					
		•	24-20					
9.	SECOND CONJUGATION:							
	(a) Past Part., -i.; Preterite, -is	-	26-28					
	(b) ., -i or -ert; ., -is .		28-29					
	(e)u:s or -us .		30-31					
	(b) ,, -i or -ert; ,, -is		30-31					
10.	THIRD CONJUGATION:							
	(a) Past Part., -u; Preterite, -us		32-33					
	(b, c)u:us .		32-33					
	(b,c) ,, -u; ,, -us (d,e) ,, -u or -is ,, -u or -is .		34-35					
11.	FOURTH CONJUGATION:							
	(a) Verbs in -indre; Past Part., -t; Preterite, -is)							
	(b)uire:t:is		36-37					

SECT.		PAGE
11.	(c) Verbs in -traire; vaincre, suivre, rire (d) ,, -ire; Past Part., -t; Preterite, -is (e) ,, mettre, prendre, battre	38-39
	(f) ,, -attre (-oitre); Past Part., -u; Preterite, -us (g) ,, -u; ,, -us	} 40-41
	(i) Defective Verbs in -re	42-43
	THE ARTICLE AND SUBSTANTIVE.	
12.	ARTICLE: (I.) Definite; (II.) Partitive; (III.) Indefinite	44-47 48-49
13.	(IV.) Plural of Nouns and Adjectives . Formation of Compound Substantives	50-51
14.	Plural of Compound Substantives	. 51
	THE ADJECTIVE.	
15.	FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES: General Rule:	. 52
16.	Special Rules:—(a) Adj. in -e mute; (b) in -x; (c) in -f; (d) in -c; (e) in -ien, -el, -eil, -on; (f) with two Masc. forms	53
	(g) Adj. in -eur	. 54
17.	Irregular Forms	. 54
10	Alphabetical List of Adjectives	. 204
10.	Numerical Adjectives: I. Cardinal	. 56
20.	II. Ordinal	56-57
	24. Fractional, Proportional, Multiplicative, Collective	. 57
	PRONOUNS.	
25.	CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS	. 58
	27. En, y	. 59
	Le (predicative form)	. 60
	Personal Pronouns used Objectively	60-61
30.	Pronoun-Object of a Verb in Imperative-Affirmative .	. 62
	DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL Pronouns	. 63
	Possessive Pronouns	64-65
	DEMONSTRATIVE Pronouns	66-68
0.4	†Different renderings of he, she, they, it	69-70
	INTERROGATIVE Pronouns	72-74
	INDEFINITE Pronouns	75-76
50.	INDEFINITE FORIOURS	10-10
	PARTICLES.	In her her ex-
37.	ADVERBS	77-79
38.	Irregular Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs .	. 80
		182 - 192

EXERCISES.

F	RECAPITULATION OF THE		LESS		PAGE
	REGULAR CONJUGATIONS			IMPERSONAL VERBS .	
	INDICAT., IMPERAT., COND.	7/17	30.	Orthographical Peculiari-	
LESS		PAGE		ties of Verbs	121
	Indicative Present			Innuary in Unnua	
	Imperative			IRREGULAR VERBS.	
	Interrogative Construction		0.1	1st Conjugation.	***
4.	Negative-n'est-ce pas?	86	31.		122
5.	Indicative Imperfect .		32.	s'en aller	123
	Imperf. & Pret. compared			2d Conjugation.	
	La peau de l'ours		33.	dormir, mentir, sortir, etc	.124
	Pres. Perf. (Passé Indéfini			bouillir, faillir, vêtir,	
	Pluperf. and Past Anterior			couvrir, venir	125
10.	Future	93			
10.	Future	94		tenir	
11.	Future and Condit. Perf.	95	37.	acquérir, mourir, courir	128
	A			3d Conjugation.	
	SUBJUNCTIVE.		38.	recevoir apercevoir etc	.129
	Present: 1st Rule	96	39.	devoir	130
	Imperfect: 2d Rule		40.	savoir, pouvoir	132
	Perf., Pluperf.: 3d Rule.		41.	vouloir	134
15.	with Impers. Verbs: 4th		42.	falloir	136
	Rule	100	43.	devoir	138
16.	with Conjunctions: 5th		44.	valoir, voir, dechoir .	140
	Rule	101	45.	s'asseoir	141
	INFINITIVE.			4th Conjugation.	
			46.		142
17.		102	47.		143
18.		104		traire, vaincre, suivre.	
19.		105	49.	dire, rire	145
20.	with sans, après, pour,	107		faire—	
	par	107	50	(a) with a Noun-Object	110
อา	instand of Subject	107	51	(b) in Verbal Phrases .	140
21.	instead of Subjunct PARTICIPLE PRESENT .	110	50	(c) with Infinitive .	147
			52.	(d) idiomatic	140
	PASSIVE VOICE Verbs conjugated with		54	mettre	150
44.			55	prendre, battre	151
95	être	114	56	Verbe in stre	152
40.	Recomitalation	115	57	Verbs in -ître croire	154
	Recapitulation			plaire, taire, lire, boire,	104
	REFLEXIVE VERBS.			etc.	155
26.	I. Simple Tenses	116	59.	vivre, and Verbs in -oudre Defective Verbs	156
27.	II. Compound Tenses	117	60.	Defective Verbs	157
28.	Refl. in French, not in Eng	.118	61.	Shall, will; should, would	157
	,			,	

LESSON PAGE							
62. Recapitulation of Irregu-	PRONOUNS						
lar Verbs 158 63. Summary of Irregularities	LESSON PAGE						
63. Summary of Irregularities	73-74. Conjunct. Pers. Pron. 169						
of French Verbs 159	75. en, y, le 171						
The Company of the co	76. Disjunct. Pers. Pronouns 172						
THE SUBSTANTIVE AND	77. Possessive Pronouns . 173						
ADJECTIVE.	78. Demonstrative Pronouns . 174						
64. Nouns with Def. Art 160	79. Interrogative Pronouns . 175						
65. Plural of Nouns and Adj. 161	80-81. Relative Pronouns . 176						
66. Nouns with Partitive Art. 162	82. Indefinite Pronouns . 177						
67. Nouns qualified by Nouns 163							
68-69. Fem. and Plur. of Adj. 164	PARTICLES.						
70. Comparison of Adjectives 166							
71. Dimensions 167	83. Adverbs 178						
72. Numerical Adjectives . 168	84. Adverbs of Negation . 179						
Crew or D	REPOSITIONS:						
70-1-1-1-1							
85. †English Direct Object = à, or d	e, in French 180						
86.† , Prepos. $to = \dot{a}$, or d 87.† , Prepos. $of = de$, or	e, ,,						
87. \dagger in Prepos. of = de, or	à, ,, 184						
7,	The same						
ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS RENDE							
about, above, after, at (1) .							
at (2), before, by for from, in							
for	. 187						
from, in							
$vnto, o\pi, on, upon$. 109						
out of, over through, till, until							
through, till, until							
with							
88-89.† Exercises in Prepositions							
90-91.† 92-93.†	705						
94-95.+	100						
94-95.7							
TABLE OF OBSERVATIONS	S, NOTES, CAUTIONS, ETC.,						
	THE LESSONS.						
2. Verbs requiring a Preposition b	before their Compl. in English,						
but not in French, and vice	versd 83						
3. Interrog. Prons. and Advs. to b	pe placed first in the sentence . 85						
4. (1) N'est-ce pas; (2) How to render—I have, I am, etc., in							
answer to a question							
5. (1) How to render the Engl. Imperfect; (2) Place of Adverbs.							
5. (1) now to render the Engl. If	mperfect; (2) Place of Adverbs. 87						
8. Engl. Pres. Perf. = French Prese. Different renderings of (1) for ;	ent						
inherent renderings of (1) for;	(2) since; (3) when 91						
10. (1) French Future = Engl. Pre	esent after conjunctions of time;						
(2) nee of teness after st	93						

LESS		PAGE
11.	When should and would answer to the French Conditionnel—	
10	Future Perf. denoting probability	95
12.	(1) que, in itself, does not require the Subjunctive; (2) Ac-	
	cusative + Infinitive not to be used after Verbs of wishing; (3) When should answers to the Subjunctive	96
19		97
10.	Sequence of Tenses Verbs of thinking with Subjunct, only if used negatively, in-	97
	terrogatively, or conditionally	98
14.	Past Perf. Subj. (3d pers. only) standing for Condit. Perf	99
	When may, might answers to the French Subjunctive	101
17.		102
	Before, differently rendered as Prep., Adv., or Conjunct	103
20.		107
	(2) De for dans before an Infinitive-Complement	107
22.	The Present Participle in French not to be used substantively	111
23.	(a) Only Verbs with a Direct Object to be used in Passive;	
	(b) Many take an Indirect Object in French, but a Direct Obj.	
	in English	112
24.	List of Intransit. Verbs conjugated either with avoir or être	113
26.	Indicative and Imperative of Reflexive Verbs compared	116
27.	(1) All Reflexive Verbs conjugated with etre in comp. tenses;	
	(2) Use of Reflexive Verbs in the Infinitive	117
28.	(1) Many Verbs reflexive in French, but not in English;	
	(2) Reflexive form also used reciprocally	118
35.	, , ,	126
39.	(1) When should answers to devoir;	7.01
	(2) Verbal Complement of devoir in the Infinitive	131
40.	 (1) To know rendered (a) by savoir; (b) by connaître (2) Can rendered (a) by savoir; (b) by pouvoir. . 	132
47		133
41.	(1) Construction of vouloir; (2) souhaiter for vouloir.	135
42.	Different forms of <i>Pers. Pronouns</i> used <i>Objectively</i> , compared Second Infinitive after il vaut mieux takes de	137
44.	Construction of Verbs of fearing	140
46.		142
52.	After faire and laisser, use the active Infinitive	148
55.	Verbs of taking from require the dative of person	152
58.	Construction of plaire, croire	155
59.	Vivre and demeurer compared	156
61.	How to render—Shall, will; should, would	157
	When the Engl. Indef. Art. = Fr. Def. Art., or par	160
	Place of Adjectives before or after the Noun . 164 (,
	Plus de and plus que compared	167
76.	to before Indir. Obj. different from to before Advl. Compl	172
77.	French Def. Article = Engl. Poss. Pronoun and vice versa.	173

xii CONTENTS				
79. French <i>Prepositions</i> not to be placed at the e	nd	of sen	tence	PAGE 175
85. †When English Passive = French Active				180
86. †Different ways of rendering to in French				182
87.+ ,, of ,,		e		184

FOR TABLE OF APPENDICES (I-VIII.) see p. 197. VOCABULARIES.

FRENCH-ENGLISH				•	. 210
English-French	4				. 227

PROGRESSIVE FRENCH COURSE.

SECOND YEAR.

§ 1.—THE VERB (LE VERBE).

INTRODUCTORY :--

The Classification of French Verbs is on the whole the same as that of English Verbs; thus we distinguish with regard to—

- (A) Meaning-Transitive and Intransitive Verbs;
- (B) Voice—the Active (transitive and intransitive Verbs), and— Passive (transitive Verbs only);
- (c) Inflections-

eP.

- (a) FINITE FORMS, which may be inflected according to—
 - (1) Moods—the Indicative, the Conditional, the Subjunctive, the Imperative;
 - (2) Tenses—the Present, Past, and Future;
 - (3) Number—the Singular and Plural;
 - (4) Persons—the first, second, and third.
- (b) Infinite Forms, which have no personal inflections:
 - (1) The Infinitive (a Verbal Noun), and-
 - (2) The Participles (partly Verbal Adjectives), which can only be inflected like Adjectives (i.e. according to Gender and Number).

Verbs in French are divided according to their Infinitive-ending into Four Conjugations:—

Stem: | Infinit. ending:

1st Conjugation: Verbs ending in -er, as—donn -er, to give.

2d Conjugation: ,, -ir, as—pun -ir, to punish.

3d Conjugation: ,, -oir, as—recev-oir, to receive.

4th Conjugation: ,, -re, as—vend -re, to sell.

The Stem of any Regular Verb is found by cutting off its Infinitive-ending: -er; -ir; (-oir); -re.

- § 1. In order to conjugate a Verb in French, it is necessary to know-
 - (a) its Principal Parts, which are-
 - (I.) Infinitive; (II.) Participle Present; (III.) Participle Perfect; (IV.) Preterite; (V.) Present Indicative; from which the other Moods and Tenses may be derived;

I .- From the INFINIT. PRES.

1st Conj. donn-er.

2d Conj. pun-ir,

[3d Conj. recev-oir,]

4th Conj. vend-re,

are formed-

(a) the FUTURE PRESENT,*
by adding the endings—

-ai.	for the	1st person) &
,	101 the	1st person &
-as,	22	2d person
-8,	,,	3d person)
-ons,	29	1st person)
-ez,	2.2	2d person
-ont,	,,	3d person) ?

(b) the Conditional Present,* by adding the endings—

-ais, i	for the	1st person) &
-ais,	,,	2d person \ \S
-ait,	"	3d person)
-ions,	"	1st person) y
-iez,	22	2d person
-aient,	9.9	3d person)

- * In the Third Conj. oi is dropped, in the Fourth the final -e of the Infinitive:—recevr-ai, vendr-ai, etc.
- † In the Third Conj. (which consists entirely of irregular Verbs) these rules of derivation are only applicable in the 1st and 2d person plur. of the Pres. Indicative and Subjunctive, and to the Imperf. Indicative.

II .- From the PARTICIP. PRES.

1st Conj. donn-ant,

2d Conj. puniss-ant,

[3d Conj. recev-ant,]†

4th Conj. vend-ant,

are formed-

- (a) the Pres. Indicat. Plural, by changing -ant into—
 - -ons, for the 1st person ex, , 2d person ent.
- (b) the Imperfect Indicative, by changing -ant into— -ais, for the 1st person ais, 2d person
 - -ait, ,, 3d person) -ions, ,, 1st person -iez, ,, 2d person -aient, ,, 3d person -
- (c) the Present Subjunctive, by changing -ant into—
 - -e, for the 1st person -es, ,, 2d person -e, ,, 3d person
 - -ions, ,, 1st person } 3
 - -ent, ,, 3d person)

- (b) the Person-Inflections, which vary more or less according to the Conjugation to which the Verb belongs;
- (c) its Auxiliary Verb, which may be avoir or être, for all Compound Tenses of the Active Voice; always être for all Tenses of the Passive Voice, and for all Compound Tenses of Reflective Verbs.

IV .- From the PRETERITE

1st Conj. donn-as (2d Pers. Sing.)

2d Conj. pun-is,

[3d Conj. reç-us,]

4th Conj. vend-is,

is formed-

by changing the s of the

2d pers. sing., into e, for the 1st person

-sse, for the 1st person asses, 2d person 3d person ssioz, 2d person assert, 3d person 3d person assent, 3d person 3

III.—From the PARTICIP. PERF.

1st Conj. donn-é, 2d Conj. pun-i,

3d Conj. reç-u, 4th Conj. vend-u.

are formed—

(a) The Compound Tenses of the Active and Reflexive Voice:—

J'ai j'avais, etc. donné, puni, j'eçu, vendu.

Je me suis aperçu, rendu.

(b) All Tenses of the Passive

Voice:—

Je suis
j'ai été
je serai, etc. trompé, accueilli,
déçu, battu.

V .- From the PRES. INDICAT.

1. donn -e, -es, -e; donn -ons, -ez, -ent.

2. pun -is, -is, -it; puniss-ons, -ez, -ent.

3. reç -ois, -ois, -oit; rec -evons, -evez, -oivent,

4. vend -s, -s, -(t,)* vend -ons, -ez, -ent,

is formed—the IMPERATIVE, by dropping the Pers. Prons.:—

Second Pers. Sing.

1st Conj. donn-e,† 2d Conj. pun-is, [3d Conj. rec-ois,]

First Pers. Plural.

4th Conj.

1st Conj. donn-ons, 2d Conj. puniss-ons, [3d Conj. recev-ons,] 4th Conj. vend-ons;

vend-s:

Second Pers. Plural.

1st Conj. donn-ez, 2d Conj. puniss-ez,

[3d Conj. recev-ez,]
4th Conj. vend-ez.

* If the stem does not end in d or t. the inflectional t is not dropped:—il rompt, il lit, etc.

† In the First Conj. the final s is dropped, except before en and y (p. 25).

N.B.—The Pres. Subj. (sing., and 3d p. pl.) of the Third Conj., as of most irregular Verbs, is formed by cutting off the final -nt of the 3d p. pl. Indic., and adding -, sp. -; , -, -nt.

i' ai.

tu as.

il a,

v. av-ez.

ils ont.

PRESENT.

INFINITIVE. avoir, to have.

PARTICIPLE. ayant, having.

INDICATIVE.

I have.

he has.

you have.

they have.

n, av-ons, we have,

thou hast,

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Chief Clause. Dependent Clause. Il faut que j' ai-e,* I have.* you have, tu ai-es, qu' il ai-t. he have. que n. ay-ons. we have. v. ay-ez, you have, qu' ils ai-ent. they have.

IMPERFECT.

j' av-ais. I used-to-have. tu av-ais, you used to have,

il av-ait, he used to have.

n. av-ions, we used to have,

v. av-iez, you used to have. ilsay-aient, they used to have N.B.—For the Subjunctive, see below.

PRETERITE. [Commonly called Imperfect Subj.]

j'eu-s, I had, tu eu-s. thou hadst.

he had, il eu-t. n. eû-mes, we had,

v. eû-tes, you had, ils eu-rent, they had.

Chief Clause. Dependent Clause. (Ex. 15.) Il fallait que j' euss-e. I had. tu euss-es. thou hadst. qu' il eût, he had. que n. euss-ions, g v. euss-iez, s we had. you had. they had. qu' ils euss-ent,

FUTURE PRESENT.

i' aur-ai. I shall-have. tu aur-as, thou wilt-have, il aur-a. he will-have.

n. aur-ons, we shall-have,

v. aur-ez, you will-have.

ils aur-ont, they will-have.

CONDITIONAL: PRESENT.

j' aur-ais, I should-have, tu aur-ais, thou wouldst-have, il aur-ait, he would-have,

n, aur-ions, we should-have,

v. aur-iez, you would-have,

ils aur-aient, they would-have.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Ai-e, have (thou). 3. qu'il ai-t, let him have.

Plural. ay-ons, let us have, ay-ez, have (ye), qu'ils ai-ent. let them have.

^{*} Or, j'aye, tu ayes; ils ayent (obsolete). † Or, I must have, etc.

§ I

PERFECT.

INFINITIVE.

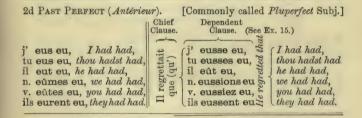
avoir eu, to have had.

PARTICIPLE. eu, had. ayant eu, having had.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT PERFECT. Chief Dependent (See Ex. 15.) Clause. Clause. I have had, I have had, i' ai eu. aie eu thou hast had, tu as eu. thou hast had. tu aies eu. he has had. il a eu, he has had, il ait eu, n. avonseu, we have had, we have had, n. ayons eu. you have had. v. avez eu, you have had, v. ayez eu, ils ont eu. they have had. ils aient eu, they have had.

1st Past Perfect (Plusqueparfait).

j' avais eu, I had had, tu avais eu, thou hadst had, il avait eu, he had had, n. avions eu, we had had, v. aviez eu, you had had, ils avaient eu, they had had, N.B.—For Subjunctive, see below.



FUTURE PERFECT.

j' aurai eu, I shall-have had, tu auras eu, thou wilt-have had, il aura eu, he wilt-have had, n. aurons eu, ve shall-have had, v. aurez eu, you will-have had, ilsauront eu, theu wilt-have had.

CONDITIONAL: PERFECT.

j' aurais eu, I should-have had, tu aurais eu, thou wouldst-have had, il aurait eu, he would-have had, n. aurions eu, we should-have had, v. auriez eu, you would-have had, ilsauraienteu, they would-have had.

Present Perf. (Indic. and Subj.) formed by Present (Indic. and Subj.) + Perf. Part. 1st Past Perf. or Plupf. (Indic.) ,, Imperfect (Indicative) + Perf. Part. 2d Past Perfect or Anterior ,, Preterite (Indic, and Subj.) + Perf. Part. (Indicative and Subjunctive)

Future and Conditional Perfect , Future and Condit. Pres. + Perf. Park

PRESENT.

INFINITIVE.

être, to be.

PARTICIPLE.

étant, being.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

RESENT.

Chief Clause. Dependent Clause. (See Ex. 15.)

				-			
je	suis,	I am,	Il faut	que je	soi-s,	2	(I be,
tu	es,	thou art,	,,	tu	soi-s,	sar	thou (you) be,
il	est,	he is,	99	qu'il	soi-t,	neces	he be,
n.	sommes,	we are,	99	que n.	soy-ons,		we be,
٧.	êtes,	you are,	29	V.	soy-ez,	\$	you be,
ils	sont,	they are.	99	qu' ils	soi-ent,	It	they be.

IMPERFECT.

j' ét-ais, I used-to-be, tu ét-ais, thou wast wont to be, il ét-ait he used-to-be

il ét-ait, he used-to-be, n. ét-ions, we used-to-be,

v. ét-iez, vou used-to-be.

ils ét-aient, they used-to-be.

N.B.—For the Subjunctive, see below.

PRETERITE. [Commonly called *Imperf*. Subj.]

je fu-s. I was. Il fallait que je fuss-e, tu fu-s. thou wast. tufuss-es. thou wert. il fu-t, he was. qu' il fût, he were. que n. fuss-ions, n. fû-mes, we were, we were. v. fû-tes, you were, v. fuss-iez, you were. ils fu-rent, they were. qu'ilsfuss-ent, 3 they were.

FUTURE PRESENT.

je ser-ai, I shall-be, tu ser-as, thou wilt-be, il ser-a, he will-be,

n. serons, we shall-be, v. ser-ez, you will-be,

ils ser-ont, they will-be.

CONDITIONAL: PRESENT.

je ser-ais, I should-be, tu ser-ais, thou wouldst-be,

il ser-ait, he would-be, n. ser-ions, we should be.

n. ser-ions, we snoute be, v. ser-iez, you would-be,

ils ser-aient, they should-be.

IMPERATIVE.

2. Sois, be (thou), 3. qu'il soit, let him be. soy-ons, let us be, soy-ez, be (ye), qu'ils soi-ent, let them be,

PERFECT.

INFINITIVE.

avoir été, to have been.

PARTICIPLE.

été, been. ayant été, having been.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT PERFECT. (See Ex 14).

i' ai été. I have been. thou hast been. tu as été. il a été. he has been.

n. avons été, we have been, v. avez été, you have been,

ils ont été, they have been.

aie été. tu aies été, il ait été.

> n. avons été. v. avez été. ils aient été,

(I have been. thou hast been. he has been. we have been. you have been, they have been.

1st Past Perfect (Plusqueparfait).

i' avais été, I had been, tu avais été, thou hadst been,

il avait été, he had been,

n. avions été, we had been,

v. aviez été, you had been, ils avaient été, they had been. N.B.—For the Subjunctive, see below.

(Antérieur.) 2D PAST PERFECT. (Plupf. Subj. : see Ex. 14.)

j' eus été, I had been, tu eus été, thou hadst been, il eut été, he had been,

n. eûmes été, we had been, v. eûtes été, you had been, ils eurent été, they had been.

que (qu')

tu eusses été, il eût été, n. eussions été. v. eussiez été, ils eussent été,

eusse été,

I had been, thou hadst been. he had been, we had been. you had been, they had been.

FUTURE PERFECT.

i' aurai été. I shall-have been, tu auras été, thou wilt-have been,

il aura été, he will-have been,

n. aurons été, we shall-have been, v. aurez été, you will-have been,

CONDITIONAL: PERFECT.

j' aurais été, I should-have been, tu aurais été, thou wouldst-h. b.,

il aurait été, he would-have been,

n. aurions été, we should-h. b., v. auriez été, you would-have been,

ils auront été, they will-have been. ils auraient été, they would-h. b.

1.—SIMPLE TENSES.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. donn-er to give.

pun-ir to punish.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. donn-ant giv-ing. Perf. donn-é

pun-iss-ant punish-ing. punish-ed.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I give, I am-giving,	etc. I punish, I am-punishing, etc.
je donn-e	je pun-is
tu donn-es	tu pun-is
il(elle,on)donn-e	il (elle) pun-it
/nous donn-ons	nous pun-iss-ons
vous donn-ez	vous pun-iss-ez
ils (elles) donn-ent	ils (elles) pun-iss-ent

e I		IMP	ERFECT.	
ticiple	I was	giving, etc.	I was-p	unishing, etc.
tic	је	donn-ais	je	pun-iss-ais
Part	tu	donn-ais	tu	pun-iss-ais
P	il (elle, or	n)donn-ait	il	pun-iss-ait
From	nous	donn-ions	nous	pun-iss-ions
Tre	vous	donn-iez	vous	pun-iss-iez
7	ils (elles) donn-aient	ils	pun-iss-aient

PRETERITE.

$I_{\mathcal{G}}$	gave, etc.	I pu	nished, etc.
je	donn-ai	je	pun-is
tu	donn-as	tu	pun-is
il(ell	e,on)donn-a	il	pun-it
nous	donn-âmes	nous	pun-imes
vous	donn-âtes	vous	pun-ites
ils (e	lles) donn-èrent	ils	nun-irent

FITTIRE PRESENT

		20101	THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF T	
6)	I $shall$	-give, etc.	I shall	punish, etc.
2	(je	donner-ai	je	punir-ai
nit	tu	donner-as	tu	punir-as
Infin esent		donner-a	il	punir-a
Te Is		donner-ons	nous	punir-ons
m		donner-ez	vous	punir-ez
F. P.	(ils (elles)	donner-ont	ils	punir-ont

^{*} All Verbs of the Third are, strictly speaking, irregular in their Tense-formations; but for the sake of completeness and symmetry, one representative of the seven Verbs conjugated alike is inserted here in its usual place; see pp. 32-33.

I.—SIMPLE TENSES.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. recev-oir to receive. vend-re to sell.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rec-ev-ant receiv-ing. sell-ing. vend-ant PERF. rec-u receiv-ed. vend-u sol-d.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I receive, I a	m-receiving, etc.	I sell, I	am-selling, etc.
je	rec-oi-s	je	vend-s
tu	rec-oi-s	tu	vend-s
il (elle)	reç-oi-t	il	vend †
nous	rec-ev-ons	nous	vend-ons
vous	rec-ev-ez	vous	vend-ez
ils (elles)	rec-oiv-ent	ils	vend-ent

IMPEREECT.

	4.44.4.41	OF THOT'S	
I was-	receiving, etc.	I was	-selling, etc.
je	recev-ais	je	vend-ais
tu	recev-ais	tu	vend-ais
il	recev-ait	il	vend-ait
nous	recev-ions	nous	vend-ions
vous	recev-iez	vous	vend-iez
ils	recev-aient	ils	vend-aient

PRETERITE.

I received, etc.		I sold, etc.	
je	reç-us	je	vend-is
tu	reç-us	tu	vend-is
il	reç-ut	il	vend-it
nous	reç-ûmes	nous	vend-imes
vous	rec-ûtes	vous	vend-ites
ils	reç-urent	ils	vend-irent

FUTURE PRESENT.

I shal	l-receive, etc.	I sho	ll-sell, etc.
je	recevr-ai	je	vendr-ai
tu	recevr-as	tu	vendr-as
il	recevr-a	il	vendr-a
nous	recevr-ons	nous	vendr-ons
vous	recevr-ez	vous	vendr-ez
ils	recevr-ont	ils	vendr-ont

[†] If the stem does not end in -d or -t, the inflectional t is not dropped:—
romp-re, to break; il romp-t, he breaks.

CONDITIONAL. (See Ex. 10, c and d.)

PRESENT.

ive	I sho	uld-give, etc.	I sho	nuld-punish, etc.
iti	je	donner-ais	je	punir-ais
(I	tu	donner-ais	tu	punir-ais
nt	il	donner-ait	il	punir-ait
n Ing	nous	donner-ions	nous	punir-ions
From	vous	donner-iez	vous	punir-iez
Fr.	ils	donner-aient	ils	punir-aient

ves.	IMPER.	ATIVE.
From F Indic. (donn-e, give (thou), donn-ons, let us give, donn-ez, give (ye).	pun-is, punish (thou), pun-iss-ons, let us punish, pun-iss-ez, punish (ye).

SUBJUNCTIVE. (See Ex. 14.)

PRESENT.

It is possible that

I may give, etc.		1 may	punish, etc.	
		Il est poss	sible que (qu')	
From the Part. Present (11.)	je tu il nous vous ils	donn-es donn-es donn-ions donn-ioz donn-ent	je tu il nous vous ils	pun-iss-e pun-iss-es pun-iss-e pun-iss-ions pun-iss-iez pun-iss-ent

IMPERFECT.

It was possible that

	/	_	^			_	
I might	give,	etc.	1	I	might	punish,	etc.
					**		

.

Il était possible que (qu')

31	je	donn-a-sse	je	pun-i-sse
Te	tu	donn-a-sses	tu	pun-i-sses
200	il	donn-â-t	il	pun-i-t
rite	nous	donn-a-ssions	nous	pun-i-ssions
Fr	vous	donn-a-ssiez	vous	pun-i-ssiez
a l	ils	donn-a-ssent	ils	pun-i-ssent

CONDITIONAL. (See Ex. 10, c and d.)

PRESENT.

I should	l receive, etc.	I show	uld-sell, etc.
je	recevr-ais	. je	vendr-ais
tu	recevr-ais	tu	vendr-ais
il	recevr-ait	il	vendr-ait
nous	recevr-ions	nous	vendr-ions
vous	recevr-iez	vous	vendr-iez
ils	recevr-aient	ils	vendr-aient

IMPERATIVE.

reç-oi-s,	receive (thou),	vend-s,	sell (thou),
rec-ev-ons,	let us receive,	vend-ons,	let us sell,
rec-ev-ez,	receive (ye).	vend-ez,	sell (ye).

SUBJUNCTIVE. (See Ex. 14.)

PRESENT.



I may	receive, etc.	I ma	y sell, etc.
	Il est possib	le que (qu')	
je tu	reç-oiv-e (§ 3, h)	je	vend-e
tu	reç-oiv-es	tu	vend-es
il	rec-oiv-e	il	vend-e
nous	rec-ev-ions	nous	vend-ions
vous	rec-ev-iez	vous	vend-iez
ils	reç-oiv-ent	ils	vend-ent

IMPERFECT.

It was possible that

I might receive, etc.

I might sell, etc.

	Il était possi	ble que (qu')	
je	reç-u-sse	je	vend-i-sse
tu	rec-u-sses	tu	vend-i-sses
il	rec-û-t	il	vend-i-t
nous	rec-u-ssions	nous	vend-i-ssions
vous	rec-u-ssiez	vous	vend-i-ssiez
ile	rec-11-ggent	ile	wand-i-ggant

	11	NFINITIVE	PERFECT.		
	o have	given, donné,	punished, puni,	received,	sold. vendu.
-	P	ARTICIPLE	PERFECT		
	Taving Lyant	given, donné,	punished.	received, reçu,	sold. vendu.
INDICATIVE.					
	Presi	ENT PERFECT	,	,	
<i>I</i>	have ai	given,	punished,	received,	sold, etc.
tu	as	1			
(il (on)		donné,	puni.	reçu,	vendu.
elle	a)			
nous	avons)			
(ils	ont	donné,	puni,	reçu,	vendu.
elles	ont)			
	FIRST	PAST PERFEC	T (Plaismen	rfait).	
I (we)	had	given,	punished,		sold, etc.
j'	avais	donné,	puni,	recu.	vendu.
nous	avions	,,			, 01101011
		PAST PERFEC	т (Passé An	térieur).	
j' nous	eus eûmes	donné,	puni,	reçu,	vendu.
nous	Сашов) Ti Ti		-	
I (we)	shall-have	FUTURE P	punished.	received.	enld ate
i' (we)	aurai	1	- '		
nous	aurons	donné,	puni,	reçu,	vendu.
		CONDITIONAL			
I(we)	should-have	given,	punished,	received,	sold, etc.
nous	aurais	donné,	puni,	reçu,	vendu.
nous	aurions	1			
		SUBJUN	CTIVE.		
He is	glad that—	PRESENT F	ERFECT.		
I (we)		given,	punished,	received,	sold, etc.
	bien aise que-	-			•
40	aie	donné,	puni,	reçu,	vendu.
nous	ayons	,			
He w	as glad that—	PAST PE	RFECT.		
I (we)	had	given,	punished,	received,	sold, etc.
Il éta	it bien aise que	<u> </u>			
J	eusse	donné,	puni,	reçu,	vendu.
nous	eussions	1			

		INFINITIVE	PERFECT.	
	To have (be		gone out,	come down.
	Être	arrivé,	sorti,	descendu.
		PARTICIPLE	PERFECT.	
	Having	arrived,	gone out,	come down.
	Étant	arrivé,	sorti,	descendu.
		INDICA	ATIVE.	
		T PERFECT (Pa	ssé Indéfini, see	
1	have (am)		gone out,	come down, etc.
je		arriv-é (-ée),	sort-i (-ie),	descend-u (-ue).
fil (on)	est	arrivé (-ée),	sort-i (-ie), sorti,	descendu (-ue).
elle	est	arrivée,	sortie,	descendue
nous		arriv-és (-ées),		descend-us(-ues).
vous		arriv-és (-ées),		descend-us(-ues).
(ils	sont	arrivés,	sortis,	descendus.
lelles	sont	arrivées,	sorties,	descendues.
	FIRS	T PAST PERFE	CT (Plusquepar)	fait).
I(we)	had	arrived,	gone out,	come down, etc.
j'		arriv-é (-ée),	sort-i (-ie),	descend-u (-ue).
nous	étions a	arriv-és (-ées),	sort-is (-ies),	descend-us(-ues).
		D PAST PERFE		
je		arriv-é (-ée),	sort-i (-ie),	descend-u (-ue).
nous	fûmes	arriv-és (ées),	sort-is (-ies)	descend-us(-ues).
T/ \	7 77 7	FUTURE I		7
- 1		arrived,	gone out,	come down, etc.
0		arriv-é (-ée), arriv-és (-ées),	sort-ig (-ieg)	descend-u (-ue). descend-us(-ues).
Hous i	30110115	, ,,		doboodad db(-dob)s
I (we)	should-have	CONDITIONAL	gone out,	come down, etc.
		arriv-é (-ée),	sort-i (-ie),	descend-u (-ue).
0		arriv-és (-ées),		descend-us(-ues).
		SUBJUN		
TT .	7 7 47 4	PRESENT PERF		
	glad that—		, , ,	January ata
I (we)	have bien aise que	arrived,	gone out,	come down, etc.
			sort-i (-ie),	descend-u (-ue).
4		arriv-és (-ées),		
		PAST PERFECT		
	s glad that—	-		•
- '		arrived,	gone out,	come down.
	t bien aise q	ue— arriv-é (-ée).	sort-i (io)	degrand a (ma)
0				descend-u (-ue). descend-us(-ues).
				one place to another, gated in their Com-
		the Auxiliary		
pound.		AD TO TO LOCAL D		, p. 110/.

- (1) Simple Interrogation (i.e. without Interrogat. Particle):—
 - (a) THE SUBJECT A PERSONAL PRONOUN:-

Do I speak (am I speaking)? etc. Did I speak? etc. Parlé-je? or, Est-ce que je parle? Parlai-je? Parles-tu? or, Est-ce que tu parles? Parlas-tu? Parle-t-il [on] ?* or, Est-ce qu'il (on) parle? Parla-t-il(-on)? Parle-t-elle? or. Est-ce qu'elle parle? Parla-t-elle? Parlons-nous? or, Est-ce que nous parlons? Parlâmes-nous? Parlez-vous? or, Est-ce que vous parlez? Parlâtes-vous? Parlent-ils (elles)? or. Est-ce qu'ils parlent? | Parlèrent-ils?

* If the 3d p. s. ends in e mute or in a, a -t- is inserted to prevent the hiatus—parlera-t-il (-on; -elle)?

IN COMPOUND TENSES :--

Ai-je-parlé? or, Est-ce que j'ai parlé? Have I spoken? etc. Qui a parlé? Who has spoken?

(b) THE SUBJECT A NOUN OR PRONOUN (other than personal):-

L'orateur parle-t-il? or, Est-ce que l'orateur parle? Does the orator Speak ? La bonne parle-t-elle? Does the servant speak?

Les orateurs parlent-ils? Do the orators speak? Les bonnes parlent-elles? Do the servants speak?

Cela est-il vrai? Is that true? Personne est-il venu? Has anubodu come! L'orateur a-t-il bien parlé? Did the orator speak well?

In like manner with Verbs of any other Conjugation:-

Finis-tu (or, Est-ce que tu finis)? Are you finishing? Vendez-vous (or, Est-ce que vous vendez)? Do you sell?

A-t-il (or, Est-ce qu'il a) bien dormi? Sont-ils (or, Est-ce qu'ils sont) allés?

Has he slept well? Are they gone?

(c) THE SUBJECT AN INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN:-Qui parle? or, Qui est-ce qui parle? Who is speaking?

(2) For questions introduced by an Interrogat. Particle, see Ex. 3, pp. 86, 87.

which have been sanctioned by usage.

^{*} To avoid the unpleasant sound of two mute syllables following each other—(aime.je), the final e mute of the verb is pronounced like e ouvert(e), and this is indicated in print or writing by an acute accent.

If the 1st person singular is a manosyllable, the interrog. form, Est-ce que je . . . is preferred for the sake of euphony:—Est-ce que je prends (perds)? etc.

Except: al-je? suis-je? dis-je? dois-je? puis-je? sais-je? vais-je? vois-je?

Je	ne parle pas.	I do not speak (I am not speaking).
Tu	ne parles pas.	Thou dost not speak.
(Il (elle)	ne parle pas.	He (she) does not speak.
Louis	ne parle pas.	Louis is not speaking.
Nous	ne parlons pas.	We do not speak.
Vous	ne parlez pas.	You do not speak.
(Ils (elles)	ne parlent pas.	They do not speak.
Ces élèves	ne parlent pas.	These pupils do not speak.
In lilea me	nnor with	

In like manner with-

(a) the 2d Conj.:—Je ne finis pas. Ido not finish (I am not finishing).

Nous ne finissons pas, etc. We do not finish, etc.

(b) the 4th Conj.:—Je ne réponds pas.

Nous ne répondons pas.

(c) Aux. Verbs:—Je n'ai pas mon couteau. I have n Je ne suis pas indisposé. I am no

I do not reply.

We do not reply, etc.

I have not my knife.

I am not unwell.

A Verb is made negative in meaning by placing the particle ne before that Verb; in most cases this ne—which is the real negation—must be supplemented by some Adverb or Noun to indicate the manner or degree in which the action expressed by that verb is negatived (ne... pas is the most common form of negation):—

Cet élève-ci ne travaille pas.

This punil is not working.

Cet élève-ci ne travaille pas. Cet élève-là ne travaille point. Votre élève ne travaille plus.

Le vôtre ne travaille pas non plus. Vous ne travaillez guère. Ce fainéant ne travaille jamais. Elle ne travaille que rarement. Je ne demande rien. I ask for no

point. That pupil does not work (at all).

Pour pupil works no more (no longer), does not work now.

s non plus. Yours does not work either.

e. You hardly ever work.

jamais. This idler never works.

rement. She works only (but) rarely.

I ask for nothing. I do not ask for anything.

(I ask for nobody (no one).

Je ne demande personne. I do not ask for anybody (any one).

Obs. 1.—Rien and personne, in accordance with their original substantival nature
(Lat. rem, personam), may stand as the Subject of a Verb:—
Rien ne décourage l'homme persévérant. Nothing daunts a persevering man.

Personne ne travaille ici.

Nobody (no one) is working here.

Obs. 2.—Infinitive:—Ne pas parler (finir, etc.) Not to speak (finish, etc.)

V.—The Interrogative form is made negative by placing—ne before the Interrogative form, and pas or point, plus, etc., after:—

Ne parlé-je pas ? or, Est-ce que je ne parle pas ? Am I not speaking ? Ne parles-tupas ? or, Est-ce que tu ne parles pas ? Art thou not speaking ?

Ne parle-t-il plus? Ne parle-t-elle jamais? Ne parlons-nous pas? Ne parlez-vous point?

Ne parlent-ils plus?

Is he no longer speaking?

Does she never speak?

Don't we speak?
Don't you speak?

Are they not speaking now?

L'orateur ne parle-t-il pas bien? Does not the orator speak well? Pourquoi les élèves ne répondent-ils pas? Why do the pupils not reply?

§ 3. First Conjugation. (See Ex. 30.)

In order to avoid the unpleasant sound of two mute syllables following close upon one another, the stem of a Verb with an e mute in the last syllable but one is strengthened whenever in the course of conjugation the following syllable becomes mute; this strengthening of the stem in pronunciation is indicated in writing or printing, either—

- as in (a and b), by doubling the final stem-consonant 1 or t; *
- or, as in (c), by changing the e mute into è (e grave), if the final stemconsonant is not 1 or t, as above.
 - (d) In Verbs with an é in the last syllable but one, this é is changed into è (except in the Future and Conditional), to indicate that the sound of é becomes long and open (ouvert):—
 - (a) appel-er, (b) jet-er, (c) men-er, (d) espér-er, to call. (b) jet-er, to to throw. (d) espér-er, to hope.

Present Indicative and Subjunctive.

tu appell-es il appell-e n. appel-ons, ions v. appel-ez, -iez tu jett-es il jett-e n. jet-ons, ions v. jet-ez, -iez	tu mèn-es il mèn-e n. men-ons, -ions v. men-ez, -iez	j' espèr-e tu espèr-es il espèr-e n. espér-ons, -ions v. espér-ez, -iez ils espèr-ent
--	---	--

Thus also the Imperative :-

appell-e appel-ons, -ez	1	jett-e jet-ons, -ez		mèn-e men-ons, -ez	1	espèr-e espér-ons, -ez
apper-ons, -ez	- 1	Jet-ons, -ez	11	men-ons, -ez		esper-ons, -ez

Future and Conditional:-

		(no change)
j'appell-erai, etc.	je jett-erai, etc. je mèn-erai, etc.	j'espérer-ai, etc.
j'appell-erais, etc.	je jett-erais, etc. je mèn-erais, etc.	j'espérer-ais, etc.

^{*} Except—Celer, to hide; geler, to freeze; bourreler to torture (fig.); démanteler, to dismantle; écarteler, to quarter; harceler, to harass; marteler, to hammer; modeler, to fashion; peler, to peel;

all these, instead of doubling the consonant, change e into è; see (c):-

	1 nrae (conce	zı),	etc.		I ouy (p	urchase),	etc.	
je		n.	cel-ons,		achet-e,		achet-ons	į
	cèl-es,		cel-ez,		achèt-ei		achet-ez,	
il	cèl-e,	ils	cel-ent.	i	achèt-e,	il	s achet-ent	ı

Acheter, to buy; becqueter, to peck; colleter, to coller; crocheter, to hook; épousseter, to dust; étiqueter, to label (and their compounds);

- (e) Verbs in -ayer, -eyer, -oyer, -uyer, change the y into i whenever the inflection becomes mute. Those in -ayer and -eyer, however, may retain y throughout :- je paie, or paye ; je paierai (paîrai) or payerai.
- (f) Verbs in -ier are regular throughout, and are only mentioned here to show the working of the Imperf. Plur. and Subj. Pres.
 - Notice also cré-er; je cré-e, etc.; P. P. cré-é, f. cré-ée, etc.
- (q) Verbs in -ger insert an e between the stem and the inflection when the latter begins with a or o, to indicate that & retains throughout the whole conjugation the soft sound which it always has before e or i.
- (h) Verbs in -cer change the c into c whenever the inflection begins with a or o; to indicate that c retains throughout the whole conjugation the same sound of s which it always has before e or i.
 - Obs.—Bear in mind that in French g and c are pronounced either—
- hard (as in Engl.) before a, 0, u:—gare, gond, guerir; cap, col, cure; or, soft (sibilant) before a, 1, y:—gens, gilet, gymnase; ceci, cygne. Now in Verbs ending in ger or -cer, the g or o is pronounced soft throughout the whole conjugation, even when followed by an inflection beginning with a or o, before which vowels soft g is written = go, and soft c = c.

 Compare what happens in English when you form an adj. in -able:—

dispute; adj. disputable; but-change, adj. changeable; trace, adj. traceable.

(e) ploy-er, (f) pri-er, (q) chang-er, (h) plac-er. to fold. to change. to pray. to place.

Present.

Indicat. Sul	bj. Indicat.	Subj.		icat.	
je ploi-e	je pri-e		je chang-e	je plac-e	
tu ploi-es	tu pri-es		tu chang-es	tu plac-es	
il ploi-e	il pri-e		il chang-e	il plac-e	
n. ploy-ons, -io	ns n. pri-ons,	-ions	n. change-ons	n. plaç-ons	
v. ploy-ez, -ie.	z v. pri-ez,	-iez	v. chang-ez	v. plac-ez	
ilsploi-ent.	ils pri-ent.		ilschang-ent.	ilsplac-ent.	
(Thus also the Imperative.)					

Imperfect Indicative.

Future.			
je ploier-ai		je change-ais, etc.	je plaç-ais, etc.
n. ploier-ons, etc.	n. pri-ions	n. chang-ions	n. plac-ions
Conditional.	v. pri-iez	v. chang-iez	v. plac-iez
je ploier-ais, etc.	ils pri-aient.	ilschange-aient.	ils plac-aient.
40			

(i) Nous contributions, fiez (but-nous distinguions, etc.). argu-er (pron. = argu-er) takes a diæresis on e mute or i :j'arguë; n. arguïons. (Thus Imperative and Subi.)

SECOND CONJUGATION. (See Ex. 30.)

fleurir (to bloom) in the sense of to flourish, (PRES. PART.: florissant. to prosper, has (from old French florir): _ \ IMPERF. : je florissais, etc. benir, to bless, to consecrate, has two forms for the PART. PERF. :-

béni, -e, blessed, applied to persons:-Un peuple béni de Dieu. bénit, -e, consecrated, to things:-pain bénit; eau bénite.

hair, to hate, in the Singular of Pres. Indic. and Imperative has i instead of I, and is then pronounced as one syllable:-

Je hais, tu hais, il hait; but Plural-n. haïssons, v. haïssez, etc.

§ 4. -- A COMPARATIVE TABLE OF TENSES IN FRENCH AND ENGLISH.

Perfect (Complete). Perfect and Continuous.	I have received I have been receiving	j ai reçu.	I had received I had been receiving	j'eus reçu.	I shall have received I shall have been receiving	j'aurai reçu.
Imperfect (Incomplete) or Continuous.	I am receiving	ois.	I was receiving, I used (was wont) to receive	je recevals.	I shall be receiving I sh	evrai.
Simple or Indefinite.	I receive, I do receive	je reçois.	I received, I did receive	je reçus.	I shall receive	je recevrai.
	PRESENT		PAST		FUTURE	

N.B.-The above table shows that (with the exception of the Past) French, as compared with English, is defective in tenses, since it has no special tense to express *incomplete* or *continuous* action in the Present and Future; thus, in French the—

PRESENT—Je recols, means I do receive, I am receiving, as well as I receive; FUTURE— je recevred, ,, I shall be receiving,

§ 5. The Passive Voice is formed by means of the Auxiliary Verb être and the Part. Perf. of the Verb to be conjugated.

This Part. Perf. must agree in Gender and Number with its

Subject.

INFINITIVE. PRESENT. PARTICIPLE. être honoré, * to be honoured. || étant honoré, * being honoured.

PERFECT.

avoir été honoré,* to have been ayant été honoré,* having been honoured.

	INDI	CATIVE.	PRESI	ENT.	ST	BJUN	CTIVE.
I	αm	honoured,	etc.	1 /	I	be	honoured, etc.
je	suis	honor-é (1 (je	sois	honor-é (-ée).
tu	es	honor-é (-ée).	e	tu	sois	honor-é (-ée).
il	est	honor-é.		tha			honor-é.
elle	est	honor-ée.		00			honor-ée.
nous	sommes	honor-és		she	nous	soyons	honor-és(-ées).
vous	êtes '	honor-és	(-ées).†	wi	vous	soyez	honor-és(-ées). honor-és(-ées).
ils	sont	honor-és.		He a	118	solent	nonor-es.
elles	sont	honor-ée	S.	H	elles	soient	honor-ées.

IMPERFECT AND PRETERITE.

I	was		In order that
j'	étais	honor-é (-ée), etc.	I might be honoured, etc. (je fusse honor-é (-ée), etc.
nous	étions	honor-és (-ées), etc	e. 5 (je fusse honor-é (-ée), etc.
je	fus	honor-é (-ée, etc).	[月]
nous	fûmes	honor-és(-ées), etc	n.fussions honor-és(-ées),etc.

PRESENT PERFECT AND PAST PERFECT.

I have (had)	been honoured, etc.	Although
j'ai été	honor-é (-ée), etc.	I may have been honoured. if ale été honor-é(-ée), etc. I might have been honoured. if eusse été honor-é(-ée) letc.
j'avais été	honor-é (-ée), etc.	[] (j' ale été honor-é(-ée), etc.
		☐ { I might have been honoured.
j'eus été	honor-é (-ée), etc.	🥇 (j' eusse été honor-é(-ée,)etc.

FUTURE PRESENT.

I shall be honoured, etc.
je serai honor-é (ée).
nous serons honor-és (-ées).
FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been honoured, etc.
j' aurai été honor-é (-ée).

nous aurons été honor-és (-ées).

CONDITIONAL: PRESENT.

I should be honoured, if, etc.
je serais honor-é (-ée), si...
nous serions honor-és (-ées), si...
CONDITIONAL: PERFECT.

I should have been honoured, if, etc.
j' aurais été honor-é (-ée).
nous aurions été honor-és (-ées).

IMPERATIVE.

sois honor-é (-ée), be (thou) soyons honorés(-ées), let us be honoured. honoured. soyez honor-és (-ées), be (ye) honoured. qu'il soit honoré, let him be qu'ils soient honorés, let them be h.

^{*} f. honorée; plur. m. honorés, plur. f. honorées. † Or, honoré (e) when vous is virtually sing.

§ 6. Reflexive Verbs are of two kinds :-

INFINITIVE.

(a) Exclusively Reflexive :- se repentir, to repent:

(b) Occasionally Reflexive:—se sentir, to feel one's self.

Many of these are not used reflexively in English :-

se facher, to get angry; se promener, to take a walk, etc. (See Ex. 28.) PRESENT.

se laver, to wash one's self.				ll se	se lavant, washing one's self.					
		INDICA	TIVE.	PRESI	ENT.	SUB	UNC	CTIVE.		
$\mathbf{je}_{\substack{\text{tu}\\\text{il}\\\text{elle}\\\text{on}}}}$	me te se se	lave, laves, lave, lave, lave,	he washes	est thyself.	shes that sire que	/je	me te se se se	yself, etc. lave. laves. lave, lave,		

nous nous lavons, we wash ourselves. vous vous lavez. you wash yourselves. ils se lavent, they wash themselves. ellesse lavent.

vous vous laviez,

INTERROGATIVE. INDICATIVE PRESENT. NEGATIVE.

Do I wash myself? etc. lavé-je? or, Est-ce que je me me laves-tu? Dave ? etc. te lave-t-il (-elle, -on)? 80 nous lavons-nous? vous lavez-vous? lavent-ils (-elles) ? 80

I do not wash myself, etc. ie lave pas. ne me laves pas. tu ne te ne se lave pas. nous ne nous lavons pas, vous ne vous lavez pas. ils ne se lavent pas.

PARTICIPLE.

nous nous lavions.

lavent.

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE COMBINED:-

Am I not washing myself? etc.

ne me lavé-je pas? ne te laves-tu pas? ne se lave-t-il pas? ne nous lavons-nous pas? ne vous lavez-vous pas? lavent-ils pas? ne se

AFFIRMATIVE. IMPERATIVE. NEGATIVE.

lave-toi, wash thyself (yourself). qu'il se lave, let him wash himself.

lavons-nous, let us wash ourselves. lavez-vous, wash yourselves. qu'ils se lavent, let them wash them-

ne te lave pas, do not wash thyself. qu'il ne se lave pas let him not wash himself. Tourselves. ne nous lavons pas, let us not wash ne vous lavez pas, do not wash yourselves. [wash themselves. qu'ils ne se lavent pas, let them not

Like the Present, conjugate the other Simple Tenses :ie me lavais, I was washing my- avant que je me lavasse,... before 1 washed myself. self, etc. je me lavai, I washed myself, etc. je me laverais, si... I should wash jemelaverai. Ishall wash muself, etc.

muself if ...

INFINITIVE

elles se sont

PARTICIPLE.

lavées.

Formed throughout with être (and never with avoir; see Ex. 27). PERFECT.

8'6	$\textbf{s'\'etre lav\'e}, to have washed one's \textit{self.} \\ \ \textbf{s'\'etantlav\'e}, having \textit{washed one's \textit{self.}} \\ \ \textbf{s'etantlav\'e}, having \textit{washed one's \textit{self.}} \\ $						
-	IN	DICATIVE.	PRESENT	PER	FECT.	SUBJU	INCTIVE.
	I have washed myself, etc.		Al	though	h I have was	hed myself, etc.	
	je	me suis	lavé (-ée).			me sois	lavé (-ée).
	tu	t'es	lavé (-ée).	L'		te sois	lavé (-ée).
)s' est	lavé.			se soit	lavé.
	elle	s' est	lavée.			se soit	lavée.
-	nous	noussomm	eslavés(-ées).		nous	nous soyor	ıs lavés (-ées).
	vous	vous êtes	lavés (-ées).	noi	vous	vous soyez	lavés (-ées).
1	ils	se sont	lavés.	3	ils	se soient	lavés.

INDICATIVE PRESENT. NEGATIVE.

ellesse soient

lavées.

Have I washed myself? etc. I have not washed myself, etc. me suis-je lavé (-ée)? je ne me suis pas lavé (-ée). ne t' es pas t' es-tu lavé (-ée)? lavé (-ée). tu lavé? (lavée)? il (elle) ne s' est pas lavé (-ée). s' est-il (-elle) nous sommes - nous lavés (-ées)? | n.ne nous sommes pas lavés (-ées). lavés (-ées)? v. ne vous êtes pas lavés (-ées). vous êtes-vous se sont-ils (-elles) lavés? (lavées)? ils (elles) ne se sont pas lavés (-ées).

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE COMBINED.

Have I not washed myself? etc.

ne me suis-je pas lavé (-ée)? ne nous sommes-nous pas lavés (-ées)? ne t' es-tu pas lavé (-ée)? ne vous êtes-vous pas lavés (-ées)? ne s'est-il(elle)pas lavé (-ée)? ne se sont-ils (-elles) pas lavés (-ées)?

Like the Pres. Perfect are conjugated the other Compound Tenses:

I had washed myself, etc. je m' étais (me fus) lavé (-ée).

I shall have washed myself, etc. je me serai lavé (-ée).

I might have washed muself, etc. je me fusse lavé (-ée), etc.

I should have washed myself, etc. je me serais lavé (-ée), etc.

The Participle Perfect must agree in Gender and Number with the Reflexive Pronoun, if the latter is the Direct Object; the Part. Perfect remains invariable, if the Reflexive Pronoun is an Indirect Object:-

Elle s'est lavée; She has washed herself; but-

Elle s'est procuré un billet; She has got a ticket for herself.

The Reflexive Form of conjugation is also used with Reciprocal Verbs, i.e. Verbs the action of which, instead of reacting (reflecting) on the same agent (i.e. the Subject), is described as mutually affecting the two or more different agents implied by the Subject :-

Ils se haïssent; They hate each other, or one another.

(a) Denoting the state of the atmosphere:—

Pendant un orage il pleut, il grêle, il tonne, il éclaire. En hiver (pron. = ivère) il gèle, il

neige.

Au printemps il dégèle.

During a thunderstorm it rains, it hails, it thunders, it lighters. In winter it freezes, it snows,

In spring it thaws.

Notice the following impers forms of faire, § 11 (d):-

Quel temps (pron. = tan) fait-il?— Tantôt il fait beau temps, tantôt mauvais temps.

Au mois d'août (pron. = ou) il fait chaud.

Au printemps il fait doux. En automne * il fait frais. En hiver il fait froid. Il fait jour à six heures. Il fait nuit (sombre) après le

coucher du soleil. En hiver il fait du brouillard. En mars † il fait de la poussière.

Il fait clair de lune.

What sort of weather is it?-Sometimes it is fine, at other times it is bad weather. In August it is hot.

In spring it is mild. In autumn it is cool. In winter it is cold. It is daylight at six. It is dark after sunset.

In winter it is foggy. In March it is dusty. The moon shines.

* In automne, the m is not pronounced. † s sounded.

(b) Only occasionally impersonal:—

Il s'agit de faire son devoir. De quoi s'agissait-il?-Il s'agissait de payer. De qui s'agissait-il?-Il s'agissait de nous. Il s'agira de votre honneur.

The question is to do one's duty.* What was it necessary to do?— It was necessary to pay. Who was concerned?-We were concerned. Your honour will be at stake.

* Notice the different ways of rendering s'agir de in English.

Il importe que vous restiez.

Il arrive souvent qu'on est trompé. Il semble que cela soit facile,

Il y va de votre vie.

Il y va de vos intérêts.

Il me faut une clef (pron. = clé).

It is important that you should stay. It often happens that one is deceived.

It seems to be easy.

Your life is at stake.

Your interests are at stake, etc.

I want (must have) a key.

Il te faut un dé, etc. (See Ex. 42, 43.) You want (must have) a thimble.

Y avoir, (there) to be. - I. SIMPLE TENSES.

Il y a quelqu'un ici.

Il y a des gens là-bas.

Il y avait (out) une fois une fée.

Il y avait (eut) des accidents.

Il y aura (aurait) du fruit.

Crois-tu qu'il y ait du danger ? Quoiqu'il y eût du danger.

There is some one here.

There are people over there.

There was once a fairy.

There were (occurred) accidents.

There will (would) be fruit.

Do you think there is any danger ! Although there was danger.

II. COMPOUND TENSES.

Il y a (avait) eu un orage, etc.

Il y aura eu un accident, etc.

Il y aurait eu des pertes, etc. Quoiqu'il y ait eu de la pluie.

There has (had) been a thunderstorm, etc.

There must have been an accident. etc.

There would have been losses, etc. Although there has been some rain.

III. INTERROGATIVE.

Y a-t-il loin d'ici à Genève ? Combien y a-t-il d'ici à Londres? How far is it to London? Y avait-il souvent des concerts? Y a-t-il eu une tempête?

Ya-t-il longtemps que tu es ici? — Have you been here a long time? — Mais oui, il y a une demi-heure.

Il n'y a que quinze jours.

Is it far from here to Geneva? Were there often concerts? Has there been a storm ?

Why yes, for half an hour. Combien y a-t-il qu'il est parti !- How long has he been gone !-Only a fortnight.

IV. NEGATIVE.

Il n'y a pas de danger ici. Il n'y avait jamais tant de monde.

Il n'y a guère eu de visiteurs. Il n'y avait pas eu d'argent.

There is no danger here. There were never so many people, There have hardly been any visitors. There had not been any money, etc.

V. INTERROGATIVE-NEGATIVE.

N'y a-t-il personne à la maison? Is there nobody at home? N'v avait-il rien à faire?

Was there nothing to do (to be

N'y aurait-il pas eu de l'eau ?

Would not there have been any water?

N.B.—(1.) The Future and Imperative are only given when (3.) Verbs marked † are anomalous; t.e. the derived

(3.) Verbs marked † are anomalous; i.e. the derived				
Infin. Pres.	PARTICIPLE PRES.	PARTICIPLE PERF.	PRETERITE.	
aller+(Ex.31), to go. Fur. j' irai, I shall go, etc.	all-ant, going.	allé, gone. Compound Tenses: je suis allé, j' étais allé, je fus allé, je serai allé, etc.	j' allai, etc. I went, etc.	
s' en aller (Ex. 32) to go away. je m' en irai, I shall go away, etc.	je m' en sui tu t' en es il (elle) s' en est n. nous en s	allé (-ée), ommes allés (-ées), otes allés (-ées),	jem'en allai, etc. I went away, etc.	
ne pas s' en allant pas, not to go away, not to go away. not to go away				
PRESENT PERFECT (Indéfini). INTERROGATIV m' en irai-je ? Shall I go sway ? etc. PRESENT PERFECT (Indéfini). INTERROGATIV m' en suis-je allé (-ée)? t' en es-tu allé (-ée)? s' en est-il (elle) allé (-ée)? n. en sommes-nous allés (-ées)? v. en êtes-vous allés (-ées)? s' en sont-ils (elles) allés (-ées)?				
Fur. ne m'en irai-je pas? Shall I not go away? etc.	ne t' en es-tu pas allé? ne s' en est-il pas allé?			

irregularly formed. (2.) The Conditional always follows the Future. Tenses are not formed regularly according to § 1.

Indicative Pres.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRES.	IMPERATIVE.			
je vais, I go, etc. tu vas, il va, n. all-ons, v. all-ez, ils vont.	j' aill-e, I go, etc. tu aill-es, il aill-e, n. all-ions, v. all-iez, ils aill-ent.	1. — allons, let us go. 2. va,* go. allez, go (ye). * vas-, before en or y:— vas-en chercher; go and fetch some. vas-y; go there (thither).			
je m' en vais, tu t' en vas, il s' en va, n. nous en allons, v. vous en allez, ils s' en vont.	je m' en aille, tu t' en ailles, il s' en aille, n. nous en allions, v. vous en alliez, ils s' en aillent.	va-t' en, go (thou) away. allons-nous-en, let us go away allez-vous-en, go (ye) away.			
FORM. je ne m'en vais pas, tu ne t'en vas pas, il ne s'en va pas, n. ne nous en allons pas, v. ne vous en allez pas, ils ne s'en vont pas. ne nous en allons pas, let us not go away. ne vous en allez pas, ne vous en allez pas, not (ye) go away.					

[away?

FORM. m' en vais-je? t' en vas-tu? s' en va-t-il? nous en allons-nous? vous en allez-vous?

FORMS COMBINED.

s' en vont-ils?

ne m' en vais je pas? Am I not going ne t' en vas-tu pas? ne s' en va-t-il pas? ne nous en allons-nous pas? ne vous en allez-vous pas? ne s' en vont-ils pas?

envoyer + (Ex. 32), to send FUTURE: j' enverrai. For the PRESENT, see p. 17 (e). The other parts are regular. Thus: renvoyer, to send back: Fut. je renverrai, etc.

Obs.—All Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation differ from the Regular-

by the absence of the character iss- in the Part. Pres., and its derived tenses, compare:—fin-ir; fin-iss-ant; n. fin-iss-ons; je fin-iss-ais, etc., with—dorm-ir; dorm-ant; n. dorm-ons; je dorm-ais, etc.

Infinitive Pres.	PARTICIPLE PRES.	PARTICIPLE PERF.	PRETERITE.
(The Future is given only if irregular.)		(The Pres. Perfect is given only if formed with 6tre.)	
(a)dorm-ir(Ex.33) to sleep	dorm-ant	dormi Compound Tenses. j'ai (aie) j'avais j'eus (eusse) j'aurai j'aurais	je dorm-is, tu dorm-is, il dorm-it, n. dorm-îmes, v. dorm-îtes, ilsdorm-irent.
ment-ir to lie	ment-ant	menti	je ment-is, etc.
se repent-ir to repent	se repent-ant	repenti (il s'est repenti, elle s'est repentie, n. n. sommes repentis, elles se sont repenties). (See p. 21.)	je me repent-is etc.
sent-ir to feel, to smell	sent-ant	senti	je sent-is, etc.
serv-ir to serve	serv-ant	servi	je serv-is, etc.
part-ir to set out	part-ant	parti (see p. 13) il est parti, elle est partie,	je part-is, etc.
sort-ir to go out	sort-ant	n. sommes partis (es). sorti il est sorti, elle est sortie,	je sort-is, etc.
bouill-ir (Ex. 34) to boil (intrans.)	bouill-ant	n. sommes sortis (-es). bouilli	je bouill-is, etc.
faill-ir to fail FUT. faudrai	(faill-ant)	failli	je faill-is, etc.

(2) by the Present Tense-inflections (singular) -s, -s, -t, or -e, -es, -e, instead of -is, -is, -is, -it.

Compare—je fin-is, tu fin-is, il fin-it (regular),
with—je cour-s, tu cour-s, il cour-t
or with—je couvr-e, tu couvr-es, il couvr-e} irregular.

Indicative Present.	Subjunct. Pres.	COMPOUND VERBS, AND REMARKS.
The following drop their final stem-consonants (m, t, v, ill) in the Singular:—		Conjugate thus-
je dor-s, tu dor-s, il dor-t, n. dorm-ons, v. dorm-ez, ils dorm-ent.	je dorm-e, tu dorm-es, il dorm-e, n. dorm-ions, v. dorm-iez, ils dorm-ent.	endormir, to lull to sleep. s'endormir, to fall asleep. se rendormir, to fall asleep again.
je men-s, n. ment-ons, tu men-s, v. ment-ez, il men-t, ils ment-ent.	je ment-e, etc.	démentir, to give the lie.
je me repen-s, tu te repen-s, il se repen-t, n. n. repent-ons, v. v. repent-ez, ils se repent-ent.	je me repent-e , etc.	
je sen-s, n. sent-ons, tu sen-s, v. sent-ez, il sen-t, ils sent-ent.	je sent-e, etc.	consentir, to consent. pressentir, to forebode. ressentir, to resent; se ressentir, to feel the effects.
je ser-s, n. serv-ons, tu ser-s, v. serv-ez, il ser-t, ils serv-ent.	je serv-e, etc.	(asservir, to enslave, is regular:— asservissant, etc.) desservir, to clear the table; to do an ill office.
je par-s, n. part-ons, tu par-s, v. part-ez, il par-t, ils part-ent.	je part-e, etc.	départir, to dispense, to divide. repartir, to start again; repartant. (répartir, to distribute, is regular: répartissant, etc.)
je sor-s, n. sort-ons, tu sor-s, v. sort-ez, il sor-t, ils sort-ent.	je sort-e, etc.	ressortir, to go out again. (ressortir, to be in the jurisdiction; ressortissant, etc.) [etc.) (assortir, to assort; assortissant.
(je bou-s,* n. bouill-ons), (tu bou-s, v. bouill-ez), il bou-t, ils bouill-ent.	je bouill-e, etc.	faire bouillir, to boil (transitive). * The 1st and 2d pers. are hardly ever used.
(je fau-x, n. faill-ons),* (tu fau-x, v. faill-ez), il fau-t, ils faill-ent.	il faill-e, etc.	défaillir, to feel fuint, used in In- finitive; Pres. Indic. Plur.; Pres. Part., Imperf. and Pret.; seldom in other tenses. faillir = to become bankrupt, is regular.

			0 9
Infinitive Pres.	PARTICIP. PRES.	PARTICIP. PERF.	PRETERITE.
(b) vêt-ir (Ex. 34) to clothe	vêt-ant	vêtu	je vêt-is, etc.
fu-ir (cf. § 3, e) to flee	fuy-ant (See p. 17, e.)	fui	je fui-s, etc.
ou-Ir † to hear (FUT. j' oirai, obsolete)	(oy-ant)	oui	(j' ouïs)
cueill-ir (Ex. 34) to gather, collect Fur. je cueillerai	cueill-ant	cueill-i	je cueill-is, etc.
saill-ir (3rd pers. only) to jut out Fur. saillerai	saill-ant	saill-i	il saill-it, etc.
assaill-ir to assail	assaill-ant	assaill-i	j' assaill-is, etc.
ouvr-ir (Ex. 34) to open	ouvr-ant	The following have the Part. Perf. in -ert:— ouv-ert	j' ouvr-is, etc.
couvr-ir to cover	couvr-ant	couv-ert	je couvr-is, etc.
offr-ir to offer	offr-ant	off-ert	j' offr-is, etc.
souffr-ir to suffer	souffr-ant	souff-ert	je souffr-is, etc.

Indicative Present.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRES.	COMP. VERBS AND REMARKS.
je vêt-s, n. vêt-ons, tu vêt-s, v. vêt-ez, il vêt, ils vêt-ent.	je vêt-e, etc.	dévêtir, to divest. revêtir, to invest.
je fui-s, n. fuy-ons, tu fui-s, v. fuy-ez, il fui-t, ils fui-ent.	je fui-e, etc.	s'enfuir, to run away.
(j' oi-s, n. oy-ons), (tu oi-s, v. oy-ez), (il oi-t, ils oi-ent).	(j' oie, etc.)	All Simple Parts, except the <i>Infinit</i> . and <i>Part. Perf.</i> , are obsolete.
The following have the 1st Conjendings:—e, es, e:— je cueill-e, n. cueill-ols, tu cueill-es, v. cueill-ez, il cueill-e, ils cueill-ent.	je cueill-e, etc.	Like cueillir, conjugate:— accueillir, to velcome, to receive. recueillir, to gather, to reap. se recueillir, to collect one's self.
il saill-e, ils saill-ent.	il saill-e, etc.	saillir, to gush, is regular:— saillissant.
j' assaill-e, n.assaill-ons, tu assaill-es,v.assaill-ez, il assaill-e, ilsassaill-ent		tressaillir, to start, to shudder
j' ouvr-e, n. ouvr-ons, tu ouvr-es, v. ouvr-ez, il ouvr-e, ils ouvr-ent.	j' ouvr-e, etc.	entr'ouvrir, to set ajar; rouvrir, to reopen.
je couvr-e, n. couvr-ons, tu couvr-es, v. couvr-ez, il couvr-e, ils couvr-ent.	je couvr-e,	découvrir, to discover.
j' offr-e, n. offr-ons, tu offr-es, v. offr-ez, il offr-e, ils offr-ent.	j' offr-e, etc.	
je souffr-e, n. souffr-ons, tu souffr-es, v. souffr-ez, il souffr-e, ils souffr-ent.		

Infinitive Pres.	PARTICIP. PRES.	PARTICIPLE PERF.	Preterite.
Fut. contracted :—		Contracted :-	Contracted:—
(c) acquér-ir † to acquire (Ex.37) FUT. J' acquerrai	acquér-ant	acqu-is	j' acqu-is, etc.
ten-ir† (Ex. 36) to hold Fur. je tiendrai	ten-ant	ten-u	je tin-s, n.tîn-mes, tu tin-s, v.tin-tes, il tin-t, ilstin-rent.
ven-ir† (Ex. 35) to come Fur. je viendrai	ven-ant	ven-u (je suis ven-u (-ue), tu es ven-u (-ue), il est ven-u, elle est ven-ue, n. sommes ven-us ((-ues), ils sont ven-us, elles sont ven-ues).	je vin-s, n.vîn-mes, tu vin-s, v. vîn-tes, il vin-t, ils vin-rent.
mour-ir†(Ex.37) to die Fut. je mourrai	mour-ant	mort (il est mort, elle est mort-e, ils sont mort-s, elles sont mort-es).	je mour-us, etc.
cour-ir † (Ex. 37) to run Fut. je courrai	cour-ant	cour-u	je cour-us, etc.
Defective .— gésir (Ex. 37) to lie, to rest	gis-ant * Impf.gisais* *Pron. s=ss	(wanting)	(wanting)
férir to strike	(wanting)	fér-u (obsolete)	(wanting)

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRES.

COMPOUND VERBS AND REMARKS.

The stem-vowel altered in the Singular

and 3d person Plural. j' acquièr-e, acquier-s, tu acquier-s. tu acquièr-es. il acquier-t. il acquièr-e. n. acquer-ons, n. acquér-ions, v. acquer-ez, v. acquér-iez. ils acquièr-ent. ils acquièr-ent. ie tien-s. je tlenn-e. tu tien-s. tu tienn-es. il tienn-e, il tien-t, n. ten-ons. n. ten-ions. v. ten-ez. v. ten-iez. ils tienn-ent. ils tienn-ent. je vien-s, je vienn-e, tu vien-s, tu vienn-es, il vienn-e, il vien-t, n. ven-ions. n. ven-ons, v. ven-ez. v. ven-iez. ils vienn-ent. ils vienn-ent. je meur-s, je meur-e, tu meur-es, tu meur-s. il meur-t.

il meur-e. n. mour-ons, n. mour-ions. v. mour-ez. v. mour-iez. ils meur-ent. ils meur-ent.

je cour-s, tu cour-s. il cour-t. n. cour-ons, v. cour-ez, ils cour-ent.

-, n. gis-ons. -, v. gis-ez, il git, ils gis-ent.

(wanting)

(wanting)

je cour-e,

tu cour-es,

il cour-e.

n. cour-ions,

v. cour-iez,

ils cour-ent.

(wanting)

conquerir, to conquer. s'enquérir, to inquire; requérir, to require, quérir, to fetch (Infinitive only).

s'abstenir, to abstain; appartenir. to belong. contenir, to contain: détenir, to detain. entretenir, to keep up : maintenir.

to maintain. obtenir, to obtain; retenir, to retain. soutenir, to sustain, to assert.

advenir (or avenir), to happen; circonvenir, to impose upon; contrevenir à, to infringe; convenir, to suit; devenir, to become; disconvenir, to dis-agree; intervenir, to interfere; parvenir, to attain, to reach; prevenir, to warn; provenir, to proceed from; revenir, to come back; se souvenir de, to remember; subvenir à, to relieve; survenir, to happen.

se mourir, to be dying, used in all simple tenses, except in the Preterite.

accourir, to hasten to; concourir, to concur; discourir, to discourse: parcourir, to run over ; secourir, to kelp, etc.

courre (le cerf), Obsol. Infinitive, to hunt (the stag, etc.)

Obs.-Ci-git, here lies (on gravestones).

issir (obsolete), to descend from, used in Comp. Tenses only:je suis issu, etc.

§ 10.—Third

Infinitive Pres.	PART. PRES.	PARTICIPLE PERF.	PRETERITE.
Fur. contracted :—		Contracted :-	Contracted :
(a) recev-oir (Ex. 38) to receive Fut. je recevral	recev-ant	reç-u	je reçu-s, tu reçu-s, il reçu-t, n. reçû-mes, v. reçû-tes, ils reçu-rent.
dev-oir (Ex. 39) to owe FUT. je devrai, Cond. je devrais, I ought to	dev-ant	dû, f. due Notice the Condit. PERF.:— j'aurais dû, I ought to have, etc.	je du-s, n. dû-mes, tudu-s, v. dû-tes, il du-t, ils du-rent
(b) sav-oir † (Ex. 40) to know Fut. je saurai	sach-ant, IMPF.: savais	su	je su-s, etc.
mouv-oir† to move Fur. je mouvrai	mouv-ant	mu	je mu-s, etc.
pleuv-oir to rain Fur. il pleuvra	pleuv-ant	plu	il plu-t.
pouv-oir† can, to be able FUT. je pourrai	pouv-ant	pu Notice the Condit. PERF.:— j'aurais pu, I might (could) have, etc.	je pu-s, etc.
(c) voul-oir†(Ex. 41) to wish, to want Fut. je voudrai Cond. je voudrais I should like to	voul-ant	Notice the Condit. Perf.: j'aurais voulu, [etc. I should have liked to,	je voulu-s, etc.
val-oir † (Ex. 44) to be worth Fur. je vaudrai	val-ant	valu Condit. Perf.:— Il aurait mieux valu, it would have been [better.]	je valu-s, etc.
fall-oir,† must, to be necessary. Fur. il faudra	(wanting)	fallu IMPERSONAL:—-	il me fallu-t, il te fallu-t, il lui fallu-t, etc.

Conjugation.

Indicative Present.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRES.	Com. Verbs and Remarks.		
* The Stem con				
je reçoi-s, n. recev-ons, tu reçoi-s, v. recev-ez, il reçoi-t, ils reçoiv-ent.	reçoiv-e, recev-iors, reçoiv-es, recev-iez, reçoiv-e, reçoiv-ent	apercevoir, to perceive; concevoir, to conceive; percevoir, to collect (taxes. etc.) décevoir, to deceive.		
je doi-s, n. dev-ons, tu doi-s, v. dev-ez, il doi-t, ils doiv-ent.	doiv-e, dev-ions, doiv-es, dev-iez, doiv-e, doiv-ent.	redevoir, to owe still.		
The Stem-vow	el altered:—			
je sai-s, n. sav-ons, tu sai-s, v. sav-ez, il sai-t, ils sav-ent.	sach-e, sach-ions, sach-es, sach-iez, sach-e, sach-ent.	IMPERATIVE:— Sing. (2) sache. Plur. (1) sachons. (2) sachez.		
je meu-s, n. mouv-ons, tu meu-s, v. mouv-ez, il meu-t, ils meuv-ent.	meuv-es, mouv-iez, meuv-e, meuv-ent.	émouvoir, to stirup, to affect. promouvoir, to promote, used in Infinit. and Com- pound Tenses only.		
il pleu-t.	il pleuve,			
	II pieuve,			
je peu-x, * n. pouv-ons, tu peu-x, v. pouv-ez, il peu-t, ils peuv-ent.	puiss-e, puiss-ions, puiss-es, puiss-iez, puiss-e, puiss-ent,	* Or—je puis (1st pers. sing. only). Interrog. always:—puis-je?		
		IMPERATIVE :-		
je veu-x, n. voul-ons, tu veu-x, v. voul-ez, il veu-t, ils veul-ent.	veuill-e, voul-ions, veuill-es, voul-iez, veuill-e, veuill-ent.	Veux (voulons), whilst, veuil-lez=be so good as to		
je vau-x, n. val-ons, tu vau-x, v. val-ez, il vau-t, ils val-ent.	vaill-e, val-ions, vaill-es, val-iez, vaill-e, vaill-ent.	équivaloir, to be equivalent; revaloir, to return like for like. PRES. SUBJ. of prévaloir, to prevail:—je prévale, etc.		
il me faut, il nous faut, il te faut, il vous faut, il lui faut, il leur faut.	il me faille, il te faille, il lui faille, etc.	falloir, Impers. (Ex. 42, 43). chaloir (impers.) only in— il ne(or, peu) m en chaut (obsol.), I don't care.		

Infinitive Pres.	Particip. Pres.	PARTICIP. PERF.	PRETERITE.
(d)déch-oir†(Ex.44) to decay Fur. (je décherrai)	(wanting) (IMPF.:— déchoyals)	déchu (il est déchu, elle est déchue)	je déchu-s, etc.
éch-oir† to fall due FUT. écherra	éch-é-ant	échu (il est échu, elle est échue)	(j'échu-s) (tu échu-s) il échu-t, etc.
voir† (Ex. 44) to see Fur. je verrai	voyant	vu	je vi-s, etc.
(e) (Fur. contracted.) s'asse-oir + (Ex. 45) to sit down Fur. je m'assiérai or— je m'assoirai or— je m'asseyerai	s'assey-ant or— (s'assey-ant)	assis (il s'est assis, elle s'est assise)	je m'assi-s, tu t'assi-s, il s'assi-t, n. n. assî-mes, v. v. assî-tes, ils s'assi-rent.
surse-oir to suspend, put off, defer (law term)	sursoy-ant	sursis	je sursi-s, etc.
seoir,† to fit, to be becoming Fur. il siéra	sey-ant(séant) IMPF.:— il seyait	(wanting)* No Compound Tenses	(wanting)

appar-oir (obsolete) to be evident cobsolete) to be accustomed to only used in the Imperf. (3 p. sing. followed by an Infinit.):—

Indicative Present.	SUBJUNCT. PRES.	Comp. Verbs and Remarks.
je déchoi-s, tu déchoi-s, il déchoi-t (n. déchoy-ons)	je déchoi-e	choir, to fall, is only used in the Infinitive (se laisser choir); and Part. Perf.:—chu, f. chue (obsolete).
(v. déchoy-ez), ils déchoi-ent.	•	The adj. méchant is originally the Part. Pres. of an old Verb (mescheoir) of this class.
— — — [il échoi-t, — [il éche-t, ils échoi-ent.	(wanting)	si le cas y échet, le cas échéant, s'il y échet, the case occur- ring.
je voi-s, n. voy-ons, tu voi-s, v. voy-ez, il voi-t, ils voi-ent.	je voi-e, etc.	pourvoir, prévoir, to provide; to foresee:— Part. pourvus; prévis. Fur. pourvoirai; prévoirai. entrevoir, to catch a glimpse; revoir, to see again.
je m' assied-s, tu t' assied-s, il s' assied,	assey-es, assey-es,	asseoir, to seat, to set. rasseoir, to set down again; (rassis, composed, stale). se rasseoir, to sit down again.
n. n. assey-ons,	assey-ions,	se tasseon, to see down again.
v. v. assey-ez,	assey-iez,	
ils s' assey-ent.	assey-ent;	
or—assoi-s (assoy-ons),	or— assoi-e, etc.	
assoi-s (assoy-ez),	(assoy-ions),	
assoi-t, assoi-ent.	etc.	
je sursoi-s, n. sursoy-ons, tu sursoi-s, v. sursoy-ez, il sursoi-t, ils sursoi-ent.	(unusual)	
il sied, ils sié-ent. IMPERAT. : sieds-toi (fam.) be seated.	(unusual)	Booir, to sit, to be situated; PRES. PART., Béant, sitting (law term); * PAST PART., sis, f. sise (law term), situated. messeoir (not used in Infinit.):— il messied à, it is not becoming.

il appert, it appears.

§ 10

il soulait passer son temps (Lafontaine), He used to spend his time.

	Indicative Present.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRES.	COMP. VERBS AND REMARKS.
	The original Latin stem-conso Pres. Part. and its		* Part. Perf. derived from Latin supine in -nctum, etc.
1	e plain-s, n. plai-gn-ons zu plain-s, v. plai-gn-ez, l plain-t, ils plai-gn-ent.	plai-gn-es, -gn-1ez,	se plaindre, to complain. craindre, to fear. contraindre, to compel.
t	e cein-s, n. cei-gn-ons, u cein-s, v. cei-gn-ez, l cein-t, ils cei-gn-ent.	je cei-gn-e, etc.	atteindre, to reach; astreindre, to compel; enfreindre, to in- fringe; éteindre, to extin- guish; feindre, to feign; peindre, to paint; restreindre, to restrict; teindre, to dye.
t	e join-s, n. joi-gn-ons, u join-s, v. joi-gn-ez, l join-t, ils joi-gn-ent.	je joi-gn-e, etc.	enjoindre, to enjoin; rejoindre, to overtake; poindre, to prick, to dawn; oindre, to anoint.
i	e condui-s, u condui-s, l condui-t, l condui-s-ons, c condui-s-ez, ls condui-s-ent.	conduis-e, conduis-es, conduis-e, conduis-ions, conduis-iez, conduis-ent.	Thus all verbs in -duire: déduire, to deduct; éconduire, to show out; introduire, to introduce; produire, to produce; réduire, to reduce; séduire, to seduce; traduire to translate. The simple verb "duire" is quite obsolete.
t	e construi-s, u construi-s,	je construis-e, etc.	détruire, to destroy; instruire, to instruct.
	l construi-t, n construi-s-ons,		
	. construi-s-ez, ls construi-s-ent.		
t	e cui-s, n. cui-s-ons, u cui-s, v. cui-s-ez, l cui-t, ils cui-s-ent.	je cuis-e, etc.	recuire, to boil (bake) again— (biscuit, twice baked).
t	e nui-s, n. nui-s-ons, u nui-s, v. nui-s-ez, l nui-t, ils nui-s-ent,	je nuis-e, etc.	
t	e lui-s, n. lui-s-ons, u lui-s, v. lui-s-ez, l lui-t, ils lui-s-ent.	je luis-e, etc.	reluire, to glitter, to gleam.
t	'écri-s, n. écri-v-ons, u écri-s, v. écri-v-ez, l écri-t, ils écri-v-ent.	j' écriv-e, etc.	décrire, to describe; inscrire, to inscribe; prescrire, to pre- scribe; proscrire, to proscribe; souscrire, to subscribe; trans- crire, to copy.

Infinitive Present.	PARTICIP. PRES.	PART. PERF.	PRETERITE.
(c) trai-re (Ex. 48) to milk	tray-ant	trait*	(wanting)
vainc-re . to conquer	vainqu-ant	vaincu	je va inqu-is, etc.
suiv-re to follow	suiv-ant	suivi	je suiv-is, etc.
ri-re (Ex. 49) to laugh	ri-ant	PRET. and PA	je ri-s, etc.
(d) suffi-re to suffice	suffi-s-ant	suffi	je suffi-s, etc.
di-re † (Ex. 49) to say	di-s-ant	dit	je di-s, n. df-mes, tu di-s, v. df-tes, il di-t, ils di-rent.
maudi-re to curse	maudi-ss-ant	maudit	je maudi-s, etc.
fai-re†(Ex. 50-53) to do Fut. je ferai	fai-s-ant * (* pron. = fesant, fesais, fesons, etc.)	fait	je fl-s, etc.
(e) mett-re (Ex. 54) to put, to place	mett-ant	mis	je mi-s, etc.
pren-d-re + (Ex. 55) to take, to catch	pren-ant	pris	je pri-s, etc.
batt-re to beat	batt-ant	battu	je batt-is, etc.

Indicative Present.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRES.	Comp. Verbs and Remarks,
je trai-s, n. tray-ons, tu trai-s, v. tray-ez,	je trai-e, etc.	* P.P. derived from Latin supine tractum. abstraire, to abstract; distraire,
il trai-t, ils trai-ent. je vainc-s, n. vainqu-ons,	ie vaingu-e. etc.	to divert; extraire, to extract; soustraire, to take away, etc. braire, to bray (3d pers. only).
tu vainc-s, v. vainqu-ez, il vainc, ils vainqu-ent.	,	Obs.—qu, instead of c, to preserve the hard sound of c; com- pare the fem, of adj. in -c, public, f. publique.
je sui-s, n. suiv-ons, tu sui-s, v. suiv-ez, il sui-t, ils suiv-ent.	je suiv-e, etc.	convaincre, to convince. poursuivre, to pursue, to prosecute.
n sur-t, ns sury-ont.		s'ensuivre, to follow (intransi- tive), used in 3d pers. only.
je ri-s, n. ri-ons, tu ri-s, v. ri-ez, il ri-t, ils ri-ent.	je ri-e, etc.	sourire, to smile.
je suffi-s, n. suffi-s-ons, tu suffi-s. v. suffi-s-ez.	je suffis-e, etc.	confire, to preserve (pickles, etc.), P.P. confit.
il suffi-t, ils suffi-s-ent.		circoncire, to circumcise.
je di-s, 'n. di-s-ons, tu di-s, 'v. DI-T-ES, il di-t, ils di-s-ent.	je dis-e, etc.	redire, to say again, v. redites, contredire, to contradict, v. contredisez.
maudi-s maudi-ss-ons, maudi-s maudi-ss-ez,	je maudiss-e, etc.	dédire, to retract, v. dédisez. interdire, to forbid, v. interdisez. médire, to speak ill, v. médisez. prédire, to predict, v. prédisez.
maudi-t maudi-ss-ent.		
je fai-s, n. fai-s-ons,* tu fai-s, v. FAI-T-ES, il fai-t, ils FONT.	fass-e, fass-iez, fass-e, fass-ent.	contrefaire, to feign; défaire, to undo; refaire, to do again; satisfaire, to satisfy; sur- faire, to overcharge.
je met-s, n. mett-ons, tu met-s, v. mett-ez, il met. ils mett-ent.	je mett-e, etc.	admettre, to admit; commettre, to commit; compromettre, to compromise; émettre, to emit;
ii met, iis mett-ent.		omettre, to omit; permettre, to permit; promettre, to pro- mise; remettre, to deliver, to delay; soumettre, to subdue;
je prend-s, n. pren-ons, tu prend-s, v. pren-ez,	prenn-e, pren-ions prenn-es, pren-iez,	transmettre, to transmit. apprendre, to learn; désapprendre, to unlearn; com-
il prend, ils prenn-ent.	prenn-e, prennent	prendre, to understand; en- treprendre, to undertake; déprendre, to separate; s'é-
je bat-s, n. batt-ons, tu bat-s, v. batt-ez, il bat, ils batt-ent.	je batt-e, etc.	prendre de, to be taken with; se méprendre, to be mis- taken; reprendre, to resume,
II Date offer		etc.; surprendre, to take by surprise.

40

		1	
Infinitive Pres.	PARTICIP. PRES.	PARTICIPLE PERF.	PRETERITE.
ži		Contracted:—	Contracted:
(f) connat-t-re to know (Ex. 56)	connai-ss-ant	connu	je conn-u-s, tu conn-u-s, il conn-u-t, n. conn-û-mes, n. conn-û-tes, ils conn-u-rent.
pai-t-re to graze	pai-ss-ant	(wanting)	(wanting)
croî-t-re to grow	croi-ss-ant	crû	je crû-s, etc.
naî-t-re to be born	nai-ss-ant	né (il est né,he was born elle est née)	je naqui-s, etc.
(g) croi-re (Ex.57)	croy-ant	cru	je cru-s, etc.
plai-re (intrans.) to please (Ex.58)	plai-s-ant	plu	je plu-s, etc.
tai-re to keep secret	tai-s-ant	tû, f. tue (il s'est tû, elle s'est tue)	je tu-s, etc.
li-re to read	li-s-ant	lu	je lu-s, etc.
boi-re to drink	bu-v-ant	bu	je bu-s, etc.
conclu-re to conclude	conclu-ant	conclu	je conclu-s. etc.

.

Indicative Present.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRES.	COMP. VERBS AND REMARKS.	
The Latin final stem-cons. s Pres. Part. and its			
je connai-s, tu connai-s, il connai-t, n. connai-ss-ons, v. connai-ss-ez, ils connai-ss-ent.	je connai-ss-e, tu connai-ss-es, il connai-ss-e, n. connai-ss-ions, v. connai-ss-iez, ils connai-ss-ent.	méconnaître, to slight; reconnaître, to recognise. paraître, to appear; apparaître, to appear, to become visible; comparaître, to appear in a court of justice; disparaître, to disappear. Obs.—The i takes a circumflex before t only.	
je pai-s, n. pai-ss-ons, tu pai-s, v. pai-ss-ez, il pai-t, ils pai-ss-ent.	je paiss-e, etc.	repaître, to feed:— PRET. repus, P. P. repu. se repaître de, to feed on.	
je crof-s, n. crof-ss-ons, tu crof-s, v. crof-ss-ez, il crof-t, ils crof-ss-ent.	je croiss-e, etc.	accroître, to increase; PRET. accrus; P. P. accru. décroître, to decrease; PRET. décrus; P. P. décru.	
je nai-s, n. nai-ss-ons, tu nai-s, v. nai-ss-ez, il nai-t, ils nai-ss-ent.	je naiss-e, etc.	renaître, to be born again, to re- vive (intrans.), has no Pret. nor Part. Perf.	
je croi-s, n. croy-ons,* tu croi-s, v. croy-ez, il croi-t, ils croi-ent.	croi-e, croy-ions, croi-es, croy-iez, croi-e, croi-ent.	* For y instead of i, cf. § 3 (e). accroire, is only used in Infinit., after faire:— faire accroire, to make believe.	
je plai-s, n. plai-s-ons, tu plai-s, v. plai-s-ez, il plaî-t, ils plai-s-ent.	je plais-e, etc.	déplaire, to displease. complaire, to humour.	
je tai-s, n. tai-s-ons, tu tai-s, v. tai-s-ez, il tai-t, ils tai-s-ent.	je tais-e, etc.	se taire, to be silent (hushed):— je me tais, I am silent. tu te tais, il se tait, etc.	
je li-s, n. li-s-ons, tu li-s, v. li-s-ez, il li-t, ils li-s-ent.	je lis-e, etc.	élire, to elect. réélire, to elect again. relire, to read again.	
je boi-s, n. bu-v-ons, tu boi-s, v. bu-v-ez, il boi-t, ils boi-v-ent.	boiv-e, buv-ions, boiv-es,buv-iez, boiv-e, boiv-ent.	boire (intransitive), to blot.	
conclu-s, conclu-ons, conclu-s, conclu-ez, conclu-et, conclu-ent.	je conclu-e, etc.	exclure, to exclude	

Infinitive Pres.	PARTICIP. PRES.	PARTICIPLE PERF.	PRETERITE.
(h) absou-d-re to absolve(Ex.59)	absol-v-ant	absous * (f. absoute)	(wanting)
résou-d-re to resolve, to change into	résol-v-ant	résous,†résolu‡	je résolu-s, etc.
mou-d-re to grind (in a mill, etc).	mou-l-ant	moulu	je moulu-s, etc.
cou-d-re to sew	cou-s-ant	cousu	je cousi-s
viv-re (Ex. 59) to live	viv-ant	vécu	je vécu-s
			Defective
(i) brui-re (Ex. 60) to roar, rustle	bruy-ant (adjective only)	bruit (unusual)	(wanting)
clo-re to close Fur. je elorai	(wanting)	clos	(wanting)
éclo-re to blow, to be hatched	(wanting)	éclos (elle est éclose)	(wanting)
fri-re to fry Fur. je frirai	(wanting)	frit .	(wanting)
sourd-re to spring out Fur. il sourdra	(wanting)	(wanting)	il sourd-it

Indicative Present.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRES.	COMP. VERBS AND REMARKS.	
The Latin final stem-cons. In Pres. Part. and its d			
j' absou-s,n. absol-v-ons, tuabsou-s,v. absol-v-ez, il absou-t, ils absol-v-ent.		* absous, f. absoute, absolved, acquitted. absolu (adj.), absolute. dissoudre (P. P. dissou-s, -te), to dissolve.	
je résou-s, n. résol-v-ons, turésou-s, v. résol-v-ez, il résou-t, ils résol-v-ent.		† résous, dissolved. ‡ résolu, determined.	
je moud-s, n. mou-l-ons, tu moud-s, v. mou-l-ez, il moud, ilsmou-l-ent.	je moul-e, etc.	émoudre, to whet, to sharpen. rémoudre, to whet again. remoudre, to grind (grain) again.	
je coud-s, n. cou-s-ons, tu coud-s, v. cou-s-ez, il coud, ils cou-s-ent.	je cous-e, etc.	découdre, to unsew, to rip. recoudre, to sew again.	
je vi-s, n. viv-ons, tu vi-s, v. viv-ez, il vi-t, ils viv-ent.	je viv-e, etc.	revivre (intrans.), to come to life again. faire revivre, to revive (trans.) survivre à, to survive.	
Verbs. (Ex. 60.)			
il brui-t. (no plural)		IMPERF. INDIC.:— bruissait, or bruyait, etc.	
je clo-s, (no plural) tu clo-s, il clô-t.	je clos-e.		
il éclôt, ils éclo-s-ent.	il éclos-e.	For. il éclora. ils écloront.	
je fri-s, (no plural) tu fri-s, il fri-t.		Wanting tenses are formed with faire:— nous faisons frire, etc.	
il sourd, ils sourd-ent.			

N.B.—For an Alphabetical List of Irregular Verbs, see Appendix.

§ 12. I. (a) Masculine Singular. (Ex. 64.)

Subject. Le maître parle. The master is speaking. Dir. Obj. Je respecte le maître. I respect the master. The book of the master (the Possess. Le livre du maître. master's book). Indirect (Je parle du maître. I speak of the master. Compl. Cela vient du maître. Ind. Obj. Il répond au maître. That comes from the master. He replies to the master.

Masculine Plural.

Subject.
Dir. Obj. Je respecteles maîtres.

Possess.
Les livres des maîtres.

Indirect { Je parle des maîtres.
Compl. { Cela vient des maîtres.
Ind. Obj. Je parle aux maîtres.

Les maîtres parlent. The masters are speaking.
I respect the masters.

The books of the masters (the masters' books). / 0 7

I speak of the masters.

That comes from the masters.

I speak to the masters.

(b) Feminine Singular.

Subject.

Dir. Obj. Je respecte la reine.

Possess. Le palais de la reine.

Indirect { Je parle de la reine.

Compl. (Cela vient de la reine.

Ind. Obj. Le roi parle à la reine.

La reine voyage.

I respect the queen.

The palace of the queen (the queen's palace.)

I speak of the queen.

That comes from the queen.

The king speaks to the queen.

Feminine Plural.

Subject. Les reines voyagent. The queens are travelling. Dir. Obj. Je respecte les reines. I respect the queens. The palaces of the queens. Indirect { Je parle des reines. Compl. { Cela vient des reines. Ind. Obj. Le roi parle aux reines. The king speaks to the queens.

(c) Masculine and Feminine Nouns beginning with a Vowel or silent h.

Masculine—Singular—Feminine. Subject and Dir. Obj. 1'Anglais; 1'Anglaise.

Possess. and Ind. Compl. de l'Anglais; de l'Anglaise.
Ind. Obj. à l'Anglais; à l'Anglaise.

Plural.

Subject and Dir. Obj. les Anglais; les Anglaises.

Possess. and Ind. Compl. des Anglais; des Anglaises.

Ind. Obj. aux Anglais; aux Anglaises.

RECAPITULATION.

	Masculine.	Sing	ular.	Feminine.	
beginning with— a Consonant; a Vowel.		a Consonar	beginning with-	a Vowel.	
Subj. Dir. Obj. }10	e roi,	l'Anglais;	la rein	e,	l'Anglaise.
- 1	lu roi, de	l'Anglais;			1'Anglaise.
Indir. Obj. a	u roi, à	1'Anglais;	à la rein	e, à	l'Anglaise.

Plural.

Masculine. (Beginning with a Consonant or Vowel.) Feminine.

Subj. Dir. Obj.	les rois,	les Anglais;	les reines,	les Anglaises.
Possess.	des rois,	des Anglais;	des reines,	des Anglaises.
Indir. Obj.	aux rois,	aux Anglais;	aux reines,	aux Anglaises.

The Definite Article is used in French—contrary to English usage—

- (a) before Abstract and Collective Nouns, used in a general sense:—
 L'oisiveté est la mère du vice.
 Le fer est plus dur que l'argent.

 Idleness is the mother of vice.

 Iron is harder than silver.
- (b) before Names of Continents, Countries, Provinces, Mountains *:— Les grandes puissances de l'Europe sont la Grande Bretagne, la France, l'Allemagne, l'Autriche, et la Russie. Le Vésuve n'est pas si haut que l'Etna.
 - * Obs.-The Article is, however not used-
 - (1) after on or do following a Verb which expresses residing at, going to, coming from, etc.:—

Il est en Angleterre. J'irai en France. Il vient de Belgique.

[but—Il est (ira) au Canada; because Masculine Names of Countries nearly always take the Definite Article.]

(2) if the Name of a Country, etc., is used Adjectively:—
Des vins de France,
De la laine d'Espagne.

French wines.
Spanish wool.

(c) before Names of *Titles, Dignities, Professions*, etc.:— Le roi Charles; le général Chanzy; le docteur Graves.

Notice also-

Monsieur (M. or Mr.) le directeur.
Messieurs (MM. or Mrs.) les directeurs.
Madame (Mme.) la directrice.
Mesdames (Mmes.) les directrices.
Mademoiselle (Mlle.) votre sœur.
Mesdemoiselles (Mlles.) vos sœurs.

(The director.
The lady principal.
The ladies principal.
Your sister.
Your sister.

II. Partitive Article (formed from the Possessive Case of the Definite Article; Ex. 66).

(a) If a Noun is taken in a partitive sense, i.e. if a certain quantity, number, or fraction of a whole is to be expressed, de and the Definite Article (contracted as below) must be used :-

Singular.

Definite. Partitine.

du papier, some (any) paper; paper. m. le papier, the paper. l'argent, the money. de l'argent, some (any) money; money; silver. f. la toile, the cloth. de la toile, some (any) cloth; cloth,

I'huile (f.), the oil. de l'huile, some (any) oil; oil.

Plural. (The same for masc. and fem.)

m. les ciseaux, the scissors. des ciseaux, some (any) scissors; scissors. les abricots, the apricots. des abricots, some (any) apricots; apricots. f. les prunes, the plums, des prunes, some (any) plums: plums. les_oranges, the oranges. des_oranges, some (any) oranges : oranges.

(b) de alone, without Article, is used before a Partitive Noun-

(1) if the Noun depends on an Adverb or a Noun denoting a quantity, measure, weight, etc. (cf. § 37, c); or on a negative Adverb (pas, point): Compare-

Singular.

du fruit, some (any) fruit.

de l'or, gold.

de la viande, meat,

de l'eau, water.

du pain, bread.

de l'argent, money.

beaucoup de fruit, much fruit,*

trop d'or, too much gold,

une livre de viande, a pound of meat. un verre d'eau, a glass of water.

pas de pain, no (not any) bread. point d'argent, no money at all,

Plural.

des raisins, m. grapes.

des plumes, f. pens.

des cerises, f. cherries.

des légumes, m. vegetables.

des amis, m. friends.

combien de raisins? how many grapes! trop de plumes, too many pens. une livre de cerises, a pound of cherries.

un plat de légumes, a dish of vegetables. pas (point) d'amis, no friends (at all).

(2) if the Noun is preceded by a qualifying Adjective: Compare—

du vin, wine. des arbres, trees. de bon vin, good wine. de beaux arbres, fine trees.

^{*} Bien, in the sense of beaucoup, is the only Adv. used with the full partit. Art. :-Compare: Beaucoup d'argent; with, Bien de l'argent, much money.

(3) if the Noun depends on a Verb or Adj. which itself takes de:-

Compare—Le convoi était escorté par des soldats; with—Le convoi était suivi de soldats;

Because suivre takes de, if followed by a complement.

Thus—Sur les Alpes il y a de la neige; but—Les Alpes sont couvertes de neige.

After other Prepositions, however, the full partitive Article must stand—

Nous sommes tous exposés à des revers de fortune.

Obs.—Adjectives and Perf. Partic. too may be used partitively after Indefinite Pronouns, or Numerals:—

Quelque chose de beau. Il n'y a rien de nouveau. Quoi de plus heureux?

Quoi de plus heureux? Il y eut vingt hommes de tués. Something beautiful.
There is nothing new (There is no news).
What could be more fortunate?
There were twenty men killed.

III. The Indefinite Article.

Masculine.

Subj. Un maître, un ami, a parlé. A (one) master (friend) has spoken.

D. Obj. Je cherche un maître, un ami. I am seeking a master, a friend.

Poss. L'avis d'un maître, d'un ami $\begin{cases} A \text{ master's (friend's) advice.} \\ The advice of a master. \end{cases}$

Compl. { Je parle d'un maître, d'un ami. I speak of a master, etc. Cela vient d'un maître, d'un ami. That comes from a master, etc.

I. Obj. Je parle à un maître, à un ami. I speak to a master, etc.

Feminine.

Subj. Une reine, D. Obj. On respecte une reine, L'estime d'une reine, d'une amie. The esteem of a queen.

L'estime d'une reine, d'une amie. They speak of a queen.

I. C. Cela vient d'une reine, d'une amie. That comes from a queen.

I. Obj. On parle à une reine, à une amie. They speak to a queen.

Obs. 1.—With a Verb used negatively do must, as a rule, be used instead of un(e):—
Je n'ai pas do maître. Elle n'a point d'amie.

 $\mathit{Obs}, 2, -\textsc{Dos}$ may be considered the Plural of the $\mathit{Indefinite}$ Article (generally not expressed in English):—

Subj. Des maîtres, des amis ; des reines. Masters, friends queens. Ind. Obj. À des maîtres, à des amis. To (some or any) masters, etc.

IV. Adjectives, used attributively or predicatively, agree in Number and Gender with the Substantive they qualify, whether they stand before or after it.

General Rule: Add -s to all Nouns and Adjectives not specified in the Special Rules below :-

Le vrai ami est fidèle. A true friend is faithful. Plur. Les vrais amis sont fidèles. True friends are faithful.

Special Rules :-

(a) Nouns and Adjectives ending in -au, -eu, take -x:-

Son beau château est vieux. Ses beaux châteaux sont vieux. Leur nouveau jeu est amusant.

His fine castles are old. Their new game is amusing. Leurs nouveaux jeux sont amusants. Their new games are amusing.

His fine castle is old.

Thus-le lieu, the place; plur. les lieux.

(but, la lieue, the league; dix lieues, ten leagues.)

Obs. 1 .- bleu, blue, takes -s :- Les cieux sont bleus, the skies are blue. 2.-Of Nouns ending in -ou, only the following seven take x:-

les bijoux, the jewels: les cailloux. the pebbles: les choux, the cabbages;

les hiboux, the owls. les joujoux, the playthings. les poux, the lice.

les genoux, the knees; The others take -s:—les clous, nails: les trous, holes; les fous, madmen, etc.

(b) Nouns ending in -al, or -ail, and most Adjs. in -al, change their ending into -aux :-

Singular.

Plural.

Le cheval. the horse. Leur travail, their work. National, national.

Les chevaux, the horses. Leurs travaux, their worles. Nationaux, national.

Obs.-The following Substantives in -al and -ail take -s:-

Les bals, dances; Les cals, callosities; Les attirails, gear; Les bercails, sheepfolds; (unusual in plur.)

Les détails, details;

les carnavals, carnivals; les chacals, jackals; les épouvantails, scarecrows; les éventails, fans; les gouvernails, rudders; les pals, stakes. les régals, treats. les mails, malls, mallets. les poitrails, breast-pieces. les portails, front gateways.

See also (d), p. 49. (c) Nouns and Adjectives ending in -s, -x, -z (sibilants) remain unchanged *:-

Ce Français est heureux. Ces Français sont heureux. La noix est un fruit délicieux. Les noix sont des fruits délicieux.

This Frenchman is happy. These Frenchmen are happy. The nut is a delicious fruit. Nuts are delicious fruits.

Thus-le bas, les bas, stockings; le nez, les nez, noses, etc.

Unchangeable are also-

(1) Indeclinable Parts of Speech; i.e. Adverbs (and Adverbial Phrases), Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections, and the letters of the alphabet:—

Les si et les mais. Les pour et les contre. Des a mal formés. The ifs and buts. The pros and cons. Ill-shaped A's.

(2) Proper Names :-

Les Corneille, les Molière, les Racine ont illustré le siècle de Louis XIV. Corneille, Molière, Racine have given lustre to the age of Louis XIV.

Except a few which denote historical names of families:—

Les Tarquins, les Gracques, les Antonins, [cp. Lat. Tarquini, Gracchi, etc.]

Les Condés, les Guises, les Capets, les Bourbons, les Stuarts, etc.

(3) Foreign Nouns which have not been assimilated to French:—
Les fac-similé; les post-scriptum.

Foreign words naturalised follow the General Rule: les opéras, apartés, pensums, numéros, spécimens, etc.

(d) The following in -1 have two forms for the plural, each with a different meaning:—

l'aïoul, the grandfather; les_aïoux, the ancestors; les_aïouls, grandfathers.

le ciel, the sky, heaven; les cieux, the heavens, skies;—
Le royaume (la voûte) des cieux. Des cieux d'airain.

les ciels, skies in pictures, climate, bed-testers:—

La Provence est sous un des plus beaux ciels de l'Europe.

l'œil, the eye; les youx, the eyes; les œils (æils-de-bæuf), oval windows.

le travail, the work; les travaux, the works; les travails, (1) reports (of a minister), (2) traves.

Obs.—l'all, garlie; les, aulx (common plural); les, ails (botanical term).
le bétail, cattle, has no plural; but bestiaux is used in the same sense.
l'appat, the bait; les, appas, the charms; les, appats baits.

N.B.-1. See APPENDIX IV. for a full list of Nouns-

- (a) used in the Plural only;
- (b) used with a different meaning in the Singular and in the Plural.
 - 2. For Compound Nouns, see §§ 13, 14.

6 13. (a) NOUN+NOUN. (Ex. 67.)

(1) WITHOUT ARTICLE:-

- (a) in Apposition; the latter standing as a rule after the Noun it qualifies (exceptionally only before—le chef-lieu, chief (county) town): la pierre-ponce, pumice-stone: le chou-fleur, cauliflower.
- (3) in Genitive relation; with de expressed or understood: le chef-d'œuvre, masterpiece ; le timbre-poste, postage stamp. l'arc de triomphe, triumphal arch; l'huile d'olive, olive oil. le chemin de fer, railway; l'encre de Chine, Indian ink.
- (2) WITH de + DEFINITE ARTICLE :le vent du nord, north wind; le droit des gens, international law.

Compare-Definite and Substantival, Indefinite and Adjectival:with la tour de l'église, the tower of the church ; une tour d'église, a church tower. le palais de la reine, the queen's palace; un port de reine, a queenly bearing. le jeu de l'enfant, the child's plaything; un jeu d'enfant, child's play.

(3) LINKED BY à (without or with the Article), to denote aptness, destination, purpose, and especially the characteristic feature:

la pompe à incendie, fire-engine; le bateau à vapeur, steamboat. le serpent à sonnettes, rattlesnake; le moulin à vent, windmill. le marché au blé, corn-market; une tarte à la crême, cream tart; la poste aux lettres, letter post; le café au lait, coffee with milk:

l'éclairage au gaz, gas lighting. chocolat à la vanille, vanilla chocolate. la foire aux vanités, Vanity Fair.

le verre à vin, the wine-glass: la tasse à thé, the tea-cup;

l'arc-en-ciel, rainbow:

Definite and Substantival, la boîte aux lettres, letter-box; le pot au lait, the pot in which the milk is

Compareun verre de vin, a glass of wine. une tasse de thé, a cup of tea. Indefinite and Adjectival :le papier à lettres, letter paper. un pot à lait, a milk-pot.

(un pot de lait, a pot full of milk.) (4) LINKED BY en, AND A FEW OTHER PREPOSITIONS:le général en chef, general in chief.

Châlon-sur-Saône, * Chalon on the Bachelier-ès-lettres+, Bachelor of Saone; (* pron. = Sône.) † ès (s sounded) is an archaic form of the contraction of en+les.

(b) NOUN + ADJECTIVE.

(1) the Adjective standing before the Noun:-

le libre échange, free trade. le haut fourneau, the blast furnace. la grand'mère, the grandmother. le bon marché, the bargain.

le grand-père, the grandfather

le petit-fils, the grandson.

la chauve-souris, the bat. la petite-fille, the grand-daughter. (2) the Adjective standing after the Noun:-

le bal masqué, the masked ball. le garde-champêtre, the rural guard. le nom propre, the proper noun. le fer-blanc, the tin-plate. l'eau-forte, aqua-fortis. la carte postale, the postcard.

(c) NOUN + VERB.

le porte-drapeau, standard-bearer. l'abat-jour, lamp-shade. le marchepied, footstool, step. le garde-manger, meat-safe.

la poêle à frire, frying-pan,

la chambre à coucher, bedroom. la salle à manger, dining-room. la machine à coudre, sewing machine,

- § 14. As a General Rule only Nouns and Adjectives are declinable; accordingly the sign of the Plural is added-
- (a) to both Components, if both are either substantival or adjectinal :-

le chou-fleur. les choux-fleurs, the cauliflowers. le cerf-volant. les cerfs-volants, the kites.

Exception: la grand'mère, plur. les grand'mères, and a few other feminine Nouns compounded with grand'; see also (e).

(b) to the first Component only, if the other is governed by a preposition (comp. man-of-war, Plur. men-of-war):-

le chef-d'œuvre, l'arc-en-ciel.

les chefs-d'œuvre, the masterpieces, les arcs-en-ciel, the rainbows.

(c) to the second Component only, if the first is an indeclinable part of speech (comp. fore-wheel, Plur. fore-wheels) :-

le contre-amiral, les contre-amiraux, the rear-admirals. le sous-officier, les sous-officiers, the non-commissioned officers.

Notice-le chevau-léger; les chevau-légers (obsol.); light horsemen.

Obs.—Un essuie-mains, des essuie-mains. If a Component is plural in itself—though the whole Compound may be singular—it always has the sign of the Plural; thus—un essuie-mains is a towel for wiping the hands; un cure-dents, a pick for

(d) to neither, if the Compound Noun is in apposition to another noun implied, and which alone would take the sign of the plural if it were expressed; thus réveille-matin is virtually an adverbial phrase qualifying the Noun horloge (clock), understood:

> le réveille-matin. l'abat-jour, le passe-partout,

les réveille-matin, the alarums. les abat-jour, the lamp-shades. les passe-partout, master-keys.

Obs. - Garde may be either a Noun, and takes the sign of Plural, or a Verb, and remains unchanged, according to the General Rule :-

Le garde-champêtre, les gardes-champêtres, the rural guards. le garde-manger, les garde-manger, the safes, pantries, larders.

(e) Compound Nouns written in one word (without hyphen) are treated like simple Nouns, taking the sign of plur, at the end:-

Le parapluie (lit. rain-screen), les parapluies, the umbrellas. Except—le gentilhomme, les gentilshommes, noblemen. le bonhomme, les bonshommes, good-natured men.

Monsieur, messieurs. Madame, mesdames.

monseigneur, mes-(or nos)seigneurs. mademoiselle, mesdemoiselles,

An Adjective agrees in *Gender* and *Number* with the Noun it qualifies; to apply this Rule it is necessary to know the different ways of forming the *Feminine of Adjectives*. (Exs. 68, 69.)

§ 15. General Rule :-

Add - Θ mute to all Adjectives and Nouns not specified in the Special Rules, from (a) to (g):—

m. Le fruit vert n'est pas mûr.
f. La pomme verte n'est pas mûre.
m. pl. Les fruits verts ne sont pas mûrs.
f. pl. Les pommes vertes ne sont pas mûres.
Green fruit is not ripe.
Green fruits are not ripe.
Green fruits are not ripe.

Obs. 1.—Aigu, f. aiguë, acute; ambigu, f. ambiguë, ambiguous, to indicate that u is to be sounded distinctly, whilst without discresis the u in -gue or -que is only the sign of a hard g or c and is not sounded at all. Cf. \S 3 (f).

Obs. 2.—All those in -er, and a few in -et, change e into è, to indicate that the e has then a long and open sound :—

cher, chère, dear: le berger, la bergère, shepherdess. Thus—complet, complète. discrète. replète. concret, concrète. inquiet, inquiète. secret, secrète.

N.B.—For adjectives which double their final t, cf. p. 204.

§ 16. Special Rules :-

(a) Adjectives and Nouns ending in -e mute in the masc. remain unchanged in the feminine:—

Un ami fidèle est sincère (m.)Une amie fidèle est sincère (f.)Les amis fidèles sont sincères $(m.\ pl.)$ Les amies fidèles sont sincères $(f.\ pl.)$ Faithful friends are sincère

(b) Adjectives ending in -x change this x into s, and add -e mute:—

L'or est un métal précieux (m.)

Gold is a precious metal.

The diamond is a precious stone.

L'or est un des métaux précieux (m. pl.) Gold is one of the precious metals.

Les diamants sont des pierres précieuses (f. pl.) Diamonds are precious

Thus—jalou-x, -se, jealous; heureu-x, -se, happy, fortunate; silencieu-x, -se, silent, etc.

(c) Adjectives ending in -f change this f into v, and add -e mute:—
L'écolier attentif (m.) est récompensé.
L'écolière attentive (f.) est récompensée.
Les écolière attentifs (m. pl.) sont récompensées.
The attentive pupils Les écolières attentives (f.pl.) sont récompensées.
The attentive pupils are rewarded.

Thus—vif, vive, lively; neuf, neuve, new; juif, juive, Jewish; bref, brève, etc.

(d) Most adjectives ending in -c change this c into qu, and add -e mute, to indicate that c remains hard (for exceptions, cf. p. 54):-

L'édifice public (m.) est utile. The public edifice is useful. L'autorité publique (f.) est respectée. The public authority is respected. Les édifices publics (m. pl.) sont utiles. Public edifices are useful. Les_autorités publiques (f. pl.) sont respectées. Public authorities are [respected.

Thus also-long, f. longue, long.

Obs .- In grec, f. grecque, Greek, Grecian, the c is exceptionally retained.

(e) Adjectives ending in -ion, -on, -yen, -ol, -oil, double their final consonant, and add -e mute:-

> Unousage ancien. La langue ancienne. Des_usages_anciens. Old customs. Les langues anciennes. Ancient languages.

An old custom. The ancient language.

Thus-bon, bonne, good; Chrétien, Chrétienne, Christian; citoyen, citoyenne, citizen; cruel, cruelle, cruel; pareil, pareille, like, etc.

(f.) FIVE Adjectives have two forms for the Masc. Sing. :-

One used before Nouns beginning with a Consonant; the other before a vowel or silent h.

The Feminine of these is formed from the latter form by doubling . the final consonant, and adding -e mute; see (e):-

Le beau verger. Le belarbre (pl. les beaux arbres). the fine tree (trees). La belle prairie.

The fine orchard. the fine meadow.

Le nouveau monde. The new world. Le nouvel habit (pl. les nouveaux habits). the new coat (coats). La nouvelle mode (année). the new fashion (year).

m. { Le vieux mendiant.* Le vieil_ami (pl. vieux amis).La vieille sorcière,

The old beggar. the old friend (friends). the old hag.

* vieux occurs also before vowels and silent h:-vieux homme.

Le fou rire.
Un folespoir (pl. unusual).
Une folle entreprise.

The irresistible (lit. crazy) a foolish hope. [laughter. a desperate undertaking.

Du fremage mou. Un molabandon (pl. unusual). Une molle oisiveté.

Soft cheese. an indolent listlessness. a sluggish idleness.

- (g) Nouns and Adjectives in -eur form their Feminine in four different ways (-eure, -euse, -rice, -eresse):—
- (1) by adding -e mute to those ending in -érieur (implying an idea of comparison, like meilleur(e); majeur(e); mineur(e):—supérieur, inférieur; f. supérieure, inférieure; supérior, inférier.
- (2) by changing into -euse the ending of those which have a verbal stem:—

tromp-er, Pres. Part. tromp-ant; Adj. tromp-eur, f. tromp-euse. flatt-er, ,, ,, flatt-ant; ,, flatt-eur, f. flatt-euse.

- (3) by changing into -rice the ending of those in -eur not comprised in (b):—créateur créatrice Creator; adj. creative, thus—ambassadeur ambassador ambassador.
- (4) by changing into eresse the ending eur in the following exceptional cases (those marked * are Law terms):—

vengeur vengeresse avenger, adj. avenging.
le chasseur, la chasseresse (in poetical style) huntress.
l'enchanteur, la pécheur, pecheur, fisherman, pêcheuse).
*le défendeur, *la défenderesse defendant.
*le demandeur, *la demanderesse plaintiff.
*la venderesse, vendor (vendeuse, seller).

§ 17. Summary of Exceptions to Rules (a)—(e).

Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.	
blanc,	blanche,	white.	épais,	épaisse,	thick.
franc,	franche,	frank.	gros,	grosse,	big.
sec,	sèche,	dry.	exprès,	expresse,	express.
frais,	fraîche,	fresh.	faux,	fausse,	false.
favori,	favorite,	favourite.	roux,	rousse,	reddish brown.
bénin,	bénigne,*	benign.	doux,	douce,	sweet.
malin,	maligne,	malignant.	tiers,	tierce,	third.
nul,	nulle,	no.	absous,	absoute,	absolved.
gentil,	gentille,	nice, pretty.	muet,	muette,	mute, dumb.
bas,	basse,	low.	net,	nette,	clear, neat.
gras,	grasse,	fat.	sujet,	sujette	subject.
las,	lasse,	tired.	sot,	sotte,	foolish.

* Latin Students will notice that in most cases it is in the feminine form of those French Adjectives which are derived from Latin that the original final stem-consonant of the Latin Adjective (dropped or changed in the French masculine form) reappears:—

Latin.	French masc.	fem.	Latin.	French masc.	fem.
novus	neuf †	neuve.	generosus	généreux	généreuse.
lassus	las	lasse.	benignus	béni n	bénigne.
dulcis	doux	douce.	absolutus	absous	absoute, etc.

[†] Cf. the English Plural-formation of Nouns in f :- Calf, calves; wife, wives; etc.

§ 18. I. Regular Comparison. (Ex. 70.)
Positive. fort forts forts forte fortes strong, fortes stronger, fortes le plus fort les plus forte les plus forte stronger, les plus forte les plus forte strongest.
Comparisons may be divided into those of—
(a) Superiority:—
Positive. I.'air est léger. Air is light.
Comparative. L'air est plus léger que l'eau. Air is lighter than water.
Superlative.
m. s. Le gaz est le plus légère des corps. Gas is the lightest body. f. s. C'est la plus légère des substances. It is the lightest substance. m. pl. Les gazsont les plus légères des corps. Gases are the lightest bodies. f. pl. Ce sont les substances les plus légères. They are the lightest f. pl. Ce sont les plus légères substances.
(b) EQUALITY:—
Ce vin est aussi bon que celui-là. This wine is as good as that. Ceci est tout aussi utile que cela. This is quite as useful as that.
(c) Inferiority:—
Elle est moins jolie que sa sœur. She is less pretty than (not Elle n'est pas si jolie que sa sœur. so pretty as) her sister.
II. Irregular Comparison.
The following Adjectives form their degrees of comparison Arregularly (the irregularities spring from the corresponding Latin forms):—
Positive. Comparative. Superlative. C'est le meilleur; that is better; it is the best.
Cette eau est bonne; celle-là est meilleure; c'est la meilleure. This water is good; that is better; it is the best.
Ce vin est mauvais; celui-là est { pire, or, le pire, or, plus mauvais; le plus mauvais. This wine is bad; that is worse; the worst.
Ce cheval est petit; il est plus petit; c'est le plus petit. This horse is small; it is smaller; it is the smallest.
Ce service est petit; il est moindre que l'autre; c'est le moindre de tous.

La distance est petite; elle est moindre que l'autre; c'est la moindre. The distance is short; it is shorter than the other; it is the shortest.

it is the slightest of

all.

This service is slight; it is less than the other;

§ 19. Cardinal Numbers. (Exs. 71, 72.)

N.B.—To serve at the same time as a Repetition of the Plural of Nouns.

1	m.	un jour, one day.	11	onze années, eleven years.
J	f.	une journée, one day's work.		(le onze avril, April 11th.)
2	de	ux ans, two years.	12	douze apôtres, twelve apostles.

13 treize fois, thirteen times. 3 trois mois, three months.

4 quatre feux, four fires. 14 quatorze lieues, 14 leagues, 5 cinq clous, five nails. 15 quinze jours, a fortnight.

6 six chevaux, six horses. 16 seize onces, sixteen ounces. 17 dix-sept jeux, 17 games. 7 sept travaux, seven labours. 8 huit cerfs-volants, eight kites. 18 dix-huit canaux, 18 canals.

9 neuf timbres-poste, nine 19 dix-neuf chefs-lieux, nineteen postage-stamps. county towns.

10 dix avant-coureurs, ten fore- 20 vingt choux-fleurs, twenty runners. cauliflowers.

21 vingt et un (vingt-un).

22 vingt-deux, etc.

30 trente.

40 quarante. 50 cinquante.

60 soixante. 69 soixante-neuf.

71 soixante et onze. 72 soixante-douze, etc.

80 quatre-vingts. 81 quatre-vingt-un, etc. 90 quatre-vingt-dix.

91 quatre-vingt-onze, etc.

100 cent.

101 cent un (cent et un).

150 cent cinquante. 200 deux cents. 220 deux cent vingt.1

70 soixante-dix (soixante et dix). 1000 mille (mil in dates A.D.): as,

1804 mil huit cent quatre. 10,000 dix mille. 100,000 cent mille.²

1,000,000 un million. Observations :-

(1) Quatre-vingts and cents (plural of cent) take no s-

(a) if followed by another numeral: quatre-vingt-neuf; trois cent dix. (b) if used as an ordinal number:-

page deux cent quatre-vingt.

- (2) Mille, thousand, never takes s:—dix mille, ten thousand; but le mille, the mile, takes s:-dix milles, ten miles,
- (3) Pronunciation .- In cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix, the final consonant is pronounced, when these numerals are standing alone, or followed by an adjunct beginning with a vowel or silent h:-

sounded: -cinq_arbres, six_heures, nous sommes sept (pron. = set), etc. not sounded: -cinq plumes, six harengs, sept (pron. = sè) cents, huit jours, neuf muses, dix francs.

§ 20. Ordinal Numbers.

The first man. 1st Le premier homme. The first men. Les premiers hommes. La première année. The first year. Les premières années. The first years.

2d	Le second volume.	The second volume.
	La seconde fois.	The second time.
	Le deuxième étage.	The second story.
	La deuxième série.	The second series.
3d	Le troisième mois.	The third month.
	La troisième partie.	The third part.
4th	le (la) quatrième.	20th le (la) vingtième.
5th	le (la) cinquième.	21st le (la) vingt-et-unième.
6th	le (la) sixième.	22d le (la) vingt-deuxième, etc.
7th	le (la) septième.	30th le (la) trentième.
8th	le (la) huitième.	100th le (la) centième.
9th	le (la) neuvième.	1000th le (la) millième.
10th	le (la) dixième.	the last le dernier, la dernière.
11th	le (la) onzième.	the last but one, l'avant-dernier.

FRENCH CARDINAL NUMBERS USED INSTEAD OF ORDINAL:—
In speaking of the Days of the month, or Sovereigns (except the first):—
Le premier janvier. The 1st of Jan. Le huit juillet. The 8th of July.
Le doux février. The 2d of Feby.
Le trois mars. The 3d of March.
Le vingt-deux septembre. Sept. 23d.
Le cinq mai. The 5th of May.
Le six juin. The 6th of June.

Le trente novembre. Nov. 30th.
Le trente-et-un décembre. Dec. 31.

François premier, Francis the First. Henri deux (second), Henry II.

Louis quatorze, Louis the Fourteenth.

Exceptionally:—Charles-quint, Charles the Fifth (Emperor of Germany); and Sixte-quint, Pope Sixtus the Fifth.

Observation.—In speaking of the pages, chapters, etc., of a book, we may say:—chapitre dix, chapitre dixième, or, le dixième chapitre, etc.

may say:—chapit	re aix, chapitre a	ixieme, or, le dixi	eme chapitre, etc.
§ 21.—Fractional Numerals.	§ 22.—Proportional Numerals.	§ 23.—Multiplica- tive Numerals.	§ 24.—Collective Numerals.
<pre> ½ un demi, la moitié, is subst. l½ un et demi, ½ un tiers, ¼ un quart(u silent) ½ un cinquième, ½ un sixième, </pre>	simple, simple, le double, double, double, le triple, treble, [sounded), le quadruple (u fourfold, etc. le quintuple, (u silent) le sextuple.	une fois, once, deux fois, twice, trois fois, thrice, quatre fois, four times, etc. cinq fois, six fois.	The following only are used:— une huitaine, about eight. une dixaine, about ten. une douzaine, a dozen. une quinzaine,
‡ un septième,	le sept uple ,	sept fois,	about 15. une vingtaine, a score.
l un huitième,	l'octuple,	huit fois,	une trentaine,
d un neuvième,	(neuf fois autant),	neuf fois,	une quarantaine, une cinquantaine.
₁º un•dixième,	le décuple,	dix fois,	une soixantaine.
1 un onzième,	(onze fois autant),	onze fois,	un millier, about 1000.
un douzième, etc.	douze fois autant, centuple, 100 fold.	douze fois,	1000.

§ 25. General Rule:—A Conjunctive Personal Pronoun in the Objective case is placed before its Verb (except in the Imperative used affirmatively), - (Exs. 73, 74):-

SINGULAR.

1st Person.

Subj		Je ne trompe personne.	I deceive no one.
		me trompez.*	You deceive me.
Ind. Obj.	11	me parle.	He speaks to-me.

2d Person.

Subj.		Tu aimes tes amis.	Thou lovest thy friends.
Dir. Obj.	Elle	te salue.*	She greets thee (you).
Ind. Obj.	Elle	te répond.	She replies to-thee (to-you).

3d. Person. Masculine (referring to a person)

Subj.	Tu	Il raconte une histoire.	He is relating a story.
Dir. Obj.		le respectes.*	You respect him.
Ind. Obj.		lui raconte une fable.	They relate a fable to-him.
	0.7	7) 71	

3d Person, Feminine (relating to a person).

Subj.		Elle te pardonnera.	She will forgive thee.
Dir. Obj.	On	la félicite.*	One congratulates her.
Ind. Obj.	On	lui répondra.	One will reply to-her.

PLUBAL.

1st Person.

Subj.		Nous louons l'écolier.	We praise the pupil.
Dir. Obj.	On	nous loue.	They praise us.
Ind. Obj.	Qui	nous parle?	Who is speaking to-us?
		9.d Damoon	

Subj.		Vous apprenez la leçon.	You learn the lesson.
Dir. Oij.	Ils	vous suivront.	They will follow you.
Ind. Obj.	Elles	vous répondront.	They will reply to-you.

3d Person, Masculine and Feminine,

Subj.		Ils (elles) l'estiment.	They esteem him.
Dir. Obj.	Je	les estime.	I esteem them.
Ind. Obj.	Nous	leur écrirons.	We will write to-them.

3d Person (Masculine or Feminine) referring to a thing, (sometimes also to a person).

Aimes-tu ton travail (ta lecon)?—Do you like your work (lesson)?— Oui, il (elle) est très utile. Yes, it is very useful. Subj. D. O. The pupil finds it easy. L'élève le (la) trouve facile. L'élève s'y accoutume. He accustoms himself to-it (to-them). Ind. C. Les élèves en parlent. † The pupils speak of it (of them).

† The Genitive referring to a Person is supplied by the Disjunctive Personal Pronoun :- de moi, de toi, de lui, d'elle ; de nous, de vous, d'eux, d'elles (§ 31).

^{*} Before a Verb beginning with a vowel or silent h the vowel is elided in je, me, te, le, la and se :- j'ai ; il m'aime ; je t'honore ; on l'estime ; il s'excuse.

§ 26. En, hence; of it; from it; some, any (often not expressed in English), is used—

(1) instead of de là (from there, thence), to denote the starting-point:—
Viens-tu de Londres?—

Are you coming from London?—

J'en viens, et j'y retourne.

I am (coming from-there), and 1
am returning (thither).

(2) instead of do lui, d'elle (of it); d'eux, d'elles (of them), etc., with Verbs and Adjectives requiring do before their complement:—

Est-il content de son sort !- Is he satisfied with his fate !-

Il en est content.
Qu'en dites-vous ?—
Je n'en sais rien.

He is satisfied with it.

What do you say about it?—

I don't know anything about it.

(3) instead of de ceci, de cela (of it, of this, of that), referring to a Phrase or Sentence mentioned before:—

Il fut trompé; il s'en aperçut. Vous vous en repentirez. He was deceived; he was aware of it.

You will repent of it (of this, of that).

(4) instead of du, de la, des (some, any, of them), referring to a Noun-Antecedent used in a partitive sense:—

A-t-il de l'argent ?—Oui, il en a. Avez-vous des plumes ?—

J'en ai de très bonnes.

En voici une meilleure.

Je vous en donnerai une autre.

Combien d'églises y a-t-il ici?—

Il y en a sept.

Has he any money?—Yes, he has Have you any pens?— [(some). Yes, I have some very good ones. Here is a better one (of-thom).

I will give you another (of-them). How many churches are there here?— There are seven (of-them).

(5) instead of pour cela, pour cette raison (for that, on that account):—

Je l'en estime davantage.

I esteem him all the more for-it (i.e. on that account).

§ 27. Y, there, thither, to it, at it, in it, used with reference to Antecedents denoting things (exceptionally with reference to Persons):—

(1) instead of là referring to a Place mentioned before:—
Est-il à Paris?—Oui, il y est.
Allez-vous au bain?—
Non, nous n'y allons pas.

Place mentioned before:—
Is he in Paris?—Yes, he is there.

Are you going to the bath?—
No, we are not going there.

(2) instead of à lui, à elle; à eux, à elles:—
Avez-vous répondu à sa lettre?—
Have you replied to his letter?—
J'y ai répondu il y a huit jours.

I replied to it a week ago.

(3) instead of à ceci, à cela, referring to a preceding clause or phrase:
Y avez-vous contribué?

Have you contributed to-this (to-that)?

J'y ai contribué.

I have contributed to-this (to-that).

§ 28. Le, predicative form of the 3d p. of the Personal Pronoun-

(1) takes the Gender and Number of its Antecedent, if this Antecedent is a Noun used definitely :-

Etes-vous le maître de danse ?— Are you the dancing master ?-Oui, monsieur, je le suis. Yes, sir, I am he. Etes-vous la directrice du collège ?—Are you the principal of the collège ?— Oui, madame, je la suis. Yes, madam, I am she. Etes-vous les délégués ?-Are you the delegates ?-We are. Nous les sommes.

But (2) remains unchanged, if its Antecedent is an Adjective, a Noun used adjectively, or a whole sentence:-

Es-tu malade ?—Je le suis. Etes-vous malades?—Nous le sommes. Are you ill?—We are. Etes-vous directrice ?—Je le suis. A-t-il réussi ?—Je le crois.

Are you ill ?-- I am. Are you a principal ?—I am. Has he succeeded ?-I think so.

§ 28A. Place of Personal Pronouns used as object of a Verb in the Imperative :-

AFFIRMATIVE.

IMPERATIVE.

NEGATIVE.

(a) Direct Object.

1st pers. Follow me (us). Suis-moi (-nous).

Don't follow me (us). Ne me (nous) suis pas.

3d pers. Follow him (her, it; them). Suis-le (-la ; -les).

Don't follow him (her, it; them). Ne le (la ; les) suis pas.

(b) Indirect Object.

1st pers. Reply to-me (to-us). Réponds-moi (-nous).

3d pers. Reply to-him, to-her (to-them). Réponds-lui (leur).

Don't reply to-me (to-us). Ne me (nous) réponds pas.

Don't reply to-him, to-her (to-them). Ne lui (leur) réponds pas.

(c) en; y; le:--

Take some! Prenez-en !

Do go there (thither)! Allez-y donc!

Do it! Faites-le !

Don't take any! N'en prenez point!

Don't go there! N'y allez pas.

Don't do it! Ne le faites pas ! § 29. When a Verb has two Pronoun-Objects, one direct and the other indirect, they are both placed before the Verb in the following order:—

(a) The 1st or 2d pers. Pron. stands before the 3d pers. Pronoun.

Thus, in answer to a question like—A qui donnera-t-il son couteau?

—To whom will he give his knife? the order will be:—

1st or 2d before 3d pers.:-

Il me (te) le donnera. He will give it to-me (to-thee).
• Il nous (vous) le donnera. He will give it to-us (to-you).

Thus—
Il me la donne (her to-me).

Il me la donne (her to-me). Il me les donne (them to-me).

(b) If both Prons. are of the 3d pers.,

the Direct (Accusative) stands before the Indirect (Dative) :-

Il le lui donnera. He will give it to-him (to-her). Il le leur donnera. He will give it to-them.

Thus-

Il la lui donne (her to-him). Il les lui donne (them to-him).

But so (reflexive) always first :-

Il se le réservera. He will reserve it for-himself.

(c) Y and en after all other Pronouns; and en after y.

In answer to a question like—Qui forcera-t-il à cette condition ?— Whom will he compel to this condition? the order will be :—

n	m'y t'y l'y nous y vous y	forcera.	He will compel	me thee him (her; it) us you	to-it. to-it. to-it. to-it. to-it.
	les y			them	to-it.

In answer to a question like—A qui donnera-t-il du pain (de la viande; des cerises)?—To whom will he give bread (meat, cherries)? the order will be:—

$$\label{eq:continuity} \text{II} \begin{cases} \text{m'en} \\ \text{t'en} \\ \text{lui en} \\ \text{nous en} \\ \text{vous en} \\ \text{leur en} \end{cases} \\ \text{donnera.} \quad \textit{He will give} \begin{cases} \text{some to-me.} \\ \text{some to-thee (to-you).} \\ \text{some to-us.} \\ \text{some to-you.} \\ \text{some to-them.} \end{cases}$$

In answer to such a question as—A-t-il trouvé de l'eau à la fontaine?—Has he found any water in the well? the order will be:—

Il y en a trouvé.

He has found some there.

§ 29A. RECAPITULATION. (PLACE OF OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.)

1st & 2d p. before 3d p. || 3d p. acc. before 3d p. dat. || Dat. before Genit. $\begin{array}{c|c} \mathbf{me} \\ \mathbf{te} \\ \mathbf{nous} \\ \mathbf{vous} \end{array} \right\} \ \ \mathbf{before} \ \left\{ \begin{array}{c|c} le \\ la \\ les \\ y \end{array} \right\} \ \ \mathbf{before} \ \left\{ \begin{array}{c|c} \mathbf{lui} \\ \mathbf{leur} \\ \mathbf{y} \\ \mathbf{en} \end{array} \right\} \ \mathbf{before} \ \left\{ \begin{array}{c|c} \mathbf{nui} \\ \mathbf{leur} \\ \mathbf{y} \\ \mathbf{en} \end{array} \right\} \ \mathbf{before} \ \left\{ \begin{array}{c|c} \mathbf{nui} \\ \mathbf{leur} \\ \mathbf{y} \\ \mathbf{en} \end{array} \right\}$

i.e. Those in the 1st col. always precede those in the 2d; those in the 3d col. always precede those in the 4th: those in the 5th col. precede the one in the 6th.

§ 30. Pronoun-Object of a Verb in the Imperative Affirmative.

When the Verb is in the Imperative Affirmative, the order of words as given in the first Rule (i.e. 1st and 2d pers. before the 3d) is reversed, i.e. the Pronouns are placed after the Verb:-

The 3d pers. (1e, 1a, 1es) standing before the pron. in the 1st or 2d; and me, te are strengthened into moi, toi; as,

Donne-le-moi (le-nous).

Give it to-me (to-us). Montrez-les-moi (les-nous).

Lend it (lit. her) to-me (to-us).

Show them to-me (to-us).

In the other combinations the order remains the same :-

Dites-le-lui (le-leur). Montrez-la-lui. Montrez-la-leur. Envoyez-les-lui (les-leur). Conduisez-nous-y. Donnez-m'en.

Tell it to-him, or to-her (to-them), 1 h Show it (lit. her) to-him, or to-her. Show it to-them. Send them to-him or to-her (to-them). Take (lead) us there. Give me some of-it.

Compare-

Imperative Negative.

with-

Imperative Affirmative :-

Rendez-le-moi. Ne me le rendez pas. (Ne to le refuse pas. [with reflexive Verbs only]. Refuse-le-toi.) (Ne vous y fiez pas. 23 Fiez-vous-y.) Ne le lui dites pas. Dites-le-lui. Ne nous en parlez pas. Parlez-nous-en, etc. § 31. DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS; so called because they may be used independently of (disjoined from) the Verb: being uninflected, their case-relations, like those of Nouns, are indicated by de and a. These emphatic Personal Pronouns are used—

(1) if standing alone, especially in answer to a question :-

Qui a fait cela ?-Moi. Who has done that ?-I (have). Qui devra payer ?-Toi. Who will have to pay ?— Thou(wilt). Qui viendra ?-Lui. Who will come ?-He (will). Qui le fera ?-Elle. Who will do it ?__ She (will). Who wants wine ?-Qui veut du vin ?-Nous. We (do). Qui lira cette page ?-Who will read this page? You (will). Vous. Qui nous conduira ?-Who will lead us?-They (m.) Who has told you that? - They (f.) Qui vous a dit cela ?- Elles. Mon frère, ma sœur, et moi. My brother, sister, and myself. Neither he, nor she, nor I. Ni lui, ni elle, ni moi.

(2) as the second member of a comparison:—

Il est plus avancé que moi. Elle n'est pas si active que toi. He is more advanced than I. She is not so active as you.

(3) as the Antecedent of a Relative Pronoun:-

Moi, qui suis innocent! Lui (elle), qui a tant travaillé! Eux (elles), dont je parle. I, who am innocent! They, of whom I am speaking.

(4) as the Predicative Complement of the Impersonal phrase c'est, ce sont, c'était, ce sera, etc.:—

Ce n'est pas moi. Sera-ce lui ou un autre? It is not L.
Will it be he or another?

(5) after all Prepositions :-

Celui qui n'est pas pour moi est He who is not for me is against me.

contre moi.
Cela est à moi.
Je suis chez moi aujourd'hui.
Seras-tu chez toi demain?
Il serait chez lui, s'il pleuvait.
Elle a été chez elle.
On est bien chez soi.
Restons chez nous.
Serez-vous chez vous?
Qu'ils restent chez eux.
Ces dames vont chez elles.

That belongs to me.

I am at home (i.e. my home) to-day.

Shall you be at home to-morrow?

He would be at home if it rained.

She has been at home.

One is comfortable at home.

Let us stay at home?

Let them stay at home.

These ladies are going home.

Obs.—Thus after the Preposition a, used as the Adverbial Complement of a Verb of motion, and a few others:—accounter a, to accustom to; en appeler a, to appeal to; courir (accourir) a, to hosten to; penser a, songer a, to think of; renoncer a, to renounce; venir a, to come to:—

Pense a moi!—Je pense toujours a toi.

Think of me!—I always think of thee.

Elle accourut à lui.

She hastened towards him.

Nous songeons à eux jour et nuit.

We think of them day and night.

N.B.—For English Pers. Pron. of the 3d person rendered by Demonstratives in French, see § 33.

§ 32.—I. A Possess. Adjective agrees like the Article (le, la, les) in Gender and Number with the Noun it qualifies :-

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	
1	. Mon frère et	ma* sœur.	My brother and my sister.
2	. Ton fils et	ta* fille.	Thy son and thy daughter.
9	. Son cousin et	sa* cousine.	His (her) cousin (m.), and his
			(or her) cousin (f.)
1	. Notre maître et	notre maîtresse.	Our master and our mistress.
2	. Votre oncle et	votre tante.	Your uncle and your aunt.
9	. Leur neveu et	leur nièce.	Their nephew and their niece.
			2

	PLURAL.					
2. 3. 1. 2.	Mes frères et Tes fils et Ses cousins et Nos maîtres et Vos oncles et	mes sœurs. tes filles. ses cousines. nos maîtresses. vos tantes.	My brothers and sisters. Thy sons and daughters. His (her) cousins (m. and f.) Our masters and mistresses. Your uncles and aunts.			
3.	Leurs neveux et	leurs nièces.	Their nephews and nieces.			

Notice particularly that-

and its value.

(1) a Possess. Adjective of the 1st or 2d person—

in English has but one formin French has three forms, if sing .mon, ma; mes. 1 and two forms, if plur.my; thy. ton, ta; tes. votre; vos.

our; your.

(2) a Possess. Adjective of the 3d person Singularagrees in Gender with the Possessor :agrees in Gender with the Object possessed :-He has lost his father Il a perdu son père (m.) and his mother. et sa mère (f.) She has lost her father Elle a perdu son père et sa mère. and her mother. Il (or, elle) a perdu son mérite It has lost its merit

notre; nos.

et sa valeur.

(3) a Possess. Adjective of the 3d person Plural—

has (like the pers. pron. they) but one (a) has but one form for the masc. and fem. :form throughout : The sisters and their brother. Les sœurs et lour frère. The brothers and their sister. Les frères et leur sœur. (b) takes s before a plur. Noun :-They (m.) and their brothers. Eux et leurs frères. They (f.) and their sisters. Elles et leurs sœurs.

His (her) custom. Son_habitude.

Compare the English:—a tree, an ass, an heir; though, of course, an in English is the original, and a the clipped. form.

^{*} Before a feminine Noun or Adjective beginning with a vowel or silent hma, ta, and sa are changed into mon, ton, son, for the sake of avoiding a hiatus, .e. the unpleasant sound of two vowels in close succession :-Mon amie est plus discrète que ton amie. My friend (f.) is more discreet than your friend.

§ 32.—II. A Possessive Pronoun agrees in Gender and Number with the Noun for which it stands :-

Plural. Singular.

m. Ton ami et le mien; tes amis et les miens. Thy friend(s) and f. Ta sœur et la mienne; tes sœurs et les miennes. Thy sister(s) I mine.

m. Son fils et le tien; ses fils et les tiens. His son(s) and f. Sa fille et la tienne; ses filles et les tiennes. His daughter(s) thine.

m. Ton chat et le sien; tes chats et les siens. Thy cat(s) f. Tafleuretla sienne : tesfleurs et les siennes. Thy flower(s) his(hers).

m. Leur toit et le nôtre ; leurs toits et les nôtres. Their roof(s)) and f. Leur poire et la nôtre; leurs poires et les nôtres. Their pear(s) fours.

m. Mon lit et le vôtre; mes lits et les vôtres. My bed(s) and f. Ma rose et la vôtre : mes roses et les vôtres. Mu rose(s) [vours.

m. Votre âne et le leur; vos ânes et les leurs. Your ass(es) $\}$ and f. Votre tante et la leur; vos tantes et les leurs. Your aunt(s) $\}$ theirs.

Here (as in the case of Poss. Adjs.) notice particularly that—

(1) a Possess, Pron. of the 1st or 2d pers. (sing. or plur.) and 3d pers. plur. in English. in French.

has but one form | agrees in Gender and Number with the name of throughout :the object possessed, for which it stands :--

> le mien, la mienne; les miens, les miennes. mine. le tien, la tienne; les tiens, les tiennes. thine, ours. le (la) nôtre; les nôtres. yours, le (la) vôtre; les vôtres. theirs. le (la) leur; les leurs.

(2) a Possess. Pron. of the 3d pers. singular-

agrees in Gender with the name | agrees in Gender and Number with of the Possessor, for which it the name of the object possessed. stands :-for which it stands :-

My friend and his (John's). My sister and his

My uncle and hers (Mary's).

My aunt and hers

Mon ami et le sien.*

Ma sœur et la sienne.* Mon oncle et le sien. * Ma tante et la sienne.*

^{*} Or, if his or hers stand for a plural :-les siens; les siennes.

\$ 33.—I. SINGULAR—Masculine.

Ce chêne et ce 'hêtre. Cet, été et cet, hiver.

This (that) oak and beech. This (that) summer and winter.

SINGULAR - Feminine.

Cette lame et cette 'hache. Cette anecdote et cette histoire. This anecdote and that story.

This blade and that axe.

PLURAL—Masc, and Fem. alike.

m. ces chênes, ces 'hêtres, ces étés, ces hivers. f. ces lames, ces 'haches, ces_anecdotes, ces_histoires. These (those) oaks, beeches, summers, winters. These (those) blades.

anecdotes, stories.

From the above we see that the forms of the Demonstrative Adjectime are-

before masculine Nouns beginning with a consonant. before masc. Nouns beginning with a vowel or silent h.* Cette before all feminine Nouns.

before all Nouns, both masculine and feminine.

Obs.—The distinction between this and that, pl. these and those, is indicated by affixing -ci or -là to the Noun :-

Ce livre-ci et ce livre-là. Ces livres-ci et ces livres-là. Cet arbre-là et cet arbre-ci. Ces, arbres-là et ces, arbres-ci. Cette plume-ci et cette plume-là. Ces plumes-ci et ces plumes-là.

This book (here) and that book (there). These books (here) and those books (there). That tree (there) and this tree (here). Those trees (there) and these trees (here). This pen (here) and that pen (there). These pens (here) and those pens (there).

* If the Noun is preceded by a qualifying Adjective, use ce or cet, according as the Adjective begins with a consonant or vowel :-

Ce château, this castle; but— cet, ancien château, Cet, homme, this man;

DEFINITE:

ce brave homme,

this old castle. this worthy man.

DEMONSTRATIVE:

Synoptic Table of the Different Ways in which the same Noun may be limited.

Singular. PARTITIVE: INDEFINITE: POSSESSIVE:

the.	some, any.	a, an.	my, etc.	this, that, etc.
m. le vin;	du vin;	un vin;	mon vin;	ce vin.
" l'acier;	de l'acier;	un acier;	mon acier;	cet, acier.
f. la glace		une glace;	ma glace;	cette glace.
" l'eau;	de l'eau;	une eau;	mon, eau;	cette eau.

Plural.

both befo

	THE SHIP TOT 1100 FOR	ia J., Double Deloi.	O to opposite of t	N DOCCUS
les vins;	des vins;	des vins;	mes vins;	ces vins.
les aciers;	des aciers;	des aciers;	mes, aciers;	ces, aciers.
les glaces;	des glaces;	des glaces;	mes glaces;	ces glaces.
les eaux;	des eaux;	des eaux;	mes eaux;	cos, eaux.

- § 33.—II. (a) Co, this, these; that, those; it, they; neutral (indeclinable) Pronoun, is used as the Subject of the Verb être (i.e. c'est)-
 - (1) demonstratively: answering to this, that: these, those: also as a Personal Pronoun answering to he, she, it, they :-

Qui est-ce ?- C'est lui.

Who is it?-It is he.

Ce sont mes seules récréations.

These are my only recreations,

Ce sont là des questions impossibles Those are questions impossible to à résoudre.

solve.

Sont-ce là vos belles promesses ? C'est un(e) Italien(ne).

Are these your fair promises? He (she) is an Italian.

(2) emphatically (and hence mostly left untranslated in English)either (a) to point out the identity of the Predicate with its Subject:

Le temps c'est de l'argent. Savoir c'est pouvoir.

Time is money. Knowledge is power.

Thus-Parler c'est communiquer ses pensées aux autres. or (β), to lay stress on the logical Subject, if placed after its Predicate:— Normal Order: - La vertu (Subj.) est la vraie noblesse.

Inverted Order: - La vraie noblesse, c'est la vertu. Thus—Ce qui me plaît, c'est sa franchise.*

* It will be seen that c'est must be used, if the first part of a sentence begins with ce qui, ce que.

or again (γ) , to lay stress on the Object, or Complement, if placed before the Subject :-

C'est vous que je cherche, C'est à lui que je parle,

instead of Je vous cherche. Je lui parle (§ 31). Je le rencontrai ici.

C'est ici que je le rencontrai, Ce fut un grand poète que Virgile, ,,

Virgile fut un grand poète.

(b) Ceci, this; and cela, that, are used-

(1) to denote things simply pointed at, but not mentioned— (whilst celui refers to a person or thing mentioned before):—

Ceci est bon, et cela est mauvais. This is good, and that is bad. Ceci est soie, cela est laine. This is silk, that is wool.

(2) to refer to a statement:— { ceci, if the statement follows; cela, if it precedes:—

Dites ceci de ma part à votre ami : Tell your friend this from me : "Let him be quiet." "qu'il se tienne tranquille."

Que votre ami se tienne tranquille; Your friend had better be quiet; dites-lui cela de ma part. tell him that from me.

(c) Celui-ci, celle-ci, this one; celui-là, celle-là, that one.

ceux-ci, celles-ci, these; ceux-là, celles-là, those.

The difference between celui-ci and celui-là is this-

Ce poisson-là est plus frais que celui-ci(m.s.). $\}$ That fish (water) is Cette eau-là est plus fraîche que celle-ci (f.s.). $\}$ fresher than this.

Ces arbres-là sont plus hauts que ceux-ci(m.pl.). Those trees(towers) are higher than celles-ci(f.pl.). these.

Ce poisson-ci est moins frais que celui-là. Cette eau-ci n'est pas si fraîche que celle-là. This fish (water) is not so fresh as that.

Ces champs-ci sont plus beaux que ceux-là. These fields
Ces prairies-ci sont plus belles que celles-là. These meadows

are finer than those.

Obs.—Homère et Virgile sont de grands H
poètes: celui-ci était Romain,
celui-là Grec.

Homer and Virgil are great poets: the latter was a Roman, the former, a Greek.

(d) Celui refers back to a Noun mentioned before, and is followed by a Complement—either a Possessive Case, or an Adjective Clause:—

Le port du Havre et celui de The port of Havre and that (or, Dieppe. the one) of Dieppe.

Lequel ?—Celui de mon ami. Lesquels ?—Ceux de mon ami. Which ?—My friend's.

Ta version et celle que je finis. Tes versions et celles que je finis. Your translation(s) and that, or, the one, (those) which I finish.

Celui qui est content est heureux.

He who is contented is happy.

Celle qui aura fini la première sera récompensée.

She who has done first will be rewarded.

Ceux qui Persévèrent réussiront.

Those (they) who persevere will-succeed.

§ 33.—III. SUMMARY OF ENGLISH PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

(a) he, she; they (Subject or Predicate Compl. of to be, être*):—

(1) with an Adjectival or Adverbial Complement, = il, elle; ils, elles:-

He (she) is faithful. Il (elle) est fidèle.

They (m. or f.) are not here. Ils (elles) ne sont pas ici.

(2) with a Substantival Complement, = co (neutral); or, il(s); elle(s)*:—
As for him, he is an honest man. Quant à lui, c'est un honnête homme.

* According as the Noun is more or less of an adjectival character, 11 is preferable to oe:—II (elle) est prodigue (Addj.)

He (she) is a Russian by birth.

II (elle) est Russe de naissance.

(3) standing alone (predicatively or emphatically), = lui, elle; eux, elles: Who is guilty—he or she? Qui est coupable—lui ou elle?

They alone are responsible. (Cf. § 31.) Eux (elles) seul(e)s sont responsables.

(4) followed by a Relative Pronoun, = celui, celle; ceux, celles (p. 68):
Happy he (she) who is content. Heureux celui (celle)* qui est content(e).

Happy they who are content. Heureux ceux (celles) qui sont content(e)s.

or, if he, etc., is separated from the Relat. Pron., = celui-là, etc.:—

He is rich who earns more than he spends.

Celui-là est riche qui gagne plus qu'il ne dépense.

* Qui alone often stands concisely for celui qui, etc.:— Heureux qui n'a point de soucis. Happy he who has no cares.

Obs.—Notice that they, in the sense of people in general, = on :-

People seldom write as they speak. On écrit rarement comme on parle.

(b) him, her; them.

(1) standing as Direct Object (Accusative), =1e, la; les (p. 58):—
I respect him (her, them).

Je le (la, les) respecte.

(2) used virtually* as Indirect Obj. (Dative), =lui(m.and f.); leur (p. 58):—

* (to being often left out in Engl. :—I give him my watch = I give my watch to him.)

Tell him, her (them) that.

Dites-lui (leur) cela.

(3) depending on any Preposition, = lui, elle; eux, elles (p. 63):-

He who is not for him (her) Celui qui n'est pas pour lui (elle) is against him (her). est contre lui (elle).

(4) followed by a Relative Pron.,*=celui, celle; ceux, celles (p.68):—
One esteems him (her) who
Speaks the truth.
On estime celui (celle) qui dit la
vérité.

(* In the sense of the one, that one, etc., see a, 4.)

(c) it (Personal Pronoun).

(1) as Subject of "to be" (être):*

(a) with an Adjective or Adverbial Complement, =il, elle:-

I like this wine : it is tonic. I like water; it is fresh.

J'aime ce vin, il est tonique. J'aime l'eau, elle est fraîche.

(β) with a Substantival Complement (Noun or Pronoun), = ce:—

He likes wine (beer); it is his Il aime le vin (la bière), c'est sa boisfavourite drink. son favorite.

A qui est ce couteau ?-C'est le Whose is this knife?—It is mine. mien (à moi).

L'argent est un bon serviteur; mais c'est un mauvais maître.

* As Subject of most other Verbs, il :- J'aime le vin, il réjouit le cœur.

(2) as Direct Object (Accusative), = le, la:-

There is a bird; do you see it? Voilà un oiseau : le vois-tu ? What a fine flower; keep it ! Quelle belle fleur ; garde-la!

(3) used virtually as Indirect Object ("to" being implied), =y:-I give it all my attention.

I give all my attention to-it.

J'y donne tous mes soins.

(4) depending on a Preposition, = en or y (p. 59):—

I speak of it. I think of it. I thank you for it.

J'en parle. J'y songe. Je vous en remercie. Je m'en moque.

I laugh at it.

(d) it (Impersonal Pronoun).

(1) with an Adjectival Complement, either-

(if referring to a statement following in | (if referring to a statement contained in another clause)the same clause)-

Il est impossible de le faire.

Il est clair qu'on t'a trompé.

N'est-il pas vrai que . . . ? Il est à désirer que . . .

Il est évident que c'est vrai.

Je ne puis le faire ; c'est impossible. On t'a trompé : c'est clair.

Il est tard, n'est-ce pas ?

Qui a fait cela ?-

Ce n'est pas moi, c'est lui.

(2) with a Substantival Complement (Noun or Pronoun), = ce *:-C'est la pure vérité. C'était le temps des moissons.

C'est l'usage dans ce pays. C'est Lafontaine. Ce fut César.

Qu'est-ce que c'est ?--C'est du fromage.

C'est moi (toi, lui, elle ; nous, vous). Ce sont eux (elles).

Ce n'est personne (rien). Tantôt c'est ceci ; tantôt c'est cela.

* Only if the Noun is adjectival or adverbial, is il admissible :-

Il est midi. Il est temps de partir.

Il est d'usage (customary).

Obs.—With any other Verbs but être, the impers. il is the rule (ce the exception):—Il fait beau; il neige; il parait, etc.

C'est peu de connaître les règles: il faut les observer.

8	34.	I.	What?	Which?	used	Adjectively :-
---	-----	----	-------	--------	------	----------------

Quel capitaine commandait? What (which) captain was in command?

Quels arbres croissent ici? What trees grow here?

Quelle affaire vous occupe? What concern engrosses you? Quelles inquiétudes vous rongent? What cares prey upon you?

Quel âge avez-vous?

Quelle plume voulez-vous?

What is your age?

Which pen do you want?

Of which man are you talking?

To what man does that belong?

II. (a) Who? used Substantively :-

Subj. Qui¹ a fait cela? Who has done that?

Dir. Obj. Qui² inviterez-vous? Whom shall you invite?

Indir. { De qui parle-t-il? Of whom does he speak? Obj. A qui ecrivez-vous? To whom are you writing?

Obj. A qui est ce domaine? Whose is this estate?

(1) Or emphatically—Qui est-ce qui a fait cela?

(2) Notice that the Objective form of qui, relative pronoun, is que.
", ", qui? interrogative pronoun, is qui.

(b) Which? used Substantively:-

Singular.

Subj. Lequel (laquelle) de vous ira? Which of you will go?
Dir. Obj. Lequel (laquelle) choisirez-vous? Which shall you choose?
Indir. Duquel (de laquelle) de ces
Compl. esclaves parlez-vous?
Indir. Auquel (à laquelle) de ces élèves
Obj. parlez-vous?

To which of these slaves
are you speaking?
To which of these pupils
are you speaking?

Plaral.

Subj. Lesquels (lesquelles)? \parallel Ind. Compl. Desquels (desquelles)? \parallel D. O. Lesquels (lesquelles)? \parallel Indir. Obj. Auxquels(auxquelles)?

To single out one or more objects from a number, lequel? laquelle? etc., must be used for which...?—Lequel de vous deux?

(c) What? used Substantively:-

Subj. Qu'est-ce qui vous afflige? What grieves you?

D. O. Que ferai-je? What am I to do?

What are you want?

That. Obj. A quoi cela sert-il?*

What is that good for?

* After Prepositions, quoi must be used for que:—

What is it about? De quoi s'agit-il?

Que? refers to things, and as a Subject is used with Impersonal Verbs only:— Qu'importe? What does it matter?

§ 35.—I. A Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: in Case it agrees with the construction of its own clause: but only lequel (not qui) has special forms for both masc. and fem., singular and plural.

(a) QUI, REFERRING TO PERSONS.

SINGULAR -- Masculine and Feminine.

Subj. L'ami (amie) qui travaille.	The friend who works.
D. O. L'ami (amie) que i j'estime.	The friend whom I esteem.
Poss. L'ami (amie) dont l'enfant est ici.	The friend whose child is here.
Com. L'ami (amie) dont ² (de qui) je parle	
Ind. \(\text{L'ami à qui (auquel)} \) je	The friend to whom 3 I am
Obj. L'amie à qui (à laquelle) parle	e. speaking.

PLURAL-Masculine and Feminine.

Les amis (amies) qui	i travaillent.	The friends who work.
Les amis (amies) qu		The friends whom I esteem.
Les amis (amies) do		The friends whose children
Les amis (amies) do:		The friends of whom I speak.
Les amis à qui (aux	xquels) je parle.	The friends to whom 3 1
Les amies à qui (au	exquelles) je parle	. \ speak.

(b) QUI, REFERRING TO ANIMALS AND THINGS.

SINGULAR-Masculine and Feminine.

Le livre (la lettre) qui est là.	The book (letter) which is there.
Le livre (la lettre) que je lis.	The book (letter) which I read.
Le livre (la lettre) dont 4 la fin	The book (letter) of which the end
Le livre (la lettre) dont ⁵ je parle.	The book (letter) of which I speak.
Le livre auquel \ cela se	The book to which that refers.
La lettre à laquelle f réfère.	The letter to which

PLURAL-Masculine and Feminine.

ters) which are here.
ters) which I read.
ters) of which the end
ters) of which I speak.
which that refers.
which

Observations-

- (1) Qu' instead of que before a vowel or silent h:-qu'il, qu'elle, etc.; but-qui ira!

- (2) Or, but less usual, masc. duquel, desquels; fem. de laquelle, desqueles.
 (3) Governed by a Preposition, whom, always=qui, and never que.
 (4) Or—la fin duquel (de laquelle); but not "de qui."
 (5) Or—duquel (de laquelle) je parle; but not "de qui."
 (6) Or—la fin desquels (desquelles); but not "de qui."
 (7) Or—desquels (desquelles) je parle; but not "de qui."

And thus, lequel, laquelle, etc., if referring to things, with all other Prepositions: (a) Referring to Persons. (b) Referring to Things.

L'homme avec qui (or avec lequel), The man with whom. L'amie par qui (or laquelle), by whom... Les ennemis contre qui, or against Les ennemis contre lesquels, whom... Les amies pour qui, or Les amies pour lesquelles, for whom.

Le clou avec lequel The nail with which ... La ville par laquelle, through which.... Les courants contre lesquels.... The currents against which Les affaires pour lesquelles.... The affairs for which

(c) LEQUEL, LAQUELLE, who, which, that.

SINGULAR-Masculine and Feminine.

 $Sub. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{L'ami de Jean, lequel*} \\ \text{L'amie d'Anne, laquelle} \end{array} \right\} \text{ est malade. } \begin{array}{l} \textit{John's friend (m.),} \\ \textit{Ann's friend (f.),} \end{array} \right\} \text{ who} \\ \text{is ill.} \end{array}$ Ind. { L'ami duquel (de qui) } je parle. The friend of whom I speak. Cpl. { L'ami de laquelle (,,) } je parle. The friend to whom I speak. Ind. { L'ami auquel (or à qui) } je parle. The friend to whom I speak.

PLUBAL Masculine and Feminine.

Sub. { Les amis de J., lesqueles * } sont John's friends (m.), \ who Les amies de J. lesquelles * ici. Jane's friends (f.), \ are here. Ind. Les amis desquels (de qui) je parle. The friends of whom I speak. Cpl. Les amies desquelles (,,) Obj. Les amies auxquelles je parle. The friends to whom I speak.

(d) Où, where, is often used as a Relative Pronoun, instead of-

dans lequel, auquel, vers lequel, and with other Prepositions:-Le temps où nous vivons. Au moment où je vous parlais.

The times in which we live. At the moment when I was speaking to you.

Le but où il tend. Les endroits par où nous passons.

The aim to which he tends. The places through which we are passing.

Le mauvais pas d'où il s'est tiré.

The scrape out of which he has got.

Obs .- As dont is virtually de qui, it follows that it is used with any Noun, Adjective, or Verb, complemented by de :-

L'écolier dont je suis content. C'est un accident dont je suis fâché. La famille dont il sort. Le succès dont ils se réjouissent. La manière dont il s'y prend.

The pupil with whom I am satisfied. It is an accident for which I am sorry. The family from which he descends. The success at which they rejoice. The manner in which he sets about it.

The same rule holds good with respect to en (§ 26); compare-

Es-tu content de cet élève ?—C'est un élève dont je suis content. J'en suis content. Est-il fâché de cet accident ?—C'est un accident dont il est fâché. Il en est fâché. Se réjouit-il de ton succès ?-C'est un succès dont il se réjouit. Il s'en réjouit.

^{*} In the Nom. lequel, laquelle, etc., is as a rule only used to avoid ambiguity The Accusative is exactly the same as the Nominative, and is rather unusual.

Cautions.—(1) After whose, the Direct Object is placed before the Verb in English, whilst in French it keeps its usual place after the Verb, and retains the Definite Article:—

Subj. L'ami dont le conseil est précieux. The friend whose advice is precious.

D.O. L'ami dont je suis le conseil. The friend whose advice I follow.

I.O. L'ami au conseil duquel je The friend to whose advice I submit.

(2) In French, neither the Relative Pron., nor the Conjunction que, can ever be omitted, as is frequently done in English:—

The book (which) I am reading.

Le livre que je lis.

Je sais qu'il est venu.

(3) The Preposition which governs a Relative or Interrogative Pron. is never placed at the end of the sentence, as is frequently done in English:—

The house I live in. La maison dans laquelle je demeure.

Where does he come from? D'où vient-il?

§ 35.—II. RELATIVE PRONOUNS USED ABSOLUTELY.

Whenever what, which, that which, are not used with reference to a *Definite Noun* or *Pronoun*, but with reference to a *Phrase* or a whole Clause, they are rendered thus:—

(a) Without Preposition-

Subj. That is what annoys me. He says he is ill, which is true. C'est (or, voilà) ce qui me vexe. Il dit qu'il est malade, ce qui est vrai.

Dir. Obj. That is what I believe.

He says he is ill, which
I don't believe.

C'est (voilà) ce que je crois.
Il dit qu'il est malade, ce que je ne crois pas.

(b) With a Preposition-

Ind. Obj. That is what I devote my- C'est (voilà) à quoi (ce à quoi) self to. C'est (voilà) à quoi (ce à quoi) je m'applique.

Indir.

Compl.

That is what I speak of. C'est (voilà) de quoi (ce dont)
je parle.

That is a point in which C'est (voilà) en quoi nous ne

(we do not agree. sommes pas d'accord. In the same manner, Why? being equivalent to What for? we say:—

In the same manner, Why? being equivalent to What for? we say:—

Je sais pourquoi il vient. Voilà pourquoi je suis resté.

§ 36. Indefinite Pronouns (a) used Adjectively:

Masculine.

Feminine.

Un avis certain, \ reliable intel- Une nouvelle certaine, Des avis certains, \ ligence. Un certain nombre, a certain Une certaine époque, a certain naimher.

chaque jour, every (each) day. maint(-s) homme(-s), many a man. mainte(-es) fois, many a time. le même mois, the same month. les mêmes jours, the same days. un point quelconque, any point, une ligne quelconque, any line. points.

) reliable Des nouvelles certaines, f news. time.

chaque année, every (each) year. la même chose, the same thing. les mêmes choses, the same things. quelque(-s), jour(-s), some day(s).* quelque(-s) nuit(-s), some night(s). deux points quelconques, any two deux lignes quelconques, any two lines.

(b) used either Adjectively or Substantively:-

(1) Adjectively.

aucun soin, no care. aucune envie de..., no mind to... un autre ton, another tone. une autre fois, another time, d'autres fois, other times.

l'un et l'autre élève, both pupils. l'une et l'autre saison, both seasons.

l'un ou l'autre parti, either party. l'un ou l'autre, either. ni l'un ni l'autre parti, neither ni l'un ni l'autre, neither. party.

Nous autres Français, We French- Vous autres! men! (emphatic).

tout homme, every man. toute créature, every creature. tout le monde, everybody. toute la ville, the whole town. tous les hommes, all men. toutes les occasions, all opportunities.

m. plusieurs cas, several cases, f. plusieurs fois, several times.

Un tel éclat, such an uproar. une telle vie, such a life. de tels actes, such acts.

. (2) Substantively.

aucun de ses amis, \ none of his aucune de ses amies, \(\left(her \right) friends l'autre, the other. un autre, another. les autres, the others; d'autres, others. There. l'un et l'autre sont ici.

les uns et les autres. All of them.

You fellows! L'un l'autre. One another; each other (see p. 76). Tout ou rien, all or nothing.

Est-ce là tout? Is that all?

Tous + sont coupables, all are guilty. Tous les deux, both.

Plusieurs d'entre eux, Plusieurs d'entre elles, Tel menace qui tremble. Many a one

who threatens is himself afraid. Monsieur un tel. Mr. so and so.

^{*} Adverbial-quel que soit son pouvoir, whatever his power may be.

de telles actions, such actions,

Nul usage, no custom. nulle part, nowhere.

(c) used Substantively only :-

L'un l'autre. Les uns les autres. One another. L'un de l'autre. Les uns des autres. Of one another. Of each other.

Chacun(-e) (no plur.) a ses défauts. Everybody has his faults. Ces crayons coûtent un franc chacun.

Ces huîtres coûtent dix sous chacune.

Le bien d'autrui. (only used in Genit. case).

On dit. On me l'a dit. On your demande.

A-t-on sonné ?-On frappe.

Si l'on nous entendait!

Personne n'est-il venu ?---Non, personne n'est venu. Ne le dites à personne. Je doute que personne le sache. Y a-t-il personne d'assez hardi ?

Il y a quelqu'un à la porte. Quelqu'un (personne) m'a-t-il demandé?

Donnez-m'en quelques-uns (quelques-unes).

Rien n'est plus nécessaire. Il ne fait rien du tout. Cela ne fait rien. Y a-t-il rien de si beau? N'v a-t-il rien de nouveau? Qui vous reproche rien? Vit-on jamais rien de pareil?

Quiconque désobéira sera puni.

Qui que ce soit qui ait fait cela. Je n'y ai trouvé qui que ce soit. Quoi (=quelque chose) que vous fassiez. (Ex. 16.)

Mesdames telles et telles. The ladies so and so. Nul n'est exempt de mourir. No one is exempted from death.

These pencils cost a franc each.

These oysters cost fivepence each.

Other people's property.

It is said. I am (have been) told. Some one asks for you. You are wanted.

Has there been a ring ?-There is a knock.

If anybody were to hear us!

Has nobody (no one) come ?-No, nobody has come. Don't tell it to anybody. I doubt if anybody knows it. Is there anybody bold enough ?-

There is somebody at the door. Has any one inquired after me?

Voulez-vous des citrons (oranges)?—Do you want lemons (oranges)?— Give me a few.

> Nothing is more necessary. He does nothing at all. That does not signify (matter). Is there anything so fine? Is there nothing new? Who reproaches you with anything? Has one ever seen anything like it?

Whosoever disobeys will be punished.

Whoever he be that has done that. I did not find anybody. Whatever you do.

§ 37. Adverbs are classified according to Meaning into-

(a) Adverbs of Place:-

Où est-il ?—Il est ici (là).

Pronominal:-Il y est. Où vas-tu !- Je vais là.

Pronominal :- J'y vais.

D'où viens-tu ?- Je viens de là. Pronominal :- J'en viens.

Je viens de chez moi. Par où iras-tu ?-

J'irai par ici ou par là.

Je le crovais dedans, il est dehors. I thought he was in, he is out. dedans qu'en dehors.

et dessous.

Passez par-dessous.

dessus.

Au-dessus, étaient écrits ces mots: Above, the following words were

Comme nous l'avons dit ci-dessus. As we have mentioned above. Est-il derrière ou devant?-Il est bien loin.

(b) Adverbs of Time :-

Est-il déjà arrivé ?-Non, il n'est pas encore arrivé. Il arrivera demain;

et nous après-demain. Le lendemain. Où étiez-vous hier (au) soir?— Et avant-hier?-C'est aujourd'hui la foire.

Autrefois; une fois; jadis. Maintenant ; à présent. Tôt; bientôt.

A la veille de . . .

Combien de temps?

Where is he?—He is here (there). He is there (i.e the place mentioned). Where are you going ?- I am going there (thither).

Where do you come from ?-I am coming from there (thence).

I am coming from home. Which way shall you go !-I shall go this way or that way.

Votre maison me plaît mieux en Your house pleases me better inside than outside.

Voyez sur la table, cherchez dessus Look on the table, search on it and below it.

Pass underneath.

Il a un habit et un manteau par- He has a coat and a cloak over it.

written:

Is he behind or before?-He is a long way off.

Has he already arrived ?— No, he has not yet arrived. He will arrive to-morrow; and we the day after to-morrow. On the following day. Where were you last night?-And the day before yesterday? To-day is the fair. Formerly: once upon a time. Now; at present. Early; soon. On the eve of . . . How long?

(c) Adverbs of Quantity (see p. 46):-

Trop de laine, too much wool. Beaucoup d'argent, much money. Beaucoup d'amis, many friends. Peu d'argent, little money.

Combien de laine? how much wool? Combien d'ânes? how many asses? Trop d'ânes, too many asses. Peu d'amis, few friends.

Plus de fromage, more cheese. Moins de fromage, less cheese. Autant d'or, as much gold. Pas tant d'or, not so much gold. Assez de fer, iron enough. Pas de richesse, no wealth.

Plus de cerises, more cherries. Moins de cerises, fewer cherries. Autant d'œufs, as many eggs. Pas tant d'œufs, not so many eggs. Assez d'épingles, pins enough. Point de richesse, no wealth at all.

(d) Adverbs of Manner or Quality:-

Comment vous portez-vous !-How do you do ?-Je me porte très bien, comme vous I am very well, as you see. voyez.

J'en suis fort aise.

que de vous faire attendre. Il aurait dû venir plus tôt.

Il est tant soit peu égoïste. Il a obtenu le premier prix!— Ah. vraiment?

I am very glad of it. Il est venu tout exprès, plutôt He has come on purpose, rather than keep you waiting. He ought to have come sooner.

He is rather selfish. He has won the first prize !-Has he?

(e) Adverbs of Manner, derived regularly from Adjectives by-

(1) adding -ment to Adjectives ending in e, é, or i:—

Cette plante est très rare. rarement. On la trouve très Sa conduite a été sage. Il s'est conduit sagement. Il est hardi. Il parle hardiment.

C'est un homme sensé. Il parle sensément.

This plant is very rare. One very rarely finds it. His conduct has been good. He has behaved well.

He is bold. He speaks boldly. He is a sensible man. He speaks sensibly.

(2) adding -ment to the feminine of Adjs. ending in a Consonant:—

Adj. m. franc, f. franche. Il parle franchement.

Adj. m. heureux, f. heureuse. heureusement.

Candid.

He speaks candidly. happy; fortunate. lucky. fortunately; luckily.

Thus also with Adjs. which have two forms for the masc. :— Adj. nouveau, nouvel; fem. nouvelle; Adv. nouvellement.

(3) changing the ending -nt of Adjectives in -ant or -ent into -mment * (i.e. assimilating the dentals -nt to the labial m):—

Adj. Péril instant.

Adv. Prier instamment.

Adj. Le renard est prudent. Adv. Il agit prudemment.

Imminent (urgent) peril. To be seech urgently. The fox is cautious.

He acts cautiously.

^{*} Except lente-ment, slowly; présente-ment, presently; véhémente-ment, vehemently, which do not change -nt into -m.

Anomalies.

1. Adj. bon, good; Adv. bien, well (bonnement, simply, plainly). mauvais, bad; , mal, badly

petit, little; ,, peu, little, few see p. 80.

2. The following change the e mute or i of the Adjective into é:-

aveuglément, blindly; commodément, comfortably ; communément, commonly; conformément, conformably; confusément, confusedly: énormément, enormously; expressément, expressly; immensément, immensely:

importunément, importunately; impunément, with impunity; obscurément, obscurely; opiniâtrément, obstinately : précisément, precisely, exactly; profondément, profoundly: profusément, profusely; uniformément, uniformly.

The following take a circumflex on the final u or i of the Adjective:assidûment, assiduously; crûment, crudely; (also gaîment, gaily). continument, continuously; dument, duly; goulument, gluttonously.

dj. gentil; f. gentille; ,, bref, brief (unusual); f. brève, briève; Adv. = gentiment: =brièvement. " grave; Adv. gravement; or, grièvement; as, grièvement blessé; badly wounded. f. traîtresse; Adv. = traîtreusement.

4. vite is both Adjective (but not attributive) and Adverb; vitement is only used in familiar language :-Adj. Il a la main fort vite. Adv. Courez vite (or, fam. vitement).

(f) Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation used disjunctively: Es-tu malade?—Oui (or, je crois Are you ill?—Yes (I think so). que oui).

Tun'es pas malade, n'est-ce pas? -- You are not ill, are you? --Si (or, je te dis que si). * Vous payera-t-il?-Non (or, je crois que non).

Es-tu prêt ?-Point du tout. J'ai faim ; et toi ?-Pas moi.

Yes, I am (I tell you I am). Will he pay you?-No (I think not). Are you ready ?-Not at all. I am hungry; are you !-Not I.

* Si, or fam. si fait, is used instead of oui in answer to a negative question. (For Verbs used negatively, see p. 15.)

(g) Adjectives used adverbially without changing: Parler bas, haut. Tenir bon; sentir bon, mauvais. Voir (parler) clair. Acheter (vendre, coûter) cher.

Couper court; demeurer court. Marcher droit; se tenir droit. Faire (venir, etc.) exprès. Chanter faux, juste. Tenir ferme; frapper ferme. Deviner (frapper) juste. Raisonner (viser) juste.

To speak low, aloud. To hold out; to smell nice, bad. To see clearly; to speak plainly. To buy (sell) dear; to cost a great deal.

To cut short; to stick fast. To go ahead; to stand straight. To do (to come, etc.) on purpose. To sing out of tune; in tune. To hold firm; to hit hard. To guess (to hit) right. To reason (to aim) well.

He has more.

§ 38. Irregular Formation of the Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs.

la sienne est la plus mauvaise. C'est lui qui travaille le plus. It is he who works the most. C'est la moindre de toutes. Elle prononce le plus mal. C'est lui qui en a le plus. It is he who has the most. Jelle-la est la meilleure. Il parle le moins de tous. Charles écrit le mieux. Superlative. She pronounces worst. He speaks least of all. C'est le pire de tous. It is the least of all. Tharles writes best. C'est le plus petit. It is the smallest. That is the best. His is the worst. It is worst of all. They are on worse terms than ever. Ils sont pis que jamais ensemble. Elle travaille plus que personne. She works harder than anybody. Il est plus petit que le mien. Elle est moindre que l'autre. Sa prononciation est mauvaise. La vôtre est plus mauvaise. It is worse than the disease. Comparative. Il parle moins que vous. La vôtre est meilleure. It is less than the other. He speaks less than you. It is smaller than mine. Il prononce plus mal. Il est pire que le mal. Il en a plus que moi. He pronounces worse. Vous écrivez mieux. He has more than I. Il en a davantage. You write better. Yours is better. Yours is worse. His pronunciation is bad. J'ai beaucoup d'argent. Le remède est mauvais. Son écriture est bonne. Sette somme est petite. Il travaille beaucoup. He works much (hard) Ils se conduisent mal. He pronounces badly. His writing is good. He speaks but little. Ce cheval est petit. I have much money. They behave badly. This horse is small. The remedy is bad. This sum is small. Il prononce mal. Elle écrit bien. She writes well. Positive. Il parle peu. Adv. Adv. Adv. Adv. Adj. Adv. Adj.

EXERCISES, IDIOMS, AND SYNTACTICAL RULES

N.B.—Words in round brackets (parentheses) to be inserted.
Words in square brackets [] to be omitted.
For a General Vocabulary in alphabetical order, see Appendix.

N.B.—Words in round brackets (Words in square brackets) to be inserted. 1 to be omitted.

I.—RECAPITULATION OF THE REGULAR CONJUGA-TIONS, AND OF AUXILIARY VERBS.

Learn the Pres. Indicat. of avoir, p. 4; of être, p. 6; and of the Regular Conjugations, pp. 8, 9.

- A. 1. Avez-vous beaucoup à faire aujourd'hui?
- 2. N'étes-vous pas fatigués de cette lecture ?
- 3. Vous parlez comme un perroquet.
- 4. Vous ne remplissez pas vos devoirs !
- 5. Pourquoi ne descendez-vous pas ?

Oui, mon cher ami, j'ai un thème français à copier, et une version latine à finir.

Mais non, nous ne sommes pas fatigués de lire.

Nous parlons donc comme vous.

Nous les remplissons aussi bien que vous.

Nous ne descendons jamais 126 avant huit heures.

Drill: (1) Write out in three parallel columns the Present Indic. of—demander, to ask; choisir, to choose; attendre, to wait.

(2) Conjugate in all persons sing, and plur, the Pres. Indic. of—Jaime mon frère et ma sœur. J'obéis à mes parents.

(Il attend son ami), mais je n'attends pas le mien (from mais only).

N.B.—The Possessive Adj. or Pron. to be put in the same person as the Subject.

(3) Put all the sentences contained in the first col. of A. in the Singular.

Caution.—Remember that there are no special forms in French, as there are in English, to express continuous action in the Present; cf. Table of Tenses, p. 18.

B. 1. Is he not tired of his long journey?—No, he is not tired at all. 2. Have they a Latin exercise to translate ?—Yes. 3. We love our country, and you love yours. 4. We cherish our parents, and you cherish yours. 5. We defend our friend, and you defend yours. 6. Do wait a minute (moment) !-I never wait. 7. How do you spend your time at the seaside ?-I eat shrimps and pick up shells (§ 12, II.) 8. We stay at home, and finish our Greek translation. 9. I am shutting my windows, and our neighbours are shutting theirs. 10. (The) looking-glasses (mirrors) reflect the image of (the) objects (§ 12).

Learn the Imperative of Auxiliary and Regular Verbs, pp. 4-6, 10, 11.

- A. 1. N'ayez pas peur!
- 2. Soyez le bienvenu (la bienvenue)!
- 3. Qu'ils (elles) soient les bienvenus (bienvenues) ici!
- 4. Ne parlez donc * pas si haut!
- 5. Entrez donc, messieurs!
- 6. Sonnez le garcon! Avezvous sonné, monsieur?
- 7. Choisissez bien vos amis!
- 8. Attendez-moi donc un moment!
- 9. Alors ne m'attendez pas!

Mais, je n'ai pas peur du tout.

Je vous remercie de votre bon accueil.

Et qu'ils (elles) aient confiance en nous!

Et vous, soyez donc tranquille!

Eh bien, entrons!

Oui, apportez-nous deux tasses de café et deux verres à vin (§ 13; 3).

Vous avez raison, et conservons-les!

Je n'attends jamais plus de cinq minutes.

Eh bien, adieu! ou plutôt, au revoir!

* The Adv. donc (then) is often used emphatically in the sense of the English auxiliary do:-Ayez donc patience !-Do have patience !

Caution.—Many Verbs which in English require a Preposition before their complement, are used without Preposition in French; i.e. they govern a Direct Object (Accusative); as-

chercher, to look for;

écouter, to listen to ; regarder, to look at ;

demander, to ask for; attendre, to wait for (to expect) : rencontrer, to happen to meet with, etc.

and, vice versa, many English transitive Verbs require a Preposition in French :-

obéir à, to obey ; pardonner à, to forgive.

entrer dans, to enter; go (come) in; résister à, to resist, etc., cf. Ex. 18, a. DRILL: Put all the sentences in the first col. of A. in the Singular.

B. 1. Let us wait another (say-still one) minute. 2. Do not touch that (cela) with your clumsy fingers (cf. Ex. 68)! 3. Let us look at this picture; and let us admire it (= le, § 25). Let her come in, she is welcome at our fireside. 5. Let him listen to the advice of his trusty friends. 6. What (que) are you looking for ?-I am looking for my little dog. 7. Stay at home till noon, and finish your Greek translation. 8. What is he asking for ?—He is asking for a piece of bread. 9. 'Tell us a pretty story, grandmother! 10. Obey your parents!

Learn the Interrogative and Negative forms of Conjugation, pp. 14, 15.

- A. 1. Aimez-vous votre patrie? or, Est-ce que vous aimez, etc.
- 2. Avez-vous jamais été à Bruxelles?
- 3. De quoi parlez-vous?
- 4. Pourquoi n'agissez-vous pas?
- 5. Votre élève apprend-il sa lecon?
- 6. Le train est-il déjà arrivé ?
- 7. Combien coûtent ces pêches?

 Combien ces pêches coûtent-
- 8. Où cet accident est-il arrivé? A la gare de Lyon.
- 9. Où votre ami a-t-il fini ses études? (and not "Où a votre ami fini," etc., because here the Verb has an Object).

In putting a question in French, we have to consider whether the Subject of the sentence is—

- (I.) a Personal Pronoun (or ce);
- (II.) a Noun (or Pronoun other than personal or interrog.); and in the latter case we have further to consider whether—
 - (a) the question stands without Interrogative Particle; or whether-
 - (b) it is introduced by an Interrogative Adverb or Pronoun (Obj.):—

(I.) If the Subject is a Personal Pronoun (or ce), either—

(a) put the Verb before the Subject:-

Are you happy?
Does he work?
Is he working?
Can one do it?
Is it there?
Where is he?
When will she come?
Why don't you speak?

Travaille-t-il?

Peut-on le faire?

Est-ce là?

Où est-il?

Quand viendra-t-elle?

Pourquoi ne parles-tu pas?

Etes-vous heureux?

or (b) put the interrogative phrase est-ce que before the Subject— Est-ce qu'il travaille ? Quand est-ce qu'elle viendra ? etc.

Obs.—If the Subject is an Interrogative Pronoun, the order will be as in English:—

Who goes there? Qui valà? (qui vive?)

Nous l'aimons de tout notre cœur.

Non, nous n'y avons jamais été.

Nous parlons de la pluie et du beau temps.

Nous ne sommes pas pressés. Non, il ne l'apprend pas en-

core.
Oui, il y a un quart d'heure.

Elles coûtent trois sous cha-

- II. (a) If the Subject is a Noun (or a Pronoun, other than Personal or Interrog.) standing without any Interrog. Particle, either—
- (1) repeat the Subject in the shape of a Pers. Pron., of the same gender and number, placed after the Verb:—

Is Edward here?

Has (is) Emily returned?

Will your friends stay?

Do his sisters knit?

Édouard est-il ici? Émilie est-elle revenue? Vos amis resteront-ils? Ses sœurs tricotent-elles?

or (2) put the Interrogative phrase est-ce que before the Subject:—
Est-ce que vos amis resteront? Est-ce que vos sœurs tricotent?
and so especially in the 1st p. sing., if euphony requires it (cf. p. 14*):—
Est-ce que je parle? instead of parlé-je?
Est-ce que je perds? ,, perds-je? etc.

II. (b) If the Subject is a Noun introduced by an Interrogative Adverb or Pronoun-Obj. (which must always stand first in the sentence), either (1) adopt the same construction as in II. (a)—

When will Fred be here?
Why is Paul absent?

Quand Frédéric sera-t-il ici ? Quand est-ce que F. sera ici ? Pourquoi Paul est-il absent ?

or—provided the Verb is in a simple tense and has no Complement—

(2) put the Verb between the interrog. Particle and the Subject :-

How is Mary ?

Comment se porte Marie? or— Comment Marie se porte-t-elle? Quand viendra Robert? or— Quand Robert viendra-t-il?

When will Robert come?

DRILL: Put the sentences 1-4 and 7 (in A.) in the Sing.; 6 in the Plural.

B. 1. Where is your little brother?—At school. 2. Does your watch gain or lose?—It gains. 3. How much does it gain?—A quarter of an hour. 4. How old is your father?—He is seventy-two (years). 5. Why are you late this morning?—My watch loses half an hour. 6. When does your friend expect his sister?—In a fortnight. 7. How does the professor explain this passage? 8. Is not this cake too rich?—Perhaps, but I like it so. 9. What does this book cost? 10. What does it cost? 11. Where does Paul work? 12. Where does he work? 13. Are your friends here? 14. Why is Fred not here?

- A. 1. Ces exercices sont très faciles, n'est-ce pas?
- 2. Ces poires ne sont pas mûres, n'est-ce pas?
- 3. N'est-ce pas que j'ai un joli petit chat?
- 4. Vous jouez du piano, n'est-ce pas, mademoiselle?
- 5. N'avez-vous pas une crosse?
 —Si,* j'en ai une (§ 26, 4).
- N'aimez-vous pas les crevettes ?—Non, je ne les aime pas.
- 7. Ce pauvre homme a douze enfants!—Vraiment!
- 8. Notre maître de musique est très savant.—Ah vraiment!
 - * Si, or fam., si fait, for oui, in answer to a negative question.

These exercises are very easy, are they not?

These pears are not ripe, are they?

Have I not a pretty kitten?

You play the piano, do you not?

Have you not a bat?—Yes, I have.

Don't you like shrimps?— No, I don't.

This poor man has twelve children!—Has he?

Our music-master is very learned.—Is he really?

Caution 1.—The interrogative phrases—is he? is he not? has he? does he? does he not? etc., are invariably rendered in French by—n'est-ce pas? irrespective of the affirmative or negative form of the previous statement, and of the kind of verb they refer to.

Caution 2.—The English elliptical turns of speech—I have, I have not, I am, I do, I shall (not), etc., used in answer to a question, must be rendered in French—(1) simply by oui, si, non, or—

(2) by the repetition of the whole sentence.

In polite language, add monsieur (messieurs); madame (mesdames); mademoiselle (mesdemoiselles), to oui or non.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) J'ai leur estime, n'est-ce pas ? (2) N'est-ce pas que je suis bien obligeant?—and give the English.

B. 1. The study of the French language is easy, is it not?—It is. 2. These nuts are very hard, are they not?—Very hard indeed. 3. You are not looking for another servant, are you?—I am (say—I seek another of-them; § 26, 4). 4. They always obey their parents, do they not?—They do. 5. You forgive me, dear Charley, don't you?—Yes, I do; but don't do it again. 6. He is listening at the door, is he not?—No, he is not. 7. You do not ask for any money, do you?—No, we do not (say—we don't ask any of-it; § 26, 4). 8. These pupils have obtained three prizes each.—Have they really! 9. Do you love me?—Sometimes I do, and sometimes I don't.

Oui ; et les anciens Égyptiens

Oui, et les Romains aussi

Oui, très souvent, et les fer-

Nous cherchions nos buyards

Généralement nous les finis-

Nous le battions, parce qu'il

sions à sept heures et demie.

exilaient souvent leurs grands

miers des basses terres trem-

blaient à leur approche.

les emhaumaient.

généraux.

et nos cahiers.

Learn the Imperf. Indic. of Aux. and Regular Verbs, pp. 4, 6, 8, 9.

- A. 1. Les Romains ne brûlaientils pas leurs morts?
- 2. Les Athéniens ne bannissaient-ils pas souvent leurs grands hommes ?
- 3. Les montagnards écossais ne descendaient-ils pas souvent de leurs montagnes?
- 4. Que cherchiez-vous tout à l'heure?
- 5. A quelle heure finissiez-vous ordinairement vos lecons?
- 6. Pourquoi battiez vous toujours votre pauvre chat?
- croquait nos oiseaux. 7. Où était-elle, quand son oncle arriva? Elle était à la maison,
- 8. Mangerait-il tant, s'il était malade? Je crois que non.

The Imparrant, je parlais, je finissais, je recevais, j'attendais, etc., answers to the following English forms:—

- (1) I was-speaking; was-finishing; was-receiving; was-waiting;
- (2) I used-to-speak; I used-to-finish; I was-wont-to-receive, -to-wait; or (3) I spoke, I finished, received, I waited, etc., whenever used in the sense of (1) or (2); for instance after if:—If I waited, Si j'attendais. In other words, the Imparfait is used to describe-
 - (1) a past action already progressing, but not accomplished, at the time spoken of (comp. A. 4, 7, 8); or a contingency;
 (2) a past action usually done; i.e. habits, customs, etc. (see. A.
 - 1, 2, 3, 5, 6).

Caution.—Never use the English turn—I was-speaking, etc.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) I was not asking for my reward; (2) I used to punish the lazy pupils; (3) I was wont to return (rendre) the money that I used to receive.

B. 1. You were speaking of the war, were you not ?-No; on the contrary, we were speaking of the peace. 2. They were not waiting for the train, were they ?- They were not. 3. In summer we used to work [in] the morning. 4. The poor fugitives were trembling with (= of) cold and (of) hunger. 5. We used to act, whilst they were considering. 6. We always * used to have a dog with us. 7. Whenever our aunt returned, she used to bring (to) the children some cake. 8. They used to breakfast at eight. 9. I should stay, if I had (the) time.

^{*} An Adverb in French is hardly ever placed between the Subject and its Verb; say here We used-to-have always, etc.

Learn the Past (Prétérit) of Auxiliary and Regular Verbs, pp. 4, 6, 8, 9.

- A. 1. Où fûtes-vous lundi dernier?
- 2. Quand edtes-vous treize ans?
- 3. Où les Romains attaquèrentils les Gaulois?
- 4. Quand les Athéniens bannirent-ils Thémistocle?
- 5. Pourquoi les troupes romaines rompirent-elles leurs rangs?

Je fus au Palais de Cristal, où je m'amusai beaucoup.

J'eus treize ans avant-hier.

Ils les attaquèrent dans leur camp retranché.

Ils l'envoyèrent en exil en 472 avant J.C. (sounded = Jésu-kri).

Parce que la cavalerie ennemie fondit sur elles à l'improviste.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) Yesterday I was at home (§ 31, 5); (2) Last week I had a reply; (3) On that occasion I did not find him; (4) I lost my way in the maze.

The IMPARFAIT is used to describe actions usually or repeatedly done, or actions which have already been going on at the time spoken of (Ex. 5):—

J'étais très malade quand il arriva.

I was (already) very ill when he arrived.

Les Romains brûlaient leurs

The Romans used to burn their dead.

Quand j'étais à Brighton, je visitais l'Aquarium tous les soirs.

Nous attaquâmes les ennemis qui se retiraient.

We attacked the enemy whilst they were retreating.

The Preteric is used to relate single historical events, without any reference to their duration, or to their relation with other actions:—

A mon retour, je fus très malade.

On my return I was taken very ill (just then, but not before).

Les Romains brûlèrent Carthage.

The Romans burnt Carthage.

Hier je fus à Brighton, et je visitai l'Aquarium.

Nous attaquâmes les ennemis, qui se retirèrent.

We attacked the enemy, who thereupon retreated.

B. 1. I lost my way in this great forest, but at last I found a footpath. 2. (The) Queen Dido founded Carthage. 3. Columbus discovered America. 4. Yesterday I found a beautiful necklace. 5. The lion being ill, invited his friends to enter his cavern. 6. The gladiators used to fight in the arena. 7. I came down stairs at half-past six. 8. When I was at the seaside, I used to come down stairs at seven, and I was wont to breakfast at a quarter to eight. 9. Having (= when I had) replied to his letters, I dined. 10. They were playing, whilst we were working. 11. God created the world.

LA PEAU DE L'OURS.

A. Un chasseur d'Amérique raconta un jour l'anecdote suivante:—L'hiver passé j'entendis dire que, dans une des grandes forêts à l'ouest, il y avait des ours d'une grandeur extraordinaire. Je partis aussitôt pour cette forêt, accompagné d'un de mes amis. Nous ne rencontrâmes aucun des ours, et nous dûmes le soir rentrer à l'auberge les mains vides. Plusieurs jours après, l'aubergiste rappela à mon ami que notre dépense était déjà bien grande; nous répondîmes: "Nous vous payerons avec la peau d'un de ces ours."

Enfin, un jour, nous aperçûmes deux ours dans la forêt. Ils marchaient dans notre direction. Nous perdîmes courage; moi, je jetai mon fusil et je grimpai sur un arbre; mais mon ami se jeta par terre, retenant l'haleine. Il avait entendu dire que les ours ne touchent pas aux cadavres.

Les deux bêtes approchèrent, flairèrent la bouche, le nez et les oreilles de mon ami, grommelèrent comme si elles se parlaient, et s'en allèrent. Quand elles furent bien loin, je descendis de l'arbre, et je dis à mon ami : Quel secret les ours t'ont-ils confié ?—"Il ne faut pas vendre la peau de l'ours avant d'avoir tué la bête."

In the above story, account for the use of the Tenses (in Italics)—either Imperfect or Preterite.

B. 1. Last winter my friends related to-me a pretty story.

2. They were hunting bears in-order-to sell their skins (sing.)

3. For a long time, however, they met no bears (§ 12, 2). 4. At last, one morning, they perceived two bears that were walking in their direction. 5. They lost courage, and threw [away] their guns. 6. One of them climbed a tree, and the other threw himself (so, before the Verb*) on the ground. 7. When the two beasts approached, they grumbled as if they were speaking to one another (so, before the Verb†). 8. When they had gone, the one (celui) who had climbed the tree, came down. 9. And asked the (say—to-the) other what secret the bears had confided to him. 10. "First kill the bear, and then sell his skin."

Learn the Pres. Perf. Indicat. of Auxiliary and Regular Verbs, рр. 5-7, 12, 13.

- A. 1. Avez-vous enfin retrouvé ma lettre?
- 2. Votre sœur a-t-elle enfin réussi?
- 3. Les élèves ont-ils répondu à toutes les questions?
- 4. Ces voyageurs n'ont jamais été en Sibérie, n'est-ce pas ?
- 5. Depuis quand êtes-vous à la maison?
- 6. Y a-t-il longtemps qu'il est malade?
- 7. Où demeurez-vous maintenant.

Oui, je l'ai retrouvée ce matin.

Non, elle n'a pas encore réussi.

A toutes, excepté une seule, qui était trop difficile.

Si, ils ont traversé toute l'Asie depuis la mer Glaciale jusqu'à l'Océan Indien.

Depuis longtemps (or Il y a longtemps).

Voilà déjà trois jours qu'il est dangereusement malade.

Je demeure à Londres depuis nombre d'années.

The French Present Perfect (so-called Indéfini) is used—

(1) like the English Present Perfect, to denote an action now past:— Enfin elle m'a répondu. She has replied to me at last. Elle est arrivée. She (has) is arrived.

(2) instead of the English Simple Past, for any action happened at some indefinite past time (hence its name Indéfini); especially in conversation and in the familiar style of writing :-

Je l'ai vu l'autre jour. I saw him the other day. Nous l'avons rencontré il n'y a We met him not long ago. pas longtemps.

The French Present answers the English Pres. Perf., if used with depuis quand? combien y a-t-il que? since when? how long since? depuis que, since, voilà...que; il y a longtemps que, long since:-

Depuis quand neige-t-il?-Il neige depuis hier soir.

Y a-t-il longtemps que vous voyagez?-

Il y a bien trois mois que je suis I have now been on the way fully

malade?

How long has it been snowing?— It has been snowing since yesternight.

Have you been travelling long !-

three months.

N'y a-t-il pas longtemps qu'il est Has he not been ill a long time ?

Cautions.—(1) For, referring to time present or past, must not be rendered by pour, but by depuis, or il y a...que, or by pendant:—

I have not seen him for a long time. I travelled for several years.

I have sat there for hours.

Il y a longtemps que je ne l'ai vu. J'ai voyagé pendant plusieurs années.

annees. J'y ai passé des heures entières.

(2) Bear in mind that since may be used as-

(a) a Preposition of time:—
 Je ne l'ai point vu depuis son retour.

Depuis quand est-il parti?

Obs.—Depuis is also a prep. of place:— La France s'étend, de l'est à l'ouest, depuis (from) les Alpes, le Jura et les Vosges jusqu'à l'Océan.

(b) an Adverb of time:— Je ne l'ai point vu depuis. (c) a Conjunction of time:—
Nous sommes bien tristes depuis que notre ami est parti.

(d) a Conjunction of cause:—

Je le veux bien, puisque vous

le voulez.

Puisqu'on vous en prie, n'hésitez
point à le faire.

Puisqu'il le faut.

(3) When, used relatively (i.e. referring to a Noun, Adverb, Phrase, or Sentence denoting time (as above), must, as a rule, be rendered by que, and not by quand:—

One day, when I was out...

Hardly had he come, when he left
again.

Un jour que j'étais sorti... A peine fut-il venu, qu'il repartit.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) Il y a longtemps que j'ai déjeûné; (2) Combien y a-t-il que je suis sorti?

B. 1. How long have you been playing?—We have been playing for a long time. 2. Since when have they been in this country?—Since last year. 3. We met a bear the other day.—Did you? 4. Where does your aunt live now?—She has been living in (p. 189) Brussels these three years and a half. 5. Did the pupil answer (to) these questions?—No, he did not. 6. He was just coming down stairs, when you arrived. 7. Have they been in this country for a long time?—Only for a fortnight. 8. Is it not long since that happened?—Yes, very long. 9. "Poor Robinson Crusoe," exclaimed the compassionate parrot, "where are you? where have you been?"

Learn both French forms of the Past Perfect, pp. 5, 7, 12, 13.

- A. 1. Quand descendiez-vous ordinairement?
- 2. Quand êtes-vous descendu ce matin?
- 3. Quand vos élèves sont-ils partis?
- 4. Avez-vous entendu le chant du coq ce matin de bonne heure?
- 5. Ne vous avais-je pas averti du danger que vous courez ?
- 6. Votre père ne vous avait-il pas défendu de manger de ce fruit?

Quand j'avais achevé ma besogne.

Dès que j'eus achevé mes affaires.

Aussitôt qu'ils eurent fini leurs thèmes.

Oui, je n'eus pas plus tôt entendu sa voix, que je sautai du lit.

C'est vrai, mais à peine *fus*je *parti* que j'oubliai vos bons conseils.

En effet; aussi n'y avonsnous pas touché.

There is the same difference between the Plusqueparfait and Passé Antérieur as between the Imparfait and Prétérit. (See Exs. 5 and 6.)

(a) Habitual or repeated action:—

Simple tense: —Imparfait. | Compound tense: —Plusqueparfait. | Je sortais chaque matin, quand j'avais déjeûné.

(b) ACCIDENTAL OR ISOLATED ACTION :-

Simple tense:—Prétérit. | Compound tense:—Passé Antérieur.

Je sortis ce matin, dès que j'eus déjoûné.

The P. Antérieur is almost exclusively used after the Conjunctions—après que, after; dès que, à peine, hardly, scarcely; aussitôt que, as soon as;

lorsque, when; ne...pas plustôt...que, no sooner...than.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) Quand j'avais bien travaillé, je me reposais;
(2) Dès que j'eus réfiéchi, j'agis; (3) Je ne fus pas plus tôt descendu, que je tombai.

B. 1. He had warned the poachers several times, but they did not listen [to] his advice. 2. We had quite forgotten to (de) reply to our correspondent. 3. We had no sooner begun to sing, than (=que) they began to dance. 4. Every time that the autumn approached, the swallows used to return to (en) Africa. 5. When the summer of 1868 approached, the family returned (sing.) to the seaside. 6. Hardly had they finished, than they began again. 7. How long have you been waiting?—Not very long. 8. The English had no sooner surrounded the town than it surrendered. 9. As soon as the sun had risen, we started.

Learn the Future of Auxiliary and Regular Verbs, pp. 4, 6, 8-11.

- A. 1. Votre cousin nous accompagnera-t-il demain à la campagne?
- 2. Votre élève accomplira-t-il ses devoirs ?
- 3. La servante descendra-t-elle bientôt?
- 4. Me prêterez-vous votre dictionnaire français-latin, si je vous promets de le rendre demain?
- 5. Agirez vous ainsi, quand vous serez à ma place?

Il vous accompagnera avec beaucoup de plaisir.

Il les accomplira scrupuleusement.

Elle descendra dans un quart d'heure.

A cette condition, je vous le prêterai volontiers.

Non, ce n'est pas ainsi que j'agirai.

I don't know whether he will stay.

I did not know whether he would

The FUTURE is on the whole used as in English; but-

Cautions.—(1) After Conjunctions of time—quand, lorsque (when), aussitôt que, dès que (as soon as), Future actions must be expressed by Future tenses; in English, the Present is generally used:—

Avertissez-moi quand ils arriveront. Inform me when they arrive. Quand j'aurai le temps, je wous When I have time, I shall write to écrirai.

(2) After si, the Futur and Conditionnel may be used only when si means whether:—

Je ne sais pas s'il restera.
Je ne savais pas s'il resterait.

But—

But—
Si vous venez (not "viendrez") If you come to see me, you will be me voir, yous serez bien recu, welcome.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) I shall return, when I have (the) time; (2) I shall-miss (manquer) my train, if I wait.

B. 1. We hope that you will accompany us to the seaside.

2. I shall accompany you willingly, if you give me plenty of shrimps to (à, p. 108) eat.

3. When shall you return to the country?—When you return to (the) town.

4. We shall be happy, if you remain here another (say—still) fortnight.

5. He will have more friends when he has more money.

6. How long has he been in England now?—A year and a half.

7. He declares that he will resist.

8. I doubt if he will arrive in (à) time.

9. If he replies to us, we shall also reply to him.

10. Which (Lequel, § 34) of these overcoats shall you choose?

11. If they obey, we shall reward them.

12. The admiral expects that the sailors will fight well.

13. We shall start when the cock crows.

Learn the Conditionnel, pp. 6, 7, 10, 11.

- C. 1. Ne seriez-vous pas bien aise, si vous aviez réussi?
- 2. N'auriez-vous pas envie de voyager par ce beau temps?
- 3. Comment passeriez-vous le temps, si vous étiez riche?
- 4. Quand finiriez-vous cela, si vous aviez le temps?
- 5. Ne les recevriez-vous pas, s'ils arrivaient aujourd'hui?
- 6. Attendriez-vous jusqu'à demain, si vous étiez à ma place?

Il va sans dire que je serais enchanté d'avoir réussi

Au contraire j'aurais plutôt envie de rester chez moi.

Je le passerais à faire du bien aux pauvres.

Je le finirais aux calendes grecques.

Si je les recevrais?—Mais oui, avec grand plaisir.

Je n'attendrais pas même jusqu'à ce soir.

As its formation shows, the so-called **Conditionnel** is strictly a **Futur Imparfait**: for just as the **Futur** is formed by adding to the *Infinit*, the *Pres.* of **avoir**:—
j'aimer-ai, word for word—I to-love-have;

tu aimer-as, thou to-love-hast; 9.9 n. aimer-ons,* we to-love-have; etc.

n. aimer-ons,* we to-love-have; etc.
so the Conditionnel is formed by adding to the Infinitive the Imperfect of avoir:
j'aimer-ais,* word for word—I to-love-had; n. aimer-ions.* we to-love-had; etc.

(* -ons, -ez, -ais, -ions, for av-ons, av-ez, av-ais, av-ions, etc.; av- being thrown out in accordance with the general laws of derivation.)

The Conditionnel is used—

(a) in Principal Clauses, to express what would or might happen, subject to a contingency (expressed in the dependent Clause, or implied): Principal Clause: - Dependent Clause: -

Je resterai, si j'ai le temps. I shall-stay, if I have time. I should-stay, if I had time; Je resterais, si j'avais le temps. * * The Dependent may of course stand before the Principal:—
Si j'avais de l'argent, j'achèterais ce cheval.

Si le ciel tombait, il y aurait bien des alouettes prises.

- (b) in Dependent Clauses, to express a future action as viewed from the past: compare-Principal Clause :-Dependent Clause :--We hope, that you will-stay. Nous espérons, que tu resteras. We hoped, that you would-stay. Nous espérions, que tu resterais.
- D. 1. I will accompany you, if you promise to return this 2. I should accompany you, if you promised me to return at once. 3. You will perceive your mistake when it is 4. You would perceive your mistake, if you were attentive. 5. Would you not defend your country, if it were in danger? 6. You hope that they will arrive soon, don't you? 7. We hoped that they would arrive in a fortnight. 8. I should not answer this impertinent letter, if I were you (say-of you). 9. We should build a house, if bricks and mortar were not so dear. 10. He would be glad, if you helped him a little.

Il sera arrivé à midi, ou à midi

Quand vous aurez fini la

Oui.et les avalanches seraient

Oui, je suis sûr qu'il n'aurait

Non: il aurait évité de grands désastres, s'il avait été

et (un) quart (sounded = car.)

descendues des montagnes.

Learn the Fut. Perf. and Condit. Perf., pp. 5, 7, 12, 13.

vôtre.

pas échoué.

moins obstiné.

- A. 1. A quelle heure le train sera-t-il arrivé?
- 2. Quand aurez-vous enfin accompli votre tâche?
- 3. La rivière n'aurait-elle pas rompu ses digues, s'il avait plu?
- 4. Aurait-il réussi, s'il avait agi avec plus de prudence?
- 5. Charles XII. aurait-il eu tant de malheurs, s'il avait suivi les conseils de ses généraux?
- 6. Qui êtes-vous?—Je suis le chef de vingt-quatre soldats; sans

moi Paris serait pris.

The Rules given for the use of the Future and Conditional Pres. (pp. 93, 94) also hold good with regard to the Fut. and Condit. Perfect :-

- (1) Quand j'aurai fini, je serai When I have done, I shall-be very glad. bien aise.
- (2) Si j'avais fini, je serais bien If I had done, I should-be very glad.
- (3) Je travaillerais, si je n'étais | J'aurais travaillé, si je n'avais pas malade. pas été malade.

Caution .- Should and would must be rendered by the Conditionnel only when they come under the Rules in the 10th Lesson.

The Futur Parfait is also used to express that something may have happened, or must have happened :-

Pourquoi le train est-il en retard ?— Il aura eu un accident.

- DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) Je n'aurai pas achevé ma tâche, etc.; (2) Je n'aurais pas rougi, si je n'avais pas eu honte; (3) Je ne serais pas descendu, si j'avais été malade.
- B. 1. We should have replied to you, if you had replied to us. 2. Charles XII. would have succeeded, if he had listened [to] reason. 3. They would not have failed in their enterprise, if they had not been so careless. 4. If you had avoided the use of the Conditional after si, in the sense of if, you would not have had any (de, p. 46) mistakes. 5. For the future, I shall certainly avoid using (say-to (de, Ex. 18) use) the Future and Conditional after si, when. 6. These inattentive pupils would have avoided many mistakes, if they had not used the Present after dès que and aussitôt que, would they not ?- Of course. 7. Why on earth did he not return?—He must have been ill.

Learn the Subjunctive Pres. of Auxiliary and Regular Verbs, pp. 4, 6, 10, 11.

As a rule the Subjunctive Mood (as its name implies) is only used in Dependent (i.e. Subjoined) Clauses. Whether the Indicative or the Subjunctive is to be used depends entirely on the meaning of the Principal Clause: compare—

Je crois (je sais)
Je ne crois pas
Je doute
Il est possible

que cet homme est riche.

Caution 1.—Bear in mind that after que—which is merely a connecting link between the Principal and Dependent Clause—the *Indicative* may be used just as well as the *Subjunctive*; see above.

First Rule of the Subjunctive.—When the Principal Clause contains a Verb or Phrase denoting a wish, will, command, consent, as—

désirer, souhaiter, to wish; vouloir, to want, to be willing; demander, exiger, to require ordonner, to order; permettre, souffrir, to allow, to permit, etc.

the Verb in the Dependent Clause must be in the Subjunctive (unless it has the same Subject, cf. p. 102, b, 3), thereby indicating that the action is not considered as a matter of fact, but simply conceived in the mind of the speaker:—

Principal Clause.

Le maître désire
Le directeur insiste
Votre tante approuve

pour que nous descendions.

Caution 2.—Notice carefully the difference of construction between English and French after Verbs of desiring, wishing, etc.:—

English: -Acc. + Infinitive: = French: -Nomin. + Subjunctive: -- He wishes $\begin{cases} ne & to \ stay. \\ you & to \ finish. \\ him & to \ come \ down. \end{cases}$ Il désire $\begin{cases} que \ \mathbf{je} & \mathbf{reste}. \\ que \ \mathbf{tu} & \mathbf{finisses}. \\ qu'il & \mathbf{descende}. \end{cases}$

Caution 3.—The English Verb construed with should, answers to the French Subjunctive, and not to the Conditional, when it depends on a Verb of wishing, commanding, allowing, feeling, etc.:—

It is a pity you should-be late.

Il est dommage que vous soyez en retard.

DRILL: Conjugate in full the Dependent Clauses (in Italies) of the following sentences—(1) On exige que je recommence; (2) Elle souhaite que je réussisse; (3) On trouve bon que j'attende; (4) Il consent que j'aie congé; (5) Ils trouvent mauvais que je sois ici.

- A. 1. Pourquoi désirez-vous que je retourne à la maison?
- Le maître insiste pour que je finisse avant midi et demi, n'est-ce pas?
- 3. Trouvez-vous bon que je vous réponde en français?
- 4. L'usage permet-il qu'on emploie l'infinitif après un verbe qui exprime la volonté?
- 5. Souffrez, je vous en prie, que je vous attende à la gare!
- 6. Votre ami souhaite-t-il que je réussisse?

Parce que je désire que vous ne soyez pas en retard.

Oui, il n'approuve pas que vous ayez un dîner froid, ou un dîner réchauffé.

Non seulement je trouve bon, mais j'insiste que vous me répondiez en français.

Oui, à condition que les deux verbes aient le même sujet :— Je désire y aller.

J'aime mieux que vous m'attendiez chez vous.

Oui, il souhaite que vos efforts soient couronnés de succès.

DRILL:—Conjugate in all persons sing. and pl. (1) the Examples given in the First Rule of Subj. (p. 96); (2) the Dependent Clause of the 2d sentence (answer and question) in A.

B. 1. I wish you to speak French. 2. Your parents require that you should stay at home and finish your work. 3. The masters insist that you should answer distinctly. 4. I wish you not to forget (p. 17, f) the verbs which govern the subjunctive. 5. Do the rules of (the) French Grammar require that one should use the subjunctive after "aimer mieux," to prefer, to have rather?

—They do. 6. Do you allow (to) my little brother to (de, Ex. 18) stay at home?—No. 7. Does your uncle approve of our returning home? 8. I wish that these pupils may be successful in their examination. 9. We all 2 wish 1 that their efforts be crowned with (say—of) success. 10. Do you require that he should wait here?—Yes, we wish him to stay here another day.

Learn the Subjunctive Imperf., pp. 4, 6, 10, 11.

- A. 1. Ses parents ne désiraientils pas qu'il restât à la maison?
- 2. Qu'exigeait-on (§ 3, g) de l'écolier?
- 3. Trouvaient-ils bon que l'élève répondît en anglais?
- 4. Doutez-vous qu'il soit chez lui ?
- 5. Doutiez-vous qu'il fût chez lui?
- 6. Croyez-vous (p. 40, g) qu'il ait assez d'argent?
- 7. Croyiez-vous qu'il eût assez d'argent?

Si; ils ne permettaient pas qu'il sortît si tard.

Qu'il ne salît pas ses cahiers. et qu'il rangeât ses livres.

Non, ils exigeaient qu'il répondît en français.

Je doute fort qu'il y soit.

Je doutais fort qu'il y fût.*

Je ne crois pas qu'il en ait
assez pour ce voyage.

Je ne croyais pas qu'il en eût

Second Rule of the Subjunctive.—When the Verb or Phrase in the *Principal* Clause expresses a doubt, or uncertainty as to the statement contained in the *Dependent* Clause, the Verb of the *Dependent* Clause must be in the *Subjunctive*:—

Principal Clause.

Il doute fort que nous retournions.
Il ne croit pas que nous finissions.†
Croit-il donc que nous descendions?†

Thus after Superlats., and terms of exclusiveness, restriction, expectation:

C'est le plus beau spectacle que j'aie vu.

Il n'y a personne qui soit exempt de défauts.

Je cherche un dictionnaire qui ne soit pas trop volumineux.

"If the Verb in the Principal Clause is in the Past or Conditional, the Verb in the Dependent Clause must, as a rule, also be in the Past.

Bear in mind that Verbs of saying and thinking imply doubt only if used interrogatively, negatively as above, or conditionally.

DRILL: Conjugate the dependent Clauses contained in the Questions 1, 3, 4, 5 in A. in all persons singular and plural.

B. 1. Our friends wish us to speak distinctly. 2. They wished us to speak distinctly. 3. I doubt if (=que) Fred is at home. 4. I doubted if (say—that) he was at home. 5. Do you think that Francis speaks correctly? 6. I did not think that he spoke correctly. 7. Do you believe that he acts prudently? 8. I did not believe that he acted prudently. 9. Do they think he will return $(=returns \dagger)$ their money? 10. Alas! they do not think that he will return their money. 11. How long (p. 77, b) do you want me to wait for you? 12. He insists upon mu staving $(=that \ I \ stav)$ here.

† The Present Subj also does duty for the wanting Future Subj.

Learn the Subj. Perf. and Past Perfect, pp. 5, 7, 12, 13.

- A. 1. N'êtes-vous pas enchanté que Jeanne soit arrivée?
- 2. Cette remarque n'est-elle pas très juste?
- Je trouve bien étrange que vous n'ayez pas répondu à sa lettre.
- Ne trouvez pas mauvais, je vous en prie, que je vous aie parlé avec franchise.
- 5. J'ai vraiment honte qu'il ait négligé ses devoirs.
- 6. Charles n'est-il pas fâché que nous ne l'ayons pas attendu?

Je suis charmé qu'elle soit venue nous voir.

Oui, je suis bien aise que vous l'ayez faite.

Et moi, je trouve étrange que vous osiez me faire des remontrances.

Pas le moins du monde; je trouve bon que vous ayez eu le courage de parler à cœur ouvert.

Quel dommage qu'il ait été si négligent!

Oui, il regrette que vous ayez ey si peu d'égards pour lui.

Third Rule of the Subjunctive.—If the Verb or Phrase in the Principal Clause denotes an affection (emotion) of the mind with regard to the statement contained in the Dependent Clause, as joy, sorrow, surprise, shame, fear, and the like, the Verb of the Dependent Clause is put in the Subjunctive:—

Principal Clause.

Dependent Clause.

Elle est (était) charmée Elle craint (craignait) Ils sont (étaient) surpris

que je sois (fusse) retourné. que je n'aie (eusse) pas obéi. que je sois (fusse) descendu.

Obs.—The Past Perf. Subj. often stands for the Condit. Perf. and Past Perf. Indicat.:—
Il * brillait comme un soleil,
Sa chevelure était blonde;
Il n'eût pas eu son pareil,
S'il eût été seul au monde.

* i.e. Monsieur de la Palisse. 4 8.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons the above Dependent Clauses.

B. 1. I am delighted that you speak so distinctly. 2. I am delighted that you have spoken so well. 3. We were delighted that you had spoken French. 4. They were delighted that you had spoken to him. 5. Your aunt is shocked that you do not obey your parents. 6. Our cousin too (= also) was shocked that you did not obey at once. 7. I am sorry that he does not reply to us. 8. I was sorry that he had not replied to my question. 9. How glad I am (= that I am glad) that you have explained the rules of the subjunctive in French! 10. Do you think (= find) that they are difficult?—No; on the contrary, I begin to (= à) believe that they are very easy.

Here go through all Tenses of the Subjunctive again.

- A. 1. Faut-il que vous parliez
- 2. Est-il nécessaire que vous agissiez ainsi?
- 3. Est-il possible que vous n'entendiez pas ce que je dis?
- 4. Il est temps que vous soyez de retour, n'est-ce pas?
- 5. Ne vaut-il pas mieux que vous ayez patience?

Oui, il faut que nous parlions à cœur ouvert.

Il faut bien que nous agissions consciencieusement.

Il est impossible que nous vous entendions, si vous ne parlez pas plus haut.

Oui, il importe que nous soyons chez nous avant midi et (un) quart.

En effet, il faut que nous ayons patience.

Fourth Rule of the Subjunctive.—In accordance with the three first Rules, the Verb in the Dependent Clause must be in the Subjunctive, if the Principal Clause contains any Impersonal Verb or Phrase expressing—(1) wish, command, necessity; (2) doubt, uncertainty; (3) joy, sorrow, surprise, fear, etc.:—

Chief Clause. Dependent Clause.

Il faut que nous commencions.* It is necessary that we should-begin. Il est temps que nous finissions. It is time that we should-finish.

Il importe que nous attendions. It is important that we should-wait.

Compare—English, with— French (Exs. 42, 43):—

Subject + Pers. Verb + Infinit. = Impers. Verb + Subject + Subjunctive.stav. Il faut que je mustThou (you) Il faut que obéisses. mustobev. tu He (one) must hear. Il faut qu' il (on) entende. She be rich. Il faut qu' must elle soit riche. We. musthave. Il faut que nous avons, etc.

DRILL: Conjugate in full (1) I must stay here; (2) it is time for me to (i.e. that I should-) finish; (3) it is just that I should-reply; (4) it is convenient that I should-have the preference.

B. 1. It is necessary that I should bring (= I must bring to) him these letters. 2. It was necessary that I should bring him (= to him) more books. 3. It is time for him to return (= that he should-return). 4. It was time for him to return. 5. It is better that he should be quiet. 6. It was better that he should be quiet. 7. It is just that he should be rewarded. 8. It was just that he should be rewarded. 9. Is it important that they should succeed? 10. Can it be that they have not yet seen the Exhibition?—I regret they have not seen it. 11. Must he work?

A. 1. Approchez, [afin] que je vous gronde!

2. Ne retournez pas avant que je vous avertisse!

- 3. Pourquoi ne répondez-vous pas, quoique je vous interroge?
- 4. Attendez donc jusqu'à ce que
- 5. Achevez ce travail de manière que vos parents soient contents de vous!

Avec plaisir, pourvu que vous ne me battiez pas.

Je ne retournerai pas, à moins que vous ne m'avertissiez.

Je ne réponds pas, de peur que vous ne soyez choqué de mon ignorance.

Soit! je ne vous quitterai pas j'aie trouvé mon portemonnaie! avant que vous l'ayez retrouvé.

> Nous travaillerons de sorte qu'ils aient sujet d'être contents de notre ouvrage.

Fifth Rule of the Subjunctive. - The Verb of a Dependent (Adverbial) Clause linked to the Principal Clause by one of the following Subordinate Conjunctions is put in the Subjunctive :-

afin que, pour que, in order that. supposé que, supposing that. avant que* before. pour peu que... if ever ... so little. de manière que,* in such a way that. quoique, bien que, although. de sorte (façon) que, * so that. en (au) cas que, in case. jusqu'à ce que,* until; till. à moins que.. ne, en attendant que, whilst, until. de crainte que...ne, \ lest, provided that. de peur que ...ne, forfearthat. pourvu que.

* Obs.—Or with the Indicative, if expressing an accomplished fact:— J'ai travaillé de manière qu'il est content ...so that he is satisfied. Je travaillerai de manière qu'il soit content ..so that he may be satisfied.

Caution.—May, might, must be rendered by the Subjunctive, only if the Verb comes under one of the Rules of the Subjunctive. But-"You may go" does not depend on any preceding Verb or Conjunction, therefore use the Indicative of pouvoir (may, can). (Ex. 40.)

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons the Clauses in Italics — (1) Il partira avant que j'arrive; (2) Elle le fera pourvu que je lui obéisse; (3) On demande afin que je réponde; (4) ..de crainte que je ne sois en retard.

B. 1. We repeat it (=1e) in order that you may hear it. 2. They will wait until you return. 3. Let us finish these French sentences so that the examiner be satisfied. louder, so that I may hear you more distinctly. 5. Try to (de) finish this note before your father arrives. 6. answers in English, although we speak French to him. has not succeeded, although he acted very cautiously. 8. They will succeed, provided they act more cautiously. that you should stay here until it strikes half-past twelve o'clock. 10. You have not been punished, although you have deserved it. 11. I did not want him to stay. 12. Wait till he returns.

General Rule .- A Verb is put in the Infinitive, if used-

- (a) as Subject or Object of another Verb:
- (b) as Complement of a Noun, Adjective, or Preposition.

A Verb-Complement in the Infinitive may be used, either-

- (1) without preposition :-
- Je dois rester.
- (2) with the prep. de:-
- Je vous prie de rester.

- (3) with the prep. à :-
- Il est disposé à rester.
- (4) with sans, après, pour, par :- Je suis venu pour rester, etc.

First Special Rule of the Infinitive :-

The Infinitive is used without preposition—

(a) as the SUBJECT or PREDICATE of a Sentence :-

Mentir est honteux. Lying is shameful. Donner aux pauvres, c'est prêter à Dieu.

- (b) as the DIRECT COMPLEMENT of-
 - (1) (so-called) Auxiliary Verbs of Mood:-

pouvoir (§ 10, b), to be able to; can. | devoir (§ 10, a), to be obliged to savoir (§ 10, b), to know how to; vouloir (§ 10), to wish; intend to.

(must). falloir (§ 10, b), to be necessary to

(must).

Voulez-vous me répondre? Savez-vous nager? Oseriez-vous lui dire cela?

Will you answer me? Can you swim? Would you dare to tell him that!

(2) Verbs of Perceiving (as hearing, seeing, feeling), Causing; Motion (as going, coming), etc.:-

voir (§ 10, c), to see. | sentir (§ 9, a), to feel. | venir (§ 9, c), to come. entendre, to hear. aller (§ 8), to go. laisser, to allow. faire (§ 11, d), to make, to cause, to order, etc. (See Exs. 50-53.)

Venez le chercher demain. Come and fetch it to-morrow.

(3) Verbs of Saying, Thinking, Wishing, etc.:—

affirmer, to affirm. nier, to deny. croire (p. 40, g), to believe. penser, to think; to be nearly... | préférer,

désirer, to wish, to desire, espérer (also used with de), to hope. aimer mieux, \ to prefer, to like better. etc.

Croyez-vous avoir raison?

Do you think you are right?

Caution .- The Verbal form in -ing, used Substantively in English, must not be rendered by the Pres. Part. in French, but by the Infinitive, which—like the Verb in -ing—is virtually a Verbal Noun:—

Do you intend returning this evening?—Comptez-yous revenir ce soir?

- A. 1. Désirez-vous rester à la maison? J'aime mieux sortir.
- 2. Espérez-vous réussir ainsi?

Oui, j'espère surmonter toutes les difficultés.

- 3. Comptez (pron. = contez) vous être de retour avant une heure et demie du matin ?
- Nous comptons être chez nous à minuit moins un quart au plus tard.
- 4. Avez-vous envoyé chercher le médecin?
- Oui, je l'ai envoyé chercher, je désire le voir.
- 5. Faut-il vivre pour manger?

Non, il faut manger pour vivre!

Caution.—before may be either (a) a Preposition—

(1) of time :- avant midi ; before noon.

(2) of place: -devant la porte; before the door.

- (3) of rank (order):—Il passe devant moi; he passes before me. or (b) an Adverb—
 - (1) of time:—Quelques mois auparavant; a few months before (previously).

(2) of place (order) :- Allez devant; go before.

or (c) a Conjunction—

- (1) with que and the following verb in the Subjunctive:—
 . Partez avant qu'il soit trop tard; start before it is too late.
- (2) with de and the following verb in the Infinitive:— Pensez avant de parler; think before you speak.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) I expected returning yesterday; (2) I prefer waiting here.

B. 1. Does the pupil wish to copy his Latin exercise? 2. Do you hope to reach the town before it strikes twelve o'clock? 3. No, but I reckon to be there (§ 27, 1) before half-past one. 4. We prefer to see you to-morrow. 5. Do you hear him sing?—Do you call that (= cela) singing? 6. Does he expect to meet you at the theatre?—No, but he hopes to find you, at the concert. 7. We have sent him to fetch some paper, ink, pens, and postage-stamps (p. 46, a). 8. Does he believe, then, he is right?—He does. 9. You intend to beat me, do you?—I don't. 10. I had (say—would = voudrais) rather stay here. 11. Let us send for the policeman. 12. He expects to stay here a fortnight. 13. To err is human. 14. Is not Tom very clever? he can see (= sees) the grass grow and hear the fleas cough! 15. Before starting we shall drop you a line. 16. Call on me before I start.

After all Prepositions which admit of taking a Verb-complement (i.e. after de, à; pour, sans, après, par),* the Verb is put in the Infinitive:

(* Only after en is the Partic. Pres. used in French, cf. 22d Lesson.)

Second Special Rule: The Infinitive is used with de-

(a) as a Complement after most transitive Verbs (especially those not mentioned in the 1st and 3d Special Rules):—

Nous vous prions de revenir bientôt. We entreat you to return soon.

(b) as a Complement of most Nouns and Adjectives (except those mentioned farther on in the 3d and 4th Special Rules):—

Quand aurai-je le plaisir de vous voir?

Ayez la bonté de m'éclairer. Je suis charmé de le rencontrer. Il est loin de penser ainsi. When shall I have the pleasure of seeing you?

Have the kindness to light me. I am so pleased to meet him. He is far from thinking thus.

A. 1. Qui donc vous a dit de ne pas faire cela?

2. Vous avez oublié de m'envoyer cet argent, n'est-ce pas?

3. Auriez-vous la complaisance de me prêter votre dictionnaire?

4. Le boulanger n'a-t-il pas promis d'envoyer le pain avant midi ?

5. Avez-vous l'intention de me payer enfin?

6. Que me conseillez-vous de faire?

C'est le maître lui-même qui m'a *empêché de* le *faire*.

C'est vrai, mais je ne manquerai pas de vous l'envoyer ce soir même.

Je me fais un plaisir de vous le prêter.

Oui, mais il paraît avoir oublié de l'envoyer.

Oui, car je suis fatigué de vous entendre demander votre argent.

Il n'est pas facile de donner un avis dans cette affaire.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) I was pleased to meet my friend; (2) I had the pleasure of seeing my parents.

B. 1. We have forgotten to send you those French books. 2. He advised us to wait till to-morrow. 3. He deserves to be punished. 4. I ask you to listen to me. 5. They are incapable of translating that, are they not? 6. He had the kindness to help us. 7. It would be easy to help you, if you were not so impatient. 8. We are tired of waiting for him. 9. It (=this) is a pleasure to see you in such (en si) good health. 10. The ancient Romans were very clever in the art of building. 11. Why do you prevent me from working? 12. I am far from wishing to prevent you from working.

Third Special Rule of the Infinitive :-

The Infinitive is used with the Preposition à:-

(a) after VERBS which denote "endeavouring, learning, exhorting, concerning, consisting: purpose, fitness, destination, repugnance," and the like :-

aimer à jouer, to be fond of playing. | enseigner à cuire, to teach cooking. montrer à faire, to show how to do. chercher à nuire, to try to hurt. apprendre à dessiner, to learn drawing.

Aidez-moi à lever ce poids.

Help me to lift this weight.

Thus also :-

s'appliquer à bien faire, to endea- | inviter à dîner to invite to dinner. vour to do well.

encourager à persévérer, to encourage to persevere.

Le bonheur consiste à faire son devoir.

exhorter à obéir, to exhort to obey. consentir à revenir, to consent to come back.

Happiness consists in doing one's duty.

(b) after ADJECTIVES of a like meaning:—

prêt à partir, ready to start. disposé à répondre, disposed to reply. adroit (habile) à dissimuler, clever in dissimulating.

prompt à décider, quick in deciding. lent à travailler, slow to work. bon à manger, good to eat, etc.

(c) after Nouns to denote their "destination, fitness" (cf. p. 51):—

la salle à manger, the dining- la machine à coudre, the sewingroom.

la chambre à coucher, the bedroom.

machine. du bois à brûler, firewood, etc.

(d) to denote "an action to be done":-

(1) with avoir (answering to the Latin Gerund—mihi agendum est):—

J'ai un thème à corriger, or, J'ai à corriger un thème.

(2) with être (answering to the Latin Gerundive-res agenda est):-Cette version est à refaire. This translation is to be done again.

or, impersonally (answering to the Latin Gerund—desiderandum est):—

Il est à désirer.

It is to be hoped.

A, 1. Aimez-vous à patiner?

Mais oui, je m'amuse parfois à tracer des figures.

2. Avez-vous appris à nager?

Oui, je sais déjà faire la planche.

3. Ces écoliers ont-ils beaucoup de leçons à apprendre?

Non, ils n'ont presque rien à faire.

4. Se peut-il que monsieur Harpagon vous ait invité à diner?

Non, mais en revanche, il a dit au domestique de m'apporter un grand verre d'eau fraîche!

5. Consentiriez-vous à m'accompagner?

Oui, mais malheureusement j'ai encore un poème à apprendre par cœur.

6. Avez-vous réussi à le persuader? Non, il s'obstine à pousser l'affaire à bout.

Caution.—Avoid rendering the English Passive Infinitive by the French Passive after avoir or être, to express 'something to be done":—

It is to be regretted (to be feared, to be done again, etc.), Il est à regretter (à craindre, à refaire, etc.)

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) I like singing and dancing; (2) I do not try to hurt him; (3) I was fond of hunting.

B. 1. His friends have encouraged him to redouble his efforts and to persevere. 2. Are these oranges good to eat? 3. Is your comrade disposed to accompany you? 4. Yes, but he has yet thirty lines to learn by heart. 5. Are you fond of fishing? 6. Yes; just fancy, yesterday I succeeded in catching three little gudgeons. 7. We are trying to buy a second-hand sewing-machine. 8. Are these fine houses to let?—No, they are to be sold. 9. Have they succeeded in finding a good maid-servant?—O yes, but she is rather slow at work (= working) and quick at answering. 10. A French lady wrote (p. 36) to her husband: "I write because I have nothing to do, and I end because I have nothing to say!"

Fourth Special Rule of the Infinitive:-

Besides do and à, the following Prepositions (which alone may take a Verb-complement) take the Verb in the Infinitive:—

Sans demander pardon.

Après avoir fini.

Pour vous obliger.*

Il finit par céder.

Without begging pardon.

After having finished.

To (i.e. in order to) oblige you.

He ended by yielding;

and all those compounded with de or à; as, afin de, avant de, à moins de, de manière à, etc., see p. 111.

OBSERVATIONS TO 2D AND 3D SPECIAL RULES.

The Infinitive-complement may be linked to certain Adjectives, Verbs, and Nouns, either by de or by à:—

(1) by de, if the Subject is impersonal (i.e. il, it):—

Il est facile (aisé) de faire cela.

Une émotion qu'il serait difficile d'exprimer.

Il importe de le savoir.

Il serait curieux de voir cela!

(2) by à, if the Subject is personal (a Noun, or a Pron. other than impers.):—

Ce thème (cela) est facile (aisé) à faire.
Il éprouva une émotion difficile

à exprimer.

Cela importe à savoir.

Voilà un livre curieux à consulter.

N.B.—In the case of a few Verbs, the use of de or a before the following Infinitive involves a difference of meaning:—

Il me tarde de la voir, I long to see her.

Il venait de partir (see Ex. 35), He had just left.

(3) by de after Nouns used definitely:—

J'ai eu le plaisir de le voir.

I had the pleasure of seeing him.

S'il venait à partir..
If he happened to leave..

Elle tarde à venir,

She is long in coming.*

(4) by a after Nouns used indefinitely or partitively:—

J'aurai beaucoup de plaisir à le voir.

I shall have much pleasure in seeing him.*

* It will be seen that Engl. in + Verb in -ing, = Fr. a + Infinitif; and that a (and not dans) must be used before a Verb-complement:—

Il a réussi dans son entreprise. Il a réussi à le tromper. He has succeeded in his enterprise. He has succeeded in deceiving him.

^{*} To, used in the sense of in order to, is to be rendered by pour.

- A. 1. Cela est-il difficile à traduire?
- 2. Il est bien difficile à contenter, n'est-ce pas?
- 3. Comment les flâneurs passent-ils leur vie ?
- 4. Vous avez bien tardé à venir! Vous m'avez bien fait attendre!
- 5. L'express n'est-il pas bien long à venir?
- 6. Votre correspondant a-t-il fini par y consentir?
- 7. Réfléchissez bien avant d'agir!

Oui, ce n'est pas facile à traduire, beaucoup s'en faut.

Oui, j'ai beaucoup de peine à le contenter.

Ils passent leur vie à regarder sans voir, à écouter sans entendre, et à marcher sans faire du chemin.

C'est que j'avais plusieurs commissions à faire.

En effet, mais nous espérons qu'il ne tardera pas à arriver.

Non, après avoir longtemps hésité, il refusa tout net.

Vous avez raison, n'agissons qu'après avoir bien réfléchi.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) I had not been long in coming, had I? (2) Shall I not have the pleasure of seeing them?

B. 1. It was quite impossible to do it. 2. He set out without asking our permission. 3. We shall work hard in order to deserve a reward. 4. We have had the pleasure of meeting him. 5. That is easy to say. 6. Have they succeeded in speaking to the minister? 7. He ended by declaring that it (ce) was useless. 8. How do you spend your time?—I spend my time in travelling. 9. I long to see him! 10. After having taken the town and killed the inhabitants, the enemies began to plunder the houses. 11. We sow in order to gather. 12. They chatter without ceasing. 13. He is long in coming. 14. Madame de Sévigné used to say of La Fontaine's fables: "They are like a basket of cherries: you always pick out the finest, and empty the basket without being aware of-it (§ 26, 3)."

Fifth Special Rule of the Infinitive:—(1) The Infinitive is used in preference to the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Conditional, if the second Verb has the same Subject as the first Verb:—

I wish I were a bird! Je voudrais être un oiseau!

He thinks he is right! Il croit avoir raison!
We hope we shall see you to-morrow. Nous espérons vous voir demain.

But—We hope you will stay. Nous espérons que vous resterez.

(2) After Verbs of ordering, permitting, and the like, the Infinitive is also preferred, when the Object of the first Verb is the Subject of the second Verb (Engl. Accus. + Infinit.):—

I order (allow) you to go out.

Je t'ordonne (permets) de sortir.

Il partit avant d'avoir fini.

Il agit de manière à les

Je travaille pour réussir.

contenter.

- (3) Thus also the Infinitive is used instead of other Moods after the following Conjunctions, provided also that the two Verbs have the same Subject:—Instead of—

 Say rather—
- Il partit avant qu'il eût fini,

Je travaille pour que je réussisse, Il agit de manière à ce qu'il les contente.

A. 1. Croyez-vous pouvoir comp-

- ter sur son amitié?
 2. Pourquoi ce petit monsieur
- croit-il toujours avoir raison?
- 3. Ne vous avait-il pas promis de vous écrire?
- 4. Pourquoi le médecin vous défend-il de boire du vin?
- 5. Est-ce que vous avouerez enfin avoir tort?

Oui, nous espérons ne pas nous tromper en lui.

Parce qu'il a fort bonne opinion de sa petite personne.

Oui, il nous tarde beaucoup d'avoir de ses nouvelles.

Parce que j'ai un accès de fièvre.

Au contraire, je crois que c'est vous qui avez tort.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) I wish I had a house; (2) I thought I was wrong; (3) I shall study in order to pass my examination.

B. 1. Do you hope to meet him at six o'clock?—We do.
2. Do you hope that we shall meet him? 3. We repeat it for fear of forgetting it. 4. We repeat it for fear you should forget it. 5. I wish I had a carriage and pair! 6. He works in order to pass his time. 7. Let us consider well before we act. 8. We had breakfasted before it had struck seven. 9. He forbids us to drink cold water. 10. Do they think then that they are infallible? 11. They ordered the pupils to stay till a quarter to twelve. 12. He has not acted so as to win the esteem of his superiors. 13. We left before they had arrived.

The Participe Présent is used either-

- (a) adverbially, without agreement (as a Pres. Part. proper)—
- 1. Elles sont sorties en riant.
 They went out laughing.

Tout en parlant ainsi, elles s'éloignèrent. Whilst speaking thus, they

w nust speaking thus, the withdrew.

withdrew.

- Vivant simplement, ils sont contents de peu. Asthey live plainly, they are satisfied with little.
- 3. Les ennemis se retiraient, brûlant tout sur leur passage.

(b) adjectively, agreeing in Gender and Number (as a Verbal Adj.)—

Voilà une physionomie riante.

There is a bright (lit. laughing) physiognomy.

L'homme est la seule créature parlante.

Man is the only speaking creature.

Ces poissons sont encore vivants.
These fishes are still living.

- Ses mains sont brûlantes.

From the above it will be seen that the Participe Présent remains unchanged, if it retains its verbal character, i.e.—

- (1) after en (which is the only Preposition that takes the Pres. Part.);
- (2) if qualified by a following Adverb, or answering to as with the Indicative;
 - (3) if it has an Object.
- A. 1. Ces histoires sont-elles amusantes?
- 2. En agissant ainsi, n'ont-ils pas affligé leurs parents?
- 3. N'est-ce pas à la marée descendante qu'ils ont mis à la voile?
- 4. Vous avez vraiment une faim dévorante.
- 5. Cette jeune personne n'estelle pas très obligeante?
- 6. Ses manières ne sont-elles pas fort *prévenantes*?

Au contraire, je les trouve très ennuyeuses.

Oui, ils ont fait preuve d'une dureté révoltante.

Non, ce fut à la marée montante (à haute marée).

Que voulez-vous! l'appétit vient en mangeant (cf. p. 17, g).

Oui, en *obligeant* ses compagnes, elle gagne leur affection.

En effet, et en prévenant les désirs de ses supérieures, elle a mérité leur estime.

Cautions.—Bear in mind once more—(1) that the French have no form of Conjugation answering to the English Imperfect Continuous:—

He is speaking. Il parle.

He was finishing. Il finissait.

(2) that the French Pres. Partic., as such, is never used Substantively, and therefore cannot be used as Subject or Object of a Verb, or as Complement of a Noun or Adjective:—

Lying is shameful.
The art of building.
He denies having done it.
We approve of his staying here.

Mentir est honteux. L'art de bâtir. Il nie l'avoir fait. Nous trouvons bon qu'il reste ici.

Compare-

The singing (Noun) of birds. Le chant des oiseaux. To be fond of singing.

Aimer à chanter.

with—The singing (Adj.) birds. Les oiseaux chantants.

The birds are singing (Verb). Les oiseaux chantent.

DRILL: Conjugate in full (1) Being ill and having no appetite, I ate nothing, etc.; (3) I intend (compte) replying to him; you intend replying to me, etc.; (3) I have been playing the whole evening, etc.; (4) I was fond of dancing, thou wast fond of skating, etc.

- B. 1. The lynx has very piercing eyes (=has the eyes very piercing). 2. Have you seen our children playing in the garden? 3. It is (=c'est) by dint of working that you will succeed. 4. By (=en) seizing this opportunity, you have at last succeeded. 5. He has twelve children, all living. 6. Being ill, they stayed at home and walked about in the garden. 7. Our cock was crowing early in the morning. 8. Is not this boy fond of eating and drinking? 9. We set out in the hope of meeting you. 10. Are you fond of working? 11. We intend returning home to-morrow. 12. What [a] charming view! 13. One cannot make omelets without breaking eggs.
- C. Un homme portait une charge de bois très pesante. Fatigué du chemin, il jeta son fardeau à terre, en appelant la Mort. La Mort sortit de terre, et se dressant devant l'homme désespéré: "Me voici," dit-elle, "puisque tu me demandes!" L'homme répondit en lui montrant le fardeau: "Aide-moi à recharger ce bois sur mon épaule!"
- D. 1. A stag, quenching his thirst at (=in) a clear brook, could not help admiring his spreading antlers; but he felt quite ashamed of his spindle-shanks. 2. On approaching the sick lion's den, the fox noticed that all the footprints at the mouth of the cave pointed inwards.

Learn the Passive Voice, p. 19, and notice carefully the Rule of Agreement of a Partic. Perf. conjugated with être.

- A. 1. Votre exercice latin α-til été corrigé?
- 2. Par qui cet édifice public at-il été bâti?
- 3. Par qui l'élève avait-il été interrompu?
- 4. Aurait-elle été récompensée, si elle avait travaillé?
- 5. Est-il vrai que cette petite fille ait été mordue?
- 6. Pourquoi la garnison fut-elle obligée de capituler?
- 7. Pourquoi le train n'est-il pas encore arrivé?

Oui, et les fautes soulignées ont été corrigées.

Il a été bâti par les Romains.

Il n'avait été interrompu par personne.

Oui, et un prix lui aurait été décerné.

Oui, elle a été attaquée par un chien enragé.

Parce que tous les vivres étaient consommés.

Il aura été retardé par un accident.

Caution. - Bear in mind-

(a) that in French (save a few exceptions) only Verbs taking a Direct Object can be used personally in the passive voice;

and (b) that not a few Verbs take an *Indirect Object* which in English take a *Direct Object* (cf. Ex. 85):—

enseigner, to teach, for instance, takes an Indirect person-object :-

I teach him grammar.
I teach my pupils grammar.

Je lui enseigne la grammaire. J'enseigne la grammaire à mes élèves.

He is taught his grammar. = $\begin{cases} On \ lui \ enseigne \ la \ grammaire. \\ La \ grammaire \ lui \ est \ enseignée. \end{cases}$ Drill: Put all the sentences in A. in the plural.

B. 1. By whom was the city of Carthage founded? 2. Where is the French language spoken?—It is spoken in France, in Belgium, and in the western part of Switzerland. 3. These flourishing towns have been embellished. 4. A great battle was lost by the Romans at Cannæ. 5. The fortress of Sebastopol was well attacked and well defended. 6. His voice would not have been heard, if he had not shouted so loud. 7. Is it possible that the old church has been demolished? 8. It was important that we should be well informed. 9. These plants want to be watered. 10. We do not believe that the news (sing.) has been spread by him. 11. If you had been taught your grammar, you would not use the Pres. Participle after any preposition but en.

Learn again the Conjugation of Compound Tenses with être, p. 13.

- A. 1. Monsieur votre frère estil enfin arrivé?
- 2. N'est-ce pas que notre oncle était sorti?
- 3. Votre cousin est-il enfin des-
- 4. A quelle heure les officiers sont-ils rentrés?
- 5. Où votre grand'mère seraitelle restée?
- 6. Croyez-vous qu'elle se soit fait mal en tombant?
- 7. A quelle heure le courrier sera-t-il parti?

Non, c'est ma sœur qui est arrivée; mais elle est repartie.

Si, et ma tante aussi était sortie; mais elle est rentrée.

C'est notre cousine qui est descendue.

Ils ne sont rentrés que fort tard; à minuit et demi.

Elle serait restée à la maison, si elle avait été indisposée.

Je ne crois pas qu'elle soit tombée.

Il sera probablement parti à midi, ou à midi et demi.

Most Intransitive Verbs denoting Motion from one place to another, or Transition from a state into another, are conjugated in their Compound Tenses with the Auxiliary Verb être; as—

aller, to go. arriver, to arrive. partir, to start. sortir, to go out. retourner, venir, to come. entrer, to enter. mourir, to die. tomber, to fall. to return.

Obs.—A few Intransitive Verbs may be conjugated either with avoir or être:—
With avoir, to denote the action:
With être, to denote the result of the

La rivière a baissé aujourd'hui. The river has fallen to-day.

The principal of these Verbs are:— 2 5 % accountry, to hasten. apparative, to adjacently deborder, to overflow. descendre, to descend. descendre, to changer, to change. to change, to change, to change. according to grow. according to the property of the principal deborder, to overflow. descendre, to descend, to foul. sortificially, to mediately, to mediately, the principal of these Verbs are:— 2 5 % according to the principal of these Verbs are:— 2 5 % according to the principal of these Verbs are:— 2 5 % according to the principal of these Verbs are:— 2 5 % according to the principal of these Verbs are:— 2 5 % according to the principal of these Verbs are:— 2 5 % according to the principal of the principal of

La rivière est bien balssée.

The river is very low.

déborier, to decay.
déborder, to overflow.
descendre, to descend.
échapper, to escape.
échouer, to strand, to fail.
sortir, to go (take) out.
embellir, to embellish, improve, vieillir, to grow old.

DRILL: Conjugate (1) (in two parallel columns) travailler and tomber in all persons of the Past Perfect Indicative; (2) Aussitôt que je fus descendu, je commençai à étudier; (3) (Cela arriva) avant que je fusse parti.

B. 1. When did the travellers leave for Switzerland (Ex. 64)?—Yesterday. 2. Has she returned to (Ex. 86) her native country? 3. Do your friends think that he has arrived? 4. They do not think that he has arrived. 5. She would have remained at home, if she had not been alone. 6. Why have you not come down stairs earlier?—We should have come down earlier, if we had had (the) time. 7. Have your cousins Alice and Cecilia entered the room?—Yes, they have. 8. At what o'clock did your sisters come-home-again?—At half-past twelve.

100

(a) The Participe Parf. of Transitive Verbs conjugated with avoir. and of Reflexive Verbs, agrees in Gender and Number with its preceding Direct Object; but there is no Agreement with the following Obj .:

[An Object may precede its Verb in the following cases only:-

(1) as a Conj. Pers. Pron. or Reflex. Pron.: { me, te, le, la, lui; se. nous, yous, les, leur; en, y. (2) as a Relat. or Interrogat. Pron.: que, lequel, laquelle, etc.

(3) as a Noun qualified by—quel, combien de, que de.]

(1) Voici le livre, l'avez-vous lu?— Voici la lettre, l'avez-vous lue?-Voici les livres, les as-tu lus?-Voici les lettres, les as-tu lues? — Oui, j'ai lu les lettres.

Obj. before P.P.—Agreement: P.P. before Obj.—No Agreement: Non, je n'ai pas lu le livre. Je n'ai pas encore lu la lettre. Je crois avoir lu les livres.

- (2) Voici le livre que j'ai lu. Voici la lettre que j'ai lue. Voici les livres que j'ai lus. Voici les lettres que j'ai lues.
- (3) Quelles lettres a-t-il recues?— | Il a recu les lettres de son ami. Combien de lettres a-t-il recues? Il a recu trois lettres. Que de lettres il a recues !-

Il a recu beaucoup de lettres.

La confiance et l'amitié que vous m'avez témoignées.

(b) The Participe Parf. agrees with its Direct Object (Acc.) only: it never agrees with an Indirect (Remoter) Object (Dat. or Gen.):-

Direct Object-Agreement :-Elles nous (vous, les) ont suivis.

On les (f.) a bien reçues. Que de fautes vous avez faites! Indirect Object-No Agreement:-Elles nous (vous, leur) ont répondu.

On leur a parlé. Vous avez fait des fautes dont vos ennemis ont profité.

- A. 1. Avez-vous enfin trouvé et expédié votre lettre?
- 2. Ont-ils bien accompli leur promesse?

3. Pourquoi avez-vous vendu votre maison de campagne?

- 4. Le mendiant (la mendiante) leur a-t-il (elle) demandé de l'argent?
- 5. Cet enfant a-t-il obéi à son institutrice?
- 6. A-t-elle répondu à sa sœur?

Nous l'avons trouvée; et nous l'avons envoyée à sa destination.

Non, ils ne l'ont pas accomplie; ils ont manqué à leur parole.

Nous l'avons vendue, parce que nous avions besoin d'argent.

Oui, il (elle) leur a aussi demandé du pain.

Non, il ne lui a pas obéi, et il sera fouetté.

Elle lui a répondu hier.

DRILL: In all the sentences in A. put the Object in the plural, and make the Participle Perf. agree accordingly (if it agrees at all).

B. 1. They have sold their estate!—To whom have they sold it? 2. Where have you met these ladies?—We have met them on the Thames Embankment. 3. Here-is the French lady whom I have recommended to you. 4. Why have you recommended her?—Because she deserves to be recommended. 5. Where are the German Grammars that I had lent to you?—Here they are (les voici). 6. The new boots (Ex. 68) that you have selected are too tight!—So much the worse. 7. What difficulties they have experienced! 8. The edifices that the Romans (have) built are remarkable for their solidity. 9. The provinces invaded by the enemies were devastated. 10. Have they replied to you?—They have replied by return of post.

Recapitulation.

- 1. The judges declared that Socrates was guilty.
- 2. The Romans attacked the Helvetians who were crossing the river.
- 3. The French attacked the Austrians, who thereupon crossed the river.
 - 4. As soon as war had been declared the two armies advanced.
- 5. As soon as the winter approaches, the swallows will leave this country.
- 6. Newton was asked how he had succeeded in discovering the law of attraction; he replied: "By thinking of it."
 - 7. I should have been happy if you had succeeded.
 - 8. We are very happy, although we are not rich.
 - 9. Although Harpagon was very rich, he was never satisfied.
 - 10. We are delighted that you have consented to it.
 - 11. The master does not approve of our answering in English.
- 12. Was not King Alfred fond of early rising ?—That is true, and next summer I intend imitating him, for—

"Early to bed and early to rise, Makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise." Learn the Simple Tenses of Reflexive Verbs, p. 20.

- A. 1. A quelle heure vous
- 2. Comment vous portez-vous?
- 3. Et comment se portent mesdemoiselles vos sœurs ?
- 4. Pourquoi cet élève se couchet-il si tard?
- 5. Ne *vous réjouissez*-vous pas de son succès ?
- 6. Ne vous fâchez pas, je vous en prie!
- 7. Comment ces négociants américains s'enrichissent-ils?
- 8. Comment est-il possible de s'égarer?
- 9. Où vous promenez-vous ordinairement le soir ?
- Il ne faut pas se moquer des chiens avant qu'on ne soit hors du village.

Nous nous levons à six heures et demie du matin.

Je me porte à merveille.

Elles se portent beaucoup mieux depuis hier, je vous remercie.

Parce qu'il se prépare pour un examen.

Oui, je me réjouis toujours du succès de mes amis.

Mais, je ne me fâche pas du tout!

En achetant du porc salé à bon marché, et le vendant cher.

En s'écartant du grand chemin.

Nous nous promenons le long de la rivière.

Proverbe qui s'applique à bien des circonstances de la vie.

Caution.—In the case of Reflexive Verbs, compare carefully—
the Indicative, with the Imperative:—
Tu te leves.

Leve-toi!

Tu te leves.
Tu ne te lèves pas.
Nous nous levons.
Vous levez-vous?

the Imperative:— Lève-toi! Ne te lève pas! Levons-nous! Levez-vous donc!

DRILL: Conjugate the Answers to Questions 2, 4, and 5, in all persons, singular and plural.

B. 1. I wash myself every morning with cold water.—And so do I. 2. Rejoice! the holidays are approaching! 3. How do you do (singular), Henry?—I am very well. 4. And how is your sister?—She is not very well. 5. If you went to bed earlier, you would rise earlier. 6. If you laugh at this boy, he will get angry. 7. At what o'clock did you get up [in] the morning, when you were in the country? 8. At six o'clock, and sometimes even at half-past five. 9. At half-past five! why, King Alfred (Ex. 64) used to get up regularly at four o'clock! 10. We have had a poor breakfast, but we shall make up for it at dinner. 11. Do make haste!

Learn the Compound Tenses of Reflexive Verbs, p. 21.

- A. 1. Où vous êtes vous enrhumé?
- 2. Comment se peut-il qu'ils se soient égarés?
- 3. N'est-ce pas que la ville de Paris s'est beaucoup embellie?
- 4. Où nos treupes se sont-elles rencontrées avec les ennemis?
- 5. Imaginez-vous qu'il s'est avisé de parler mal de nous!
- 6. Ne vous seriez-vous pas trompés * dans votre calcul?

Je me suis enrhumé en me baignant.

Ils se sont égarés en s'écartant du sentier.

Oui, je *m'émerveille* chaque fois que j'y retourne.

Au défilé de la montagne, mais ils se sont retirés.

Ah vraiment; j'espère bien qu'il se ravisera!

Nous ne croyons pas nous être trompés.

* Notice the use of the Conditionnel to express possibility:— Have you not perhaps made a mistake?

Cautions.—(1) All Reflexive Verbs, without any exception, are conjugated in the Compound Tenses with the Auxiliary Verb "être."

- (2) Notice the use of Reflex. Verbs in the Infinitive:— Je compte m'amuser; tu comptes t'amuser, etc. Je ne croyais pas m'être trompé, etc.
- (3) so is m., f., and neut.:—himself, herself, itself, one's self; sing. and plur.:—themselves; direct and indirect object:—to, or for himself, etc.:—

Il (elle, on) se fâche. Ils (elles) se fâchent. | Elles se sont amusées. | Elles se sont procuré une place.

Drill: (a) Conjugate in all persons the Answer to Question (A. 1) in the Past Perfect, in the Future Perf., and Condit Perf.
(b) Conjugate in all persons the sentences contained in Caution (2).

B. 1. You have been mistaken, my dear friend.—I have not been mistaken. 2. The American hunters would have gone astray in the forest, if they had not had such a (= a so) good dog. 3. Just fancy, (that) he is ill! 4. No sooner had he approached, than (= that) they withdrew. 5. He would have been angry with (= against) you, if you had not appeased him. 6. We had gone to bed very early. 7. They would have risen late, if we had not awakened them. 8. Have you been for a walk this afternoon?—No, we have thought better of it. 9. What ails you (= have you)?—I have caught a cold. 10. That is because you have exposed yourself to a draught. 11. Why have you been bathing in (par) this cold weather? 12. I have cut my (= my-self at the) finger! 13. Has she not perhaps made a mistake?

- A. 1. Ne vous trompez vous pas ?
- 2. Je m'étonne que vous n'ayez pas prévu cela.
- 3. Le mot "feu" s'emploie-t-il au sens figuratif?
- 4. Combien le beurre se vendil au marché?
- 5. Faut il que je m'acquitte envers vous?
- 6. Pourquoi se sont-elles embrassées ? Parce qu'elles s'aiment.
- 7. Que veut dire l'expression : "Brûler ses vaisseaux?"—

Je suis sûr de ne pas me tromper.

Que voulez-vous! on ne s'avise jamais de tout.

Mais oui, il se prend dans le sens du mot "ardeur."

Il se vend deux francs la livre.

Oui, qui paye (or, paie) ses dettes, s'enrichit (Proverbe).

Elle veut dire-"S'engager dans une affaire de manière à s'ôter tout moven d'y renoncer ou de s'en désister."

Cautions.—(1) A great many Verbs used reflexively in French are not reflexive in English; they are either rendered by the Passive Voice, or by an Active Verb used intransitively :-

Je m'appelle, I am called.

Je m'étonne. I am astonished.

Je me trompe, I am mistaken,

Je me chausse, I put my boots (shoes) on.

Je me doute de. I suspect.

Je m'empresse de, I hasten to.

Je m'aperçois, I become aware, etc. Je me gante, I put my gloves on.

Je me réveille, I awake, etc.

Thus also the following, which in this sense are generally used in the 3d person only:—

Sevendre, to be sold, to sell (intrans): La viande se vend au poids. s'employer, to be used :-

Le mot mœurs ne s'emploie qu'au pluriel.

s'entendre, to be understood:-Cela s'entend.

s'éclaircir, to clear up :-Le ciel s'éclaircit, etc. Les vapeurs se sont dissipées.

(2) The Reflexive Form is also used for Reciprocal Verbs, i.e. Verbs the action of which mutually reacts on (i.e. is reciprocated between) the two or more persons which form the joint Subject:-

Ils (elles) se haïssent. Les Allemands et les Français ne s'aiment guère.

They hate one another, or, each other. There is not much love lost between the Germans and the French.

To avoid any possible ambiguity, I'un l'autre, or les uns les autres, is added; compare:-

They flatter (deceive) themselves. Ils (elles) se flattent (trompent). They flatter one another (two persons). Ils se flattent l'un l'autre. Ils se flattent les uns les autres. They flatter each other (more than two). DRILL: Conjugate Je ne m'étonne pas ; je me réjouis ; je me défends, in the Pres. Indic., Pres. Perf. (Indef.), and Imperative.

B. 1. I think you are mistaken!—We are not mistaken. 2. We are surprised that he has not returned to London. 3. Dutch cheese sells [at] a shilling $a \ (=the)$ pound. 4. When the wolves are pressed by hunger (Ex. 64), they tear each other to pieces. 5. Why do they always flatter one another? Because they are both (p. 75, b) conceited coxcombs. 6. Is the verb douter used reflexively?—Yes, in the sense of to suspect.

C. 1. Le papillon, posé sur la rose, échappe à la main prête à le saisir, s'élève dans les airs, s'abaisse, s'éloigne, se rapproche; et après s'être joué du chasseur, s'envole et va chercher sur d'autres fleurs une retraite plus tranquille. 2. Le pic de Ténériffe se voit * de quarante lieues. 3. Un jour que les Athéniens applaudissaient vivement un discours de Phocion, il se retourna et demanda: "Quelque sottise me serait-elle échappée?" 4. Les médecins se porteraient mal, si tout le monde se portait bien. 5. Ne vous flattez pas que nous nous dépéchions de faire ce que vous voulez. 6. Le temps s'écoule sans que nous nous en apercevions. 7. Partout où mon cheval a passé, disait Attila, l'herbe ne repousse plus. 8. Les hommes doivent s'entr'aider. 9. Il faut s'accommoder aux temps. 10. Hâte-toi lentement.

* Say—can be seen. The French Reflexive form is often best rendered in Engl. by—can (may) + Infinitive:—

Cela se comprend. Il se peut qu'il vienne aujourd'hui. That can easily be understood. It may be that he will come to-day.

D. 1. Let us love one another, instead of hating one another.

2. Water is composed of eight parts of oxygen and one part of hydrogen.

3. Men would die soon enough, without killing one another in battle.

4. Days follow each other, but are not alike.

5. Let us write to each other every week.

6. The bells of St. Paul's can be heard at a great distance.

7. Bestir yourself, and put your gloves on.

8. "Let us make haste," exclaimed our Swiss guide, "the sun is rising behind the snow-clad summits of the Alps."

9. At these words we hastened to wash and dress ourselves.

10. Many French nouns are not used in the singular.

11. Are you aware of your mistake —I am.

Learn the Impersonal Verbs, pp. 22, 23.

- A. 1. Quel temps fait-il aujourd'hui?
- 2. Pleut-il (or, Est-ce qu'il pleut) encore ?
- 3. Y a-t-il longtemps que vous êtes revenu?
- 4. Y aura-t-il beaucoup de monde au concert?
- 5. De quoi s'agit-il?
- 6. Que faut-il pour faire de la salade?
- 7. Est-ce qu'il tonne?
- 8. Fait-il froid dans votre pays?
- 9. Faut-il que je recommence?
- 10. Ne fait-il pas sombre ce soir?

Je crois qu'il fait très beau; le temps s'éclaircit.

Non, il ne pleut plus ; il fait du soleil.

Il y a déjà quinze jours que je suis de retour.

Non, il n'y aura guère de monde; il neige à gros flocons.

Il est arrivé un accident.

Il faut du sel, du poivre, de l'huile, du vinaigre, de la moutarde, et de la laitue.

Oui, ne voyez-vous (p. 35) pas qu'il fait des éclairs?

S'il y fait froid? je crois que oui; il y gèle à pierre fendre.

Oui, il importe que vous recommenciez.

Non, il fait clair de lune.

DRILL: Conjugate in all tenses (1) il ne s'agit pas de s'amuser, etc.; (2) il y a interrogatively and negatively, adding an appropriate Noun used positively; as—Y a-t-il du lait? Il n'y a point d'huile; etc.

B. 1. Does it rain?—No, it snows. 2. Has it been lightening?—Yes, it has also been thundering. 3. Are there not several churches in this town?—Yes, there are seven old churches. 4. Is it warm to-day?—No, it is very cold. 5. It is important that you stay another (= still) fortnight. 6. An accident will happen (= there will happen an accident), if you are not more cautious. 7. How long is it since they have returned?—It is a week. 8. Does the sun shine?—No, it is foggy. 9. In winter it freezes, in summer it hails. 10. What was (Impf.) the question about?—It was about your proposal. 11. Will there be nothing to do? 12. How far is it to Dover? 13. Have the travellers been a long time in Switzerland?

Learn the orthographic peculiarities of Regular Verbs, pp. 16, 17.

- A. 1. Commençons enfin à travailler, mes amis!
- 2. Espérez-vous une récompense?
- 3. Pourquoi ne mangez vous pas ?
- 4. Qui est-ce qui nous appelle?
- 5. Pourquoi ces garçons jettentils des pierres dans votre jardin?
- 6. Pourquoi voulez-vous que nous copiions cette règle?
- 7. Pourquoi Gribouille se jettet-il dans l'eau?
- 8. Les richesses que l'avare croit posséder, le possèdent.
- 9. Avec vous on procède, comme vous procédez; voulez-vous qu'on cède?—Cédez!
- 10. Qui sème bon grain, récolte bon pain.

DRILL: Write out in all persons (1) the Present Indicative of:—chanceler, to totter; se promener, to walk; répéter, to repeat; payer, to pay; acheter, to buy; haïr, to hate; (2) the Partic. Pres. and Imperf. Indicat. of:—manger, to eat; commencer, to begin.

B. 1. Now, let them begin to make haste! 2. Three powerful princes were threatening Charles XII, but he did not lose courage. 3. This wind will bring us (some) rain. 4. The reading of a good book elevates the soul. 5. The return of (the) spring revives all (the) nature. 6. This boy cleans our boots and shoes very well. 7. The wind and the sun dry the ground. 8. They are putting the horses to the carriage. 9. Which (§ 34, b) French author do you prefer ?—I prefer Molière to all the others. 10. What (§ 34, c) was he eating just now?— (Some) Roast ² chestnuts. ¹ 11. Athens flourished under Pericles (Fr. = Périclès; -s sounded). 12. The banners have been consecrated. 13. He (has) blessed his children before dying. 14. Why do you hate him?—I do not hate him; it is he (p. 67, a, 1) that hates me. 15. In summer the sun rises at four o'clock. 16. "My name is Polyphemus," said the Cyclops to Ulysses, "and what is your name?"—"I am called Nobody."— "Nobody! what a funny name yours is!"-" Well, I cannot help it; everybody calls me so; my father and mother always did!"

Mais, vous voyez bien que nous avons déjà commencé.

Oui, j'en espère une bonne.

Nous ne mangeons pas, parce que nous n'avons pas faim.

C'est nous qui vous appelons.

C'est pour m'ennuyer, mais ils me le paieront.

Pour que vous ne l'oubliiez pas.

De crainte de la pluie.

Apprenez les Verbes aller et envoyer, pp. 24, 25.

- A. 1. Irez-vous voir votre cousine ce soir ?
- 2. Comment vont vos affaires? Vont-elles bien?
- 3. Iriez-vous à pied ou à cheval par le temps qu'il fait ?
- 4. Êtes-vous allées vous promener, mesdemoiselles?
- 5. Il est malade, n'enverrez-vous pas chez lui?
- 6. Cet habit lui va-t-il?
- 7. Allons nous promener!

Non, mais j'irai la voir aprèsdemain, s'il fait beau.

Elles vont très mal, elles vont de mal en pis.

J'irais en voiture, si j'étais à votre place.

Oui, mademoiselle, et en chemin, nous sommes allées prendre nos cousines.

Il va sans dire que nous enverrons chez lui.

Il ne lui va pas mal.

Par où irons-nous ?-Par là.

Expressions Idiomatiques.

(a) Aller au devant de quelqu'un. To go and meet some one (in a ceremonial way).

Aller à la rencontre de quel- To go and meet some one.

qu'un.

Aller en voiture. Aller en bateau.

Aller à cheval. Aller à pied. Aller se promener.

Aller chercher; aller trouver.

Aller voir; aller prendre. (b) Comment allez-vous? Comment cela va-t-il?

(c) Cet habit lui va bien. Ces plumes vont bien. To go for a drive (to drive).

To go for a row.

To go on foot, to walk. To ride. To go for a walk.

To go for (to fetch); to seek out. To go and see: to call for.

How do you do? How are you?

Ma santé va de mieux en mieux. My health is improving. This coat suits him. These pens write well.

(d) Envoyer chercher; envoyer dire. To fetch; to send word. DRILL: Conjugate (1) je vais me promener in the Pres. Indic., Pres. Perf., and Future; (2) il faut (impers.) que j'aille, in all pers. sing. and pl.

B. 1. Where are you going, my friend ?—I am going to the post-office. 2. I should go with you, if it (=ce) were not so far. 3. To-morrow morning we shall go for a row. 4. I have gone with him (p. 63, 5), and she has gone with her sister. 5. We shall go this way, and they will go that way. 6. Shall we walk, or shall we drive? 7. How art thou, Fred?—So so. 8. This new hat (Ex. 68) fits you very well !- Does it, though? 9. We must go [and] meet him. 10. We were obliged (Ex. 17, b, 1) to go. 11. Are you glad that they have gone? 12. We were sorry that they had gone. 13. I shall send him word to wait.

S'en aller, pp. 24, 25.

- A. 1. Allez-vous partir?
- 2. Où donc alliez-vous tout à l'heure?
- 3. Ne vous en allez pas encore! Restez encore un moment!
- 4. Monsieur Duroc est-il chez lui à l'heure qu'il est ?
- 5 Allons-nous-en, il ne fait pas bon ici!
- 6. Avez-vous bien dormi?

Oui, nous allons partir pour la Suisse.

J'allais me baigner dans la rivière.

Il faut que je m'en aille (pron. =ah-ue).

Non, il s'en est allé ce matin de bonne heure.

Mais, où donc voulez-vous que nous allions ?-N'importe où.

Pas du tout : j'allais m'endormir, quand on cria au feu.

Temps Idiomatiques.

- (a) Je vais rester (Ex. 17), tu vas rentrer. il va se promener, nous allons nous amuser. vous allez vous faire punir. ils vont mettre à la voile.
- (b) J'allais lui envoyer dire de rester.

tu allais le trouver, etc.,

I am about (I am going) to stay. you are about to return home. he is going for a walk. we are going to have some fun. you will get yourselves munished. they are going to set sail.

I was (just) about (going) to send him word to stay. you were (just) about to call on him.

DRILL: (1) Conjugate the above idiomatic sentences in (b) in full; (2) Conjugate the Answers to Questions 1, 2, 3, and 4 in A, in all persons.

B. 1. I am not going away yet. 2. We are about to leave; shall you go with us? 3. Have your sisters gone away?-No, they have not yet gone away. 4. We should also go away, if it were not so late. 5. We must go away, must we not ?-Yes, it is important that you should go away. 6. Why?-Because it is about to rain or to snow. 7. Go away, you idle fellows (=idlers that you are)! 8. We were just about to bathe, when it began to lighten and to thunder. 9. I should have gone away long ago, if I had not been so ill. 10. Let us not yet go away! 11. When shall you go for a row?-We should have gone an hour ago, if it had not been snowing.

Apprenez les Verbes dormir, mentir, sentir, servir, partir, sortir, se repentir, pp. 26, 27.

A. 1. Vous sentez-vous soulagé?

2. A quoi cela sert-il?

3. Vous servez-vous de ce cahier?

4. Ne vous repentez-vous pas d'avoir négligé le français et l'allemand?

5. Avez-vous faim?

6. Désirez-vous qu'on serve le souper?

7. Quand partirez-vous pour la Suisse ?

8. Comment dit-on en français pour Still waters run deep?

9. A quelle heure vous étesvous endormi?

10. Comment donc rendez-vous: Silence gives consent?

Je me sens un peu mieux. merci.

Cela ne sert à rien du tout.

Non, pas à présent ; servezvous-en, je vous en prie (p. 59).

Oui, je m'en repens, je sens que j'ai eu tort de négliger les langues vivantes.

J'ai bon appétit.

Oui, faites servir chaud, et dépêchez-vous.

Je ne pars pas encore, je ne me sens pas assez bien.

"Il n'est pire eau que l'eau qui dort."

Je m'endormis à minuit moins un quart.

"Qui ne dit mot consent."

Expressions Idiomatiques.

Se sentir bien; se sentir mal. Servir le dîner. On a servi! Vous êtes servi!

Monsieur (madame) est servi(e)!

Ne servir à rien. Ne servir de rien.

Servir de...

Se servir. Se servir de.

A partir d'aujourd'hui.

To feel well; to feel ill (sick). To serve up.

Dinner (supper, etc.) is on the table.

To be good for nothing. To be of no avail. To do the office of a ...

To help one's self. To make use of. From this day forward.

DRILL: Conjugate (1) je ne me sens pas bien, in all persons of Pres. and Impf.; (2) je me sers de mon livre, in all persons of Pres. and Pres. Perf.

B. 1. He is going out. 2. She is going away !- I thought (that) she had already gone away. 3. My little brother is going to (the) school. 4. Do you feel the draught?-No, I do not feel it now. 5. Do you consent to it (=y)?-No, I do not consent to it. 8. Well, you will repent of it (=en). 7. Do you feel sleepy ?-Yes, I feel very sleepy. 8. Is the dinner on the table? 9. Have you made use of this German dictionary (Ex. 68)?—Yes, I use it (= serve myself of-it) every day. How do you feel to-day ?-We feel very well, thank you.

Apprenez les Verbes bouillir, faillir, vêtir, cueillir, couvrir, fuir, etc., pp. 26-29.

A. 1. L'eau bout-elle?

2. Dès qu'elle bouillira, mettezv un œuf!

3. Qu'avez - vous, mon ami?

4. La rivière est-elle couverte de glace ?

5. Pourquoi n'ouvrez-vous pas la fenêtre?

6. Quand cueillerez-vous VOS cerises?

7. Couvrez - vous, je vous en prie!

8. De quoi les indigènes de ce pays se vêtent-ils ?

9. Fermez les yeux, et ouvrez la bouche!

10. J'ai bien souffert, allez $(=I \ can \ assure \ you)!$

Non, elle ne bout pas encore. Je n'y manquerai pas.

J'ai failli me casser la jambe vous avez l'air tout ahuri! (Ex. 77) pour avoir couru trop vite.

Oui, et les montagnes sont couvertes de neige.

Parce que la porte est grande ouverte.

Nous ne les cueillerons pas avant la mi-juillet.

Eh bien, je me couvrirai, aussi bien y a-t-il un courant d'air ici.

Ils se vétent de peaux de bêtes fauves.

Je vous remercie bien (=No, thank you) !

Je suis fâché que vous ayez tant souffert.

Expressions Idiomatiques.

L'eau bout. J'ai failli (de) tomber. Ouvrir de grands yeux. Se couvrir. Se découvrir.

The water (kettle) boils. I nearly fell: I was well-nigh falling. To stare. To put one's hat on. To take one's hat off.

Cette porte ouvre (donne) sur le jardin. This door leads to the garden. DRILL: Conjugate (1) the Answers to Questions 3 and 6 in A. in all persons of Pres. Perf.; (2) f'ai failli tomber, in all persons of Past Perf.

B. 1. You will gather what (= ce que) you have sown. When will the Exhibition be opened? 3. When will they gather the strawberries in the garden ?-When they are ripe. 4. We attacked the enemies, who [then] fled. 4(a). They attacked the enemy who were advancing. 5. Let us put on our hats. 6. When will the water boil at last? 7. The Alps are covered with (= of) snow even in (p. 190) summer. 8. He has suffered much. 9. The Crusaders were assailed by a swarm of Saracens. 10. We nearly missed the train. 11. And so did I. 12. Let us make haste, time passes away (= flies)!

Apprenez le Verbe venir, pp. 30, 31.

- A. 1. Viendriez-vous avec moi?
- 2. Ma proposition vous convient-elle ?
- 3. Êtes-vous parvenus à le persuader?
- 4. A qui venez-vous d'ouvrir la porte?
- 5. Il est évident que vous avez tort, en conviendrez-vous enfin?
- 6. Vous souvenez-vous encore de la guerre en Crimée ?
- 7. Qu'est devenu votre joli chien?
- 8. T'en souviens-tu ?

Je *viendrais* avec plaisir, si j'avais le temps.

Oui, elle me conviendrait, si elle était sérieuse.

Non, nous n'en viendrons jamais à bout.

La porte était déjà grande ouverte.

Non, au contraire, nous en disconvenons; c'est vous qui vous trompez.

Comment m'en souviendraisje, puisque je n'étais pas encore au monde?

Je viens d'en faire cadeau à ma cousine.

Si je m'en souviens!

Expressions Idiomatiques.

Venir parler.
Venir de parler.
Venir à parler.
Qu'est-elle devenue?
Venir à bout de.....

To come and (i.e. in order to) speak.
To have just spoken.
To happen (to chance) to speak.
What has become of her?
To succeed in...; to manage to...

Caution.—Venir, being a Verb of motion from one place to another (see Lesson 26), is conjugated in its compound tenses with être.

Drill: Conjugate in all persons (1) Je suis revenu ce matin; (2) Je reviendral demain; (3) Je viens de le voir; (4) Je venais de me lever; (5) Je m'en souviens; (6) Je m'en suis souvenu.

B. 1. When will he come back?—He will not come back before Christmas. 2. What (p. 34, I.) is the difference between "retourner" and "revenir"?—"Retourner" signifies "to go back," and "revenir" signifies "to come back." 3. Has your friend returned to London?—Yes, he returned the day before yesterday. 4. Do you agree now that I am right?—No, I don't agree that you are (Ex. 12) right. 5. Do you remember our old French master (= master of French)?—O yes, I remember him very well. 6. What has become of him?—He has just come back. 7. Wait a minute, my sister is coming. 8. She has just gone out. 9. The messenger came and spoke to us.

Apprenez le Verbe tenir, pp. 30, 31.

- A. 1. Que tenez-vous à la main ?
- 2. A qui appartient ce beau château?
- 3. Pourquoi tient-il un pareil langage?
- 4. Y tenez-vous beaucoup?
- 5. Pourquoi vous êtes-vous abstenu de vin?
- 6. De quoi vous entretiendrezvous?
- 7. Tenez-vous à aller au spectacle ce soir?
- 8. Je voudrais (should like) savoir à quoi m'en tenir!
- Maître corbeau, sur un arbre perché, Tenait en son bec un fromage;

Expressions Idiomatiques.

Tenir à une chose

Savoir à quoi s'en tenir.

Tenir à faire quelque chose.
Tenir bon (ferme).
Tenir tête à...
Se tenir debout.
Se tenir droit.
Se tenir tranquille (à l'écart).
S'en tenir à...
Il ne tient qu'à vous.

Un exemplaire d'Homère auquel je tiens beaucoup.

Il appartient au comte de Grandville.

Parce qu'il ne peut pas se contenir.

Oui, j'y tiens beaucoup. Parce que je n'y tenais pas.

Nous nous entretiendrons de propos sérieux.

Oui, je viens de retenir une loge.

Tenez-vous donc tranquille!

Maître renard, par l'odeur alléché, Lui tint à peu près ce langage.

To care for (to be very particular about) a thing.

To be anxious to do a thing. To hold one's ground.

To hold one's own against; to resist.
To stand. To stand upright.
To stand (sit, etc.) straight.

To keep quiet (aloof).

To abide by ... (to be satisfied with...)
It rests entirely with you.

To know what's what.

DRILL: Conjugate (1) the Answers to Questions 4, 5, 6 in all pers. sing. and pl.;
(2) Je tiens à rester, in all pers. sing. and pl. of Pres. and Fut.;
(3) Il faut que je me tienne tranquille, in all pers. sing. and pl.

B. 1. I always 2 keep 1 my promise. 2. We shall keep quiet.

3. Why does he abstain from wine?—He does not care for it (i.e. to it=y).

4. What (=que) do these vessels contain?—They contain nothing but water.

5. Does this orchard belong to the gardener?

6. They were talking about (=of) the elections.

7. They will obtain nothing from him.

8. Do not detain me, I am in a great hurry.

9. Is he anxious to go out?

10. They are very particular about this affair.

11. He is holding his watch in his (=the) hand.

12. Whose are (=to whom belong) these apples, pears, and plums?—They belong to the gardener.

Apprenez les Verbes acquérir, mourir, courir, gésir, p. 30.

A. 1. Le roi est-il mort?

2. Est-il vrai qu'elle se meurt?

- 3. N'avez-vous pas dit qu'elle était morte?
- 4. Où courez-vous si vite?
- 5. Par qui l'Angleterre fut-elle conquise en 1066?
- 6. De quoi votre tante est-elle morte? Elle est morte de vieillesse.
- 7. Comment s'est-il acquis les bonnes grâces de ses supérieurs ?
- 8. Que dit le poète Boileau de la fourmi?
- 9. Comment le bon ton s'acquiert-il?
- 10. Il mourut un vendredi, Le dernier jour de son âge;

Oui, le roi est mort! vive (pp. 42, 43) le roi!

Oui, elle n'a plus qu'un souffle de vie.

Non, mais sa vie court les plus grands dangers.

J'accours auprès de vous.

Par Guillaume le Conquérant.

A force de viles flatteries :

Elle jouit l'hiver des biens conquis pendant l'été.

c'est un flagorneur.

Par la fréquentation de personnes bien élevées.

S'il fût mort le samedi. Il eût vécu davantage.

Expressions Idiomatiques.

Faire mourir. Se mourir. Mauvaise herbe ne meurt point. Courir le monde. Il (impers.) court un bruit. Le bruit court.

Il ne faut pas courir deux liévres à la fois.

C'est donc là que gît le lièvre!

To put to death. To be dying. Ill weeds grow apace. To roam; to travel. There is a rumour (report) abroad. It is reported (bruited). One must not have too many irons in the fire. There is the rub!

DRILL: Conjugate (1) J'acquiers des richesses, (2) J'accours à son secours, in all pers. sing. and pl. of Pres., Pret. and Future; (3) Avant que je meure, in all persons of Subj. Pres. and Impf.

B. 1. These merchants are acquiring great wealth (Ex. 68). 2. I am dying of thirst; I have been running the whole (= all the) afternoon. 3. We shall all² die. 4. Where are the firemen running so fast ?—They are running to the fire. 5. If you run so quickly in this great heat, you will run the risk of ruining your health. 6. We have run through the whole country. 7. When did (the) King Louis XVI die ?-On the 23d of January 1793. 8. The Romans conquered the whole world.*

^{*} le monde entier ; whilst tout le monde = everybody.

Apprenez les Verbes recevoir, concevoir, apercevoir, etc., pp. 32, 33:

- A. 1. J'espère que vous avez reçu de ses nouvelles!
- 2. Concevez-vous un pareil procédé?
- 3. Vous apercevez-vous de votre erreur?
- 4. N'aperçûtes-vous pas tout à coup une lumière éclatante?
- 5. N'avez-vous pas été déçus dans votre attente?
- 6. Quand recevrent-ils leur récompense?
- 7. J'exige qu'on reçoive mes observations avec déférence!

Je reçois à l'instant la nouvelle de son départ pour l'Australie!

Je conçois facilement votre surprise.

Non, je ne m'en aperçois pas.

Oui, nous aperçûmes aussi un arc-en-ciel.

Oui, les espérances que nous avions conçues ne se sont pas réalisées.

Ils l'auraient déjà reçue, s'ils avaient mieux travaillé.

Cela se conçoit (see Lesson 28).

Expressions Idiomatiques.

Recevoir (or, avoir) des nouvelles de... To hear from (or, of)...

Recevoir (used absolutely):—

To receiv (or, have) company;

Ce ministre reçoit deux fois par semaine.

par semaine.
Il est reçu chez le ministre.
Il a été reçu docteur.

Etre reçu;

(être refusé; faire fruit sec.)

to be at home:—
This minister gives audience
twice a week,

Elle est reçue dans la meilleure société.

He has obtained his doctor's degree.

To pass an examination:

(to be plucked.)

DRILL: Conjugate (1) Il faut (impers.) que je le reçoive bien, (2) Je ne m'aperçois pas de mon erreur, in all persons sing. and pl.

B. 1. I receive every day (p. 36, a) letters from my friends.

2. What presents have you received [on] your birthday?—I received a beautiful doll from my dear aunt.

3. Why don't you receive them more kindly?

4. Do you wish me to receive him this evening?

5. They perceived that he was very ill.

6. My dearest hopes were deceived.

7. We conceived a high opinion of his courage.

8. It is necessary that you receive their offers.

9. As soon as he perceived me, he left the room.

10. It was important that he should receive your letter at once.

11. Must we go away?

12. I do not think he remembers the circumstance.

130

Apprenez le Verbe devoir, pp. 32, 33.

- A. 1. Combien est-ce que je vous dois? (a)
- 2. A qui doit-on l'invention de la boussole ? (a)
- 3. Qui a sali ces bancs et ces pupitres?
- 4. Que doit-on à ses parents ? (a)
- 5. Aurait-il dû agir ainsi? (d)
- 6. Pourquoi devez vous tant d'argent? (a)
- 7. Vous ne devriez pas arroger ce droit! (d)
- 8. Quand devez-vous retourner à Douvres ? (c)
- 9. Il doit faire bien froid en Laponie, n'est-ce pas ?(f)

Devoir is used in many different meanings :-

- sance, etc.)
 - Je lui dois cet avancement.
- (b) Je dois obéir à mes Je devrais obéir J'aurais dû obéir | parents.
- (c) Je dois passer la soirée chez eux. Je devais passer la soirée chez
- Je devais partir il ya longtemps. I was to have left long ago. Je dus J'ai dû partir à l'instant. Je devrais partir ce soir. J'aurais dû partir ce matin.
- (e) Je crois devoir vous dire cela.
- (f) Vous devez être bien fatigué.

Vous avez dû être bien aise.

Vous me devez deux mille francs.

On la doit à un Italien.

C'est ce méchant garçon qui doit les avoir salis. (f)

Nous leur devons respect et obéissance.

Non, il devrait avoir honte de sa conduite.

Parce que j'ai dû faire de grandes dépenses pour ma santé.

Je ne vous dois pas compte (pron. = conte) de mes actions.

J'y dois retourner ce soir même.

Je vous en réponds! gèle à pierre fendre.

(α) Je lui dois de l'argent (de l'obéis- I owe him money (obedience, etc.)

I am-indebted to him for this promotion.

I must (= it is my duty to) obey, etc. I should (= ought to) obey, etc. I should (= ought to) have obeyed.

I am to spend) the evening I was to have spent f with them.

- (d) Je dois partir aujourd'hui même. I have to leave this very day.
 - I had to leave instantly.

I ought to leave this evening. I ought to have left this morning.

I think it right to tell you that. I thought it right to tell you that.

You must (i.e. cannot but) be very tired.

You must (i.e. cannot but) have been very glad.

In the inverted construction—Dussé-je mourir, observe—

(1) that the inversion is, as in English, tantamount to a Conditional or Concessive Conjunction:—

Were I to die! = Though I were to die!

Dussé-je mourir!=Quand même je devrais mourir!

- (2) that in French the Subj. Impf. (here dusse) or Plupf. may be used for the Cond. Pres. or Cond Perf., see Ex 14, Obs.
- (3) that for the sake of euphony, dussé-je is used instead of dusse-je, as in the case of "parlé-je?" etc., see p. 14.

Cautions.—(1) Render should by devoir, only when equivalent to ought to. (See b.)

(2) In accordance with the General Rule (Ex. 19), the Verb-Complement of devoir must be in the *Infinitive*; notice especially the last examples of b, c, d, e;—i.e. those in the *Conditionnel Parfait*—where the English construction is quite different.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons sing. and pl. the sentences in (d) in their respective tenses.

B. 1. They owe you nothing, do they? 2. I beg your (=you)pardon, they owe me two thousand three hundred [and] eightytwo pounds. 3. I am indebted to them for the good situation that I have obtained. 4. Must I tell you the truth ?-Yes, the plain truth! 5. Well, allow me to (= de) tell you that you owe me some money. 6. I have been obliged to borrow ninety-eight pounds at six per cent. 7. But you ought not to have borrowed money (p. 46) from (= a) this usurer. 8. We are to spend next winter in the Riviera. 9. And we were to have spent last winter at Montreux, on the Lake of Geneva. 10. It must be very mild there, must it not? 11. They have to be at home punctually at twelve o'clock. 12. Ought you to have acted thus? 13. You ought to be ashamed of your behaviour. 14. We were to [have] set sail [on] Monday. 15. That (= cela) must have grieved you very much. 16. What am I to think of this delay? 17. We think it right to warn you. 18. He thought [it] right to abstain from all interference. 19. You must be very angry with him. 20. And he must have been sorry for that mishap. 21, After all these examples, I think (that) you must thoroughly understand the different constructions of the verb devoir.

Apprenez les Verbes savoir et pouvoir, pp. 32, 33.

- A. 1. Lequel savez-vous le mieux, l'italien ou l'allemand?
- 2. Votre ami sait-il bien les mathématiques?
- 3. Ne lui savez-vous pas bon gré de vous avoir si bien traité?
- 4. Ce savant sait-il bien enseigner ce qu'il sait?
- 5. Savez-vous ce que je sais?
- 6. Je sais que vous les connaissez. (Ex. 56.)
- 7. Je connais un homme qui sait huit langues.
- 8. Pouvez-vous me dire si M. Blanc est chez lui?
- 9. Puis-je me chauffer les pieds (Ex. 77), monsieur?
- 10. Bacon était-il savant ?

Nous savons beaucoup mieux l'allemand.

Pas que je sache. (Subjunct. depending on a negation, Ex. 13.)

Je ne lui en sais pas mauvais gré, tant s'en faut.

A merveille; je ne sache personne qu'on puisse lui comparer.

Je sais ce que vous savez.

Et moi, je sais que vous ne les connaissez pas.

Et moi, je connais un homme qui connaît tous les habitants de ce village.

Je ne saurais vous le dire.

Oui, mais prenez garde de vous brûler : le feu est vif!

Oui, il savait tout ce qu'on pouvait savoir de son temps.

Savoir is used in several ways:-

(1) Je sais cela (la vérité, etc.) Je sais le grec.

I know that (the truth, etc.) I know Greek.

(2) Je sais nager. Je sais parler français. I can (i.e. know how to) swim. I can (know how to) speak French.

Caution 1.—To know must be rendered :—

(a) by savoir, if used in the sense of-to know how to, to have learnt how to, to be aware of, i.e. to know mentally :-

Je ne sais pas chanter.

Je le sais bien.

Je sais que vous l'estimez.*

I do not know how to sing. I know it well = I am fully aware of

I know that you esteem him.

* If the Object of to know is a Sentence, savoir (and not "connaître") must be used :-

Savez-vous s'il viendra? Nous savons de quoi il s'agit. Do you know whether he will come? We know what it is about.

(b) by connaître (see Lesson 56), if used in the sense of-to be acquainted with, to know by sight, by hearing, or by any other sense :-I know this man.

Je connais cet homme.

I know (recognise) this tune, i.e. I have heard it before.

Je connais cet air.

Caution 2.-Can must be rendered :-

- (a) by savoir, in the sense of—to know how to, to have learnt how to :-
- Je ne sais pas patiner, parce que I cannot skate, because I never je ne l'ai pas appris. I learnt it.
 - (b) by pouvoir, in the sense of—to be able to, to be allowed to:—
- Je ne puis pas patiner aujourd'hui, I cannot skate to-day, because I parce que je me suis donné une have sprained my foot. entorse au pied.

Pouvez-vous me dire quelle heure Can you tell me what time it is? il est?

Obs.—Notice the use of the Reflexive Voice; see p. 119, C. (2)*:—

Cela se peut.

That may be.

Cela peut se faire.

That can be done.

DRILL: Conjugate (1) Je ne sais pas chanter, in all pers. of the Pres., Preterite, Future; (2) Il faut que je sache, Il faudrait que je susse, in all persons sing. and pl.; il faut (faudrait) to be left unchanged.

B. 1. Do you know German ?—Yes, I can speak German. 2. Can you lift up this table ?- No, I cannot (it), it is too heavy. 3. Can you tell me after which verbs we may leave out "pas"?—Why, of course; after pouvoir, savoir, oser, cesser, bouger, (n') avoir garde de, especially if they are followed by (= of)an Infinitive. 4. How do you render might have in French? -By the Conditional Past of pouvoir. 5. Might not you have known that ?- I might have known it. 6. As a rule, men who know little speak much, and those who know much speak little. 7. All that (= tout ce que) I know is (= p. 67, 2) that I know nothing. 8. We knew that you had risen very late. 9. We learnt that you had gone to bed late. 10. When shall you know whether he will come? 11. He does not want me to know the truth. 12. If I knew that he was ill. I should call on him. 13. Know that I am a Roman! 14. You must know that I am acquainted with many Romans. 15. You ought to have known that long ago. 16. May I stay at home until you come back ? -No. 17. Shall you be able to accompany me this evening? 18. Do you think (that) he knows his lesson?—I know that he does not know it. 19. Have they been able to reach the opposite shore? 20. He has managed to win the good graces of his superiors.

Apprenez le Verbe vouloir, pp. 32, 33.

- A. 1. Voulez-vous m'accompagner un petit bout de chemin?
- 2. Veux-tu que je t'accompagne jusque chez toi?
- 3. Voudrais-tu du vin rouge ou du vin blanc?
- 4. Quelle différence y a-t-il entre je veux et je voudrais?
- 5. Quelle observation y a-t-il à faire sur l'Impératif de vouloir?
- 6. Eh bien! veuillez me dire quelle heure il est!
- 7. Savez-vous le grec ?—Non. —Comment se peut-il que vous ne sachiez pas cette belle langue ?
- Quelqu'un demanda à Diogène à quelle heure il devait dîner?
- 9. Que veut dire le proverbe Qui refuse muse?

Je le veux bien.

Ne te dérange pas, j'irai tout seul.

Je préfère le vin rouge; il ne porte pas à la tête.

Je veux exprime une résolution; je voudrais n'exprime qu'un souhait.

L'expression veuillez n'est impérative que pour la forme; elle veut dire: Ayez l'obligeance.

Il est temps de se coucher!

Que voulez-vous! on ne peut pas tout savoir.

"Si tu es riche, quand tu voudras; si tu es pauvre, quand tu pourras."

Qui ne prend le bien quand * il peut, Ne le trouve pas quand il veut. * (d sounded=t.)

 Si quelqu'un veut savoir comment il faut donner, qu'il se mette à la place de celui qui reçoit.

Vouloir is used in different ways :-

(a) to command, to order, to insist, followed by a Verb in Subjunctive (see Lesson 13), or by a Direct Object:—

Votre père veut que vous obéissiez. Your father insists on your obeying. La loi le veut. The law commands it.

- (b) to be willing, to intend, to want, followed by an Infinitive (Ex. 23): Je voux partir ce matin.

 I want to set out this morning.
- (c) to want, require, wish, followed by Noun- (or Pronoun-) Object:—
 Que voulez-vous?—Je veux mon What do you want?—I want my

En voulez-vous?—Oui, donnez- Do you want some?—Yes, give me some.

Cette plante veut un terrain humide. This plant requires a damp soil.

(d) if used in the Conditional, it expresses a deferential wish:

Je voudrais bien le voir.
J'aurais bien voulu le voir.
Je voudrais bien l'avoir vu.
Je voudrais un peu de vin.
Voudriez-vous bien me dire...?

I should like to see him.
I should have liked to see him.
I wish I had seen him.
I should like to have some wine.
Would you be kind enough to tell me?

Expressions Idiomatiques.

Je lui veux du bien.
Je lui veux du mal.
Je lui en veux.
Voulez-vous bien vous taire!
Vouloir dire:

Que veut dire ce mot?
Que me voulez-vous?
Je le veux bien.

Vouloir c'est pouvoir. Savoir c'est pouvoir. I wish him (her) well.
I owe him (her) a grudge.
I bear him (her) ill will.
Do be quiet!
To signify (to mean)—
What does this word mean?
What can I do for you?
{ I am agreeable. I consent to (grant) it. Be it so.
Where there is a will, there is a way.
Knowledge is power.

Cautions.—(1) Bear in mind the Rule given in Lesson 13:—
Je veux venir.

Je veux qu'il revienne.

I want him to come back.

(2) I wish you a good morning. Je vous souhaite (not "veux") le bon jour.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons of their respective tenses, the sentences contained in (b) and (c).

B. 1. I want to stay here. 2. I wanted you to stay. 3. I should like to set out. 4. I should like him to set out. 5. He wanted to come. 6. What do you want?—I want him to go. 7. Will you accompany me? 8. Shall you accompany me? 9. How many copies do you want [to have]?—I should like to have at least a dozen copies. 10. Have the kindness to explain this rule to me. 11. We should like to see you tomorrow.—We are quite agreeable. 12. Why do you bear me ill will?—I do not bear you a grudge; I wish you well. 13. We wish you a Happy New Year. 14. Does the pupil know Latin?—I wish he did know it, he would know the genders of French nouns much better. 15. "I won't boil," said Mrs. Peeribingle's kettle. 16. We wish them a happy journey.

Apprenez le Verbe Impersonnel falloir, pp. 32, 33.

- A. 1. Que vous faut-il (qu'estce qu'il vous faut)?
- 2. Que faut-il à vos amis? Qu' est-ce qu'il leur faut?
- 3. Que faut-il aux plantes pour croître.
- 4. Combien d'argent vous faudra - t - il pour faire ce vovage?
- 5. Je crovais qu'il vous en faudrait davantage.
- 6. Que lui faudrait-il pour réussir?
- 7. Crovez-vous que François soit un homme sûr?
- 8. Ce monsieur a-t-il du savoirvivre?
- 9. Cela vous va-t-il?

Il me faut une douzaine d'œufs (f silent in plural.),

Il leur faut une centaine de francs.

Il leur faut de la pluie et du soleil.

Il me faudra environ deux cent cinquante francs; il fait cher vivre dans ce pays.

Oui, il m'en faudrait bien davantage, si je n'étais pas si économe.

Il lui faudrait un peu plus d'énergie.

Oui, c'est l'homme qu'il vous faut.

Oui, il est très comme il faut.

Oui, c'est précisément ce qu'il me faut.

Falloir is always used impersonally, and has several different constructions and meanings :-

(a) with a Noun- (or Pronoun-) Complement-

Il me faut du vin.

I want (some) wine. Il te faut de l'argent. You want (some) money.

Il lui faut de la viande. He wants (some) meat.

She wants (some) water. Il lui faut de l'eau.

Il faut une plume à cet écolier.* This pupil wants a pen. We want (some) grapes. Il nous faut des raisins.

You want (some) groceries. Il vous faut des épiceries. They want (some) spices. Il leur faut des épices.

* Or-Il faut à cet écolier une plume.

and so with other Tenses :-

Il me fallait (fallut) bien de I wanted much money. l'argent.

Il me faudra beaucoup de patience. I shall want much patience.

Il me faudrait trois exemplaires. I should want three copies. Il m'aurait fallu plus de lait. I should have wanted more milk.

Crois-tu qu'il me faille un passe- Do you think I want a passport ?

Il ne croyait pas qu'il me fallût He did not think I wanted a guide. un guide.

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE.

Do I want so much luggage ? Me faut-il tant de bagage ? Il ne vous faut guère qu'une You want hardly anything but a

portmanteau. valise.

Combien lui faut-il d'argent? How much money does he want? Combien vous faut-il de tapis ? How many carpets do you want?

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons singular and plural-

(1) il me faut .. with Masc. Nouns sing. viol Mass. Nouns sing.

"Fem. Nouns sing.

"M. and F. Nouns plur.

"A Noun-Object qualified by an Adv. of quantity. See § 12, p. 46.

"any Noun-Object. (2) il m'a fallu... (3) il me faudra... (4) il m'aurait fallu ...

(5) Combien me faut-il-de . .? (6) Cela me va-t-il? Does that suit me?

Caution.—In using Personal Pronouns as Objects, distinguish carefully between-

(a) Pr	ERSONAL.	(b) REFLEXIVE.
(1) Direct Object. (Accusative.)	(2) Indirect Object. (Dative.)	Direct and Indirect Object. (Accusative and Dative.)
On me voit. On te voit. On le (la) voit.	Il me faut. Il te faut. Il lui faut.	Je me lave (procure, Tu te laves. [etc.) Il(elle) se lave.
On nous voit. On vous voit. On les voit.	Il nous faut. Il vous faut. Il leur faut.	Nous nous lavons. Vous vous lavez. Ils se lavent.

It will be seen that for the first and second person sing. and plur., the forms are the same throughout; but not for the third.

B. 1. He wants some bread, cheese, butter, beer, and radishes. 2. They want milk and water in order to quench their thirst. 3. Do you want any gloves ?-Yes, we want white kid gloves. 4. What do you (sing.) want ?—I want a Greek grammar. 5. Why do you want so many books ?- To prepare for my examination. 6. How much cloth shall you want ?-We shall want at least ten yards. 7. How many horses would they have wanted for their expedition? 8. Do you think that he wants more money ?-I do. 9. What does this idler want ?-Stirrup leather. 10. That is exactly what you want too, 11. Why does he bear me a grudge ?-He! why, he wishes you well.

138 OUARANTE-TROISIÈME LECON-FALLOIR (SUITE)

- A. 1. Faut-il s'en aller?
- 2. Faut-il nous dépêcher? Or-Faut-il que nous nous dépêchions?
- 3. Faudrait-il que je me tienne prêt?
- 4. J'ai égaré mon dictionnaire de poche, que faut-il faire ?
- 5. Que faut-il avant tout pour enseigner?
- 6. Faut-il que Charles et moi,
- 7. Faut-il que je m'en aille?
- 8. Pensez vous qu'il faille † croire tout ce qu'il dit ?
- 9. Faut il que cette femme sache la vérité?

Non, il faut rester.

Mais oui, puisqu'il vous faudrait être à votre destination à midi.

Je crois que oui ; il va falloir dégaîner.

Il faut vous en passer, ou en acheter un autre.

Il faut la patience d'un ange.

Cela va sans dire, puisque nous recommencions ce thème? vous ne l'avez pas fait comme il faut.

> Oui, allez-vous-en (va-t'-en), et cela tout de suite.

Quant à moi, je sais ce qu'en vaut l'aune.

Faut-il que vous demandiez une telle question ?

† Remember that the pronunciation of faille is = fah-ye (cf. aille, p. 123, A. 3).

(b) Falloir, with a Verb-Complement in the Infinitive (see Lesson 12, II.), provided the logical Subject is a Personal Pronoun :-

Il me faut commencer à midi.*

Il te faut revenir tout de suite.

Il lui faut rester jusqu'au soir.

Il lui faut tricoter une paire de bas. She must knit a pair of stockings.

Il nous faut vaincre ou mourir!

Il vous faut renoncer à ce projet.

Il leur faut corriger leurs thèmes.

I must begin at twelve o'clock.

Thou must return immediately.

He must stay until evening.

We must conquer or die!

You must renounce this project.

They must correct their exercises.

* Or also without me, te, etc., when it is plain from the context who must, or when used in a general sense :-

Il faut payer.

Il faudra voir cela.

Il faut être patient dans l'adversité.

One must pay.

That remains yet to be seen.

One must be patient in adversity.

Obs .- If the real Subject is a Noun, the Subjunctive with que must be used instead of the Infinitive, see (c).

- (c) Falloir, with que and a Verb-Complement in the Subjunctive-
 - (1) the only correct construction—if the real Subject is a Noun;
 - (2) optional—if the Subject is a Personal Pronoun:
- (1) Il faut que Paul sache la vérité. Paul must know the truth.

 Il fallait que Paul sût la vérité. It was necessary that Paul should-know the truth.
- (2) Il faut que je revienne demain. I must come back to-morrow.
- Il faudra que je revienne, I shall-have to come back. or, Il me faut (faudra) revenir.
- Il faut (faudra) que tu ailles You must go to the seaside. (il te faut aller) aux bains de mer.
- Il faut (faudra) qu'il s'en aille. He must (will have to) go away.
- Il faut (faudra) que Berthe se Bertha must (will have to) hasten.
- Il a fallu (faudra) que nous We have been (shall be) obliged to restions.
- Il fallut que je revinsse sur mes pas. I had to retrace my steps.
- Il aurait fallu que tu y allasses. It would have been necessary for you to go there.
- DRILL (1) Put the sentences in (b) in the Pres. Perf. and Future Pres. (the Infinitive must be left unchanged); (2) Conjugate in all persons singular and plural the sentences 1, 4, and 7 of (b) in their respective tenses and moods; (3) Complement—Il faut que Louis... successively by the Pres. Subj. of all irregular Verbs which have occurred so far.
- B. 1. One must not believe ² everything. ¹ 2. One must work in order to acquire knowledge (partitive plur.) 3. They will have to undertake this journey, whether they like or not. 4. You must not always talk, you must listen! 5. They would have been obliged to go away, if it had rained. 6. We must always speak the truth. 7. They must be very tired after this long journey. 8. Must not this man know the truth?—Of course. 9. One must strike the iron while it is hot. 10. Will it be necessary for us to wait in the waiting-room? 11. They have been obliged (compelled) to stay till midnight. 12. He is a gentleman; she is very ladylike. 13. When one gives alms, the left hand must not know what the right hand is doing!

Apprenez les Verbes valoir, voir, pp. 32-35.

- A. 1. Combien vaut cette étoffe?
- 2. Quel est l'équivalent d'un mètre ?
- 3. A combien reviendrait donc le *yard* de cette étoffe ?
- 4. Combien vaut une livre sterling?
- 5. Pourquoi lui en voulez-vous?
- 6. N'allez-vous pas faire valoir ce champ?
- 7. Ne vaut-il pas mieux se taire
- :8. Quand nous reverrons-nous?
- 9. Avez-vous jamais rien vu de plus beau?

Quatre francs le mètre.

Un mètre équivaut à 39 pouces, mesure anglaise.

A environ trois schellings. qui équivalent à fcs. 3.75.

Une livre sterling vaut vingtcing francs.

Il m'a desservi, mais je le lui revandrai

Non, le jeu ne vaudrait pas la chandelle.

Si, car la langue d'un muet que de parleràtort et à travers? vaut mieux que celle d'un sot.

J'espère que nous nous reverrons bientôt: Au revoir!

Non, je ne me souviens pas d'avoir jamais rien vu de pareil.

The game is not worth the candle.

replying to him (or, to her).

They do not keep company.

Worth nothing. Not worth anything.

To go and see; to call upon someone.

Expressions Idiomatiques.

Il vaut mieux agir que de parler. * It is better to act than to speak.

Le jeu ne vaut pas la chandelle. Il ne vaut pas la peine qu'on lui It is not worth while (the trouble) réponde.

'Cela vaut bien la peine d'y penser. It is well worth considering.

Rien qui vaille.

Aller voir quelqu'un. Ils ne se voient pas.

'C'est ce qu'il faudra voir.

That remains to be seen. Look you! Mind you! Let us see! Vois-tu! Voyez-vous! Voyons!

* que, than, after il vaut mieux takes the Infinitive with de. DRILL: Put the first idiom in all tenses of the Indicative (3d pers. only). In Comp. Tenses mieux is placed between the Auxil. and Part. Past.

B. 1. It is better to wait for a few minutes. 2. It would be better to go by the first train than to wait. 3. It would have been better to go back immediately. 4. Formerly (the) tea was worth more than now. 5. It will not be worth the trouble to 6. Do you think this house is worth fifty pounds? come back. 7. Probably we shall not see him again. -I don't. should just (bien) like to see that. 9. Come, make haste. 10. Have you ever seen such a sight?—It is worth seeing (= this is a thing to see). 11. Those books are worth nothing. 12. It is not just that favour should prevail over merit.

Apprenez les Verbes s'asseoir, déchoir, etc., pp. 34, 35.

- A. 1. Asseyez-vous auprès de moi, vous devez être fatigué.
- 2. Où donc vous êtes vous assises, mesdemoiselles?
- Vous avez tort, il ne faut pas vous asseoir sur le gazon par ce temps humide.
- 4. Il ne vous sied pas de contrarier vos parents!
- 5. Le verbe s'asseoir ne s'emploie-t-il jamais sans le pronom réfléchi?
- 6. Où voulez-vous que nous asseyions ce malade?
- 7. Pourvoirez-vous à ses besoins?

Je m'assiérai volontiers, j'ai couru à perte d'haleine.

Nous nous sommes assises surle gazon.

Eh bien, nous nous assiérons sur ce banc, à l'ombre de ce grand chêne.

Il vous sied bien de vouloir réformer les autres!

Si; par exemple: "Asseyez cet enfant." "Les Romains assirent un camp."

Où vous voudrez; sur le canapé ou sur (dans) le fauteuil.

J'y ai déjà pourvu.

A. in all persons sing. and pl. of Past.

DRILL: Conjugate (1) the 2d sentence in A. in all persons sing. and pl. of Past. Indef.; (2) the 1st sentence in all persons sing. and pl. of Pres. Indic. and Fut. Pres.

B. 1. They sat down by the road-side. 2. [On] the eve of a battle the Romans used to pitch a camp. 3. The king was seated on his throne. 4. The foundations of this edifice are laid on the rock. 5. Where have these children sat down?—They have not sat down yet; they will sit down upon the turf. 6. Sit down on this chair, my dear child, and keep quiet! 7. Let us sit down in the shade of this large elm. 8. Take a seat and make yourself at home! 9. We provided (Pret.) for (=to) his wants. 10. Is this bill of exchange mature?—No, it will be mature on the 30th instant. 11. Do you think that the game is worth the candle?—I don't.

Apprenez les Verbes en -indre, pp. 36, 37.

- A. 1. Qu'avez vous à rire comme ça à gorge déployée ? 2. Eh bien, cela ne veut-il pas
- dire : Is the fire out ?
- 3. Ne craignez-vous pas d'arriver trop tard?
- 4. Craignez-vous qu'il ne vienne trop tard?
- 5. Tu ne craignais pas qu'il vînt, n'est-ce pas ?
- 6. De qui vous plaignez-vous?

qu'il ne vînt pas. Je me plains de mon bottier,

pas assez tôt.

Je ris parce que vous avez

Vous n'v êtes pas : Dites :-

Allez toujours, je vous rejoindrai dans cinq minutes.

Oui, je crains qu'il ne vienne

Au contraire, je craignais

dit : le feu est-il sorti ?

Le feu est-il éteint?

qui fait toujours mes bottes trop justes. Il se plaint de votre manque 7. De quoi se plaint-il donc?

de procédés envers lui. 8. Que voulez - vous que je A coup sûr, vous n'avez rien

à craindre, si votre conscience est tranquille. craiane? 9. Pourquoi Brutus feignit-il Afin que la vengeance du

d'être imbécile? roi ne l'atteignît pas.

10. Le feu est-il éteint ? Oui, le feu étant éteint, je suis sorti.

Construction de craindre :-

(a) with que...ne and the Subjunct., if the Subject of the second Verb is not the same as the Subject of craindre (see Lesson 21, a):-Je crains qu'il ne vienne. I fear he is coming (he will come). Je crains qu'il ne vienne pas. I fear he is not coming.

Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne. I do not fear he will come.

(b) with de and the Infinitive (without ne), if both Verbs have the same Subject (see Lesson 21, a):-Je crains fort de l'irriter. I much fear to irritate him. DRILL: Put the sentences in (a) in all persons of the Imperf.

B. 1. We fear the fire is out. 2. Is Mr. James in !—I am afraid he is out. 3. He was afraid of coming. 4. Shall you join us? 5. We pity these poor orphans, 6. The masters complain of the boys who infringe the rules. 7. How do you render the English proverb, "A burnt child dreads the fire" !-[A] scalded cat fears (the) cold water. 8. The day begins to break. 9. He pretends to be ill. 10. I suppose he is afraid of going to school. 11. That spendthrift will not be able to make both ends meet. 12. By-the-bye, which is the easiest way of making both ends meet? 13. It (= ce) is to light the candle at both ends (= by the two ends). 14. What do you complain of?

Apprenez les Verbes en -uire, écrire, pp. 36, 37.

A. 1. Que traduisez-vous là?

- 2. Je crains que vous ne traduisiez trop littéralement.
- 3. Est-ce qu'il s'est bien con-
- 4. Il se nuira dans l'esprit de ses supérieurs. Oui, il lui en cuira.
- 5. Ne se sert-on pas en français du verbe cuire dans la signification de to bake, to burn?
- 6. Comment se construisent les verbes réfléchis?
- 7. Comment expliquez vous l'emploi de ne après les verbes et les conjonctions qui expriment la crainte?

Nous *traduisons* cette page de Virgile en anglais.

C'est qu'on nous a dit de traduire ainsi.

Il s'est conduit on ne pourrait plus mal.

Oui, on dit, par exemple,

"des pommes cuites," "cuire de la brique (de la chaux)."

Ils se construisent tous * avec le verbe être. * (s sounded.)

C'est un latinisme facile à expliquer: Craindre une chose, c'est espérer qu'elle n'arrive pas.

Expressions Idiomatiques.

Tout ce qui reluit n'est pas or. Cuire du pain. Cuire un œuf. Il (impers.) lui en cuira. Les yeux me cuisent. Comment écrit-on ce mot? Présenter quelqu'un à...

All is not gold that glitters.
To bake bread. To boil an egg.
He (she) will rue it (smart for it).
My eyes smart.
How do you spell this word?
To introduce some one to...

DRILL: Conjugate (1) the answer to the 1st question in A. in all persons of Pres. and Pret.; (2) Il craint que je ne me conduise mal, Il craignait que je ne me conduisisee mal, in all persons, singular and plural; (3) Put Il m'en cuira and les yeux me cuisent, in all persons of their respective tenses.

B. 1. Is there a good translation of Plutarch in French?—Yes, Amyot (has) translated Plutarch in (=of) a superior ² manner. ¹ 2. Have you boiled the eggs, Ann?—No, sir. 3. Why not?—Because the water is not boiling yet. 4. Do you like the meat overdone or underdone? 5. Who destroyed the fortress of Sebastopol?—The allied armies of the French, English, and Italians reduced it to (=en) dust. 6. I thought I was instructing you (Lesson 17, b, 3), but it is you who instruct me. 7. Who wrote Paradise Lost?—Paradise Lost was written by Milton. 8. Are the pears well baked? 9. A star which was shining in the east led their way (march). 10. His faults do him more harm than all his enemies. 11. Have these boys behaved well? 12. No, they have behaved very disorderly; they shall rue it. 13. They are afraid we shall not come.

Apprenez les Verbes traire, vaincre, suivre, pp. 38, 39.

- A. 1. Il vous faut mettre à profit la lecture de cet excellent auteur!
- 2. Qui m'aime, aime mon chien; et qui m'aime me suive!
- 3. Quelle différence y a-t-il entre conquérir, vaincre, et prendre?
- 4. Par conséquent il faut dire : la conquête d'un pays; la victoire sur l'ennemi; et la prise d'une ville!
- 5. Pourquoi refusez vous la porte à tout le monde?
- 6. "Je ne suis pas ce que je suis; car si j'étais ce que je suis, je ne serais pas ce que je suis!"
- C'est un ânier, c'est à dire un homme qui conduit des ânes.

J'en extrais tous les passages qui me frappent le plus.

Allez toujours devant, je vous suis.

On dit: "conquérir un pays;" "vaincre un ennemi;" et "prendre une ville."

Oui, monsieur, et il faut dire: le conquérant de la Perse; le vainqueur des Perses (ou, Persans).

Afin qu'on ne puisse me distraire de mes études.

Devinez et traduisez! — Fort bien! mais encore faudrait-il savoir qui est censé dire cela!

A la bonne heure! J'y suis!

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons of the Present Indicative (1) the Answer to A. 1;
(2) the Present and Preterite of Je ne suis pas ce que je suis, in the sense explained in A. 7.

B. 1. Night follows day. 2. What am I to do?—Extract the square root of 144. 3. Who conquered the Romans at the lake Trasimenus?—I don't know. 4. Who conquered the Cape of Good Hope?—The English conquered it in 1795, and again in 1806. 5. The Italian robbers pursued the English travellers, but they did not overtake them. 6. Have you overcome all difficulties? 7. The Swiss cowherds used to milk their cows twice a (par) day. 8. Let us conquer or die! 9. No, no, for "He that fights and runs away, may live to fight another day." 10. These heedless boys do not follow the thread of your ideas. 11. Have you followed my prescription?—No, for if I had, I should have broken my neck!—What do you mean?—The fact is, dear doctor, I threw it out of the window!

- A. 1. Dites-moi, s'il vous plaît, à qui vous écrivez.
- 2. Pourquoi redites-vous toujours la même chose?
- 3. Que voulez-vous que nous disions?
- 4. Que veut dire l'expression tit for tat?
- 5. Si vous écrivez à mademoiselle votre sœur, dites-lui bien des choses de ma part.
- 6. Lui avez-vous dit son fait?
- 7. Ont-ils ri de ce bon mot?
- 8. Pourriez-vous m'expliquer ce que veut dire : Rire du bout des dents ?

Dire son fait à quelqu'un.

Vous avez beau dire.

Il va sans dire que...

Se le tenir pour dit.

Se rire de quelqu'un.

Il n'y a pas de quoi rire.

Eclater de rire ; rire aux éclats.

Rira bien qui rira le dernier.

Pour ainsi dire.

Trouver à redire (à dire) à... Avoir beau:

pas; cela va sans dire.

i'aurai fini ma lettre.

Nous voulons que vous disiez

Je vous le dirai, quand

Afin que vous ne l'oubliiez

la vérité. Elle veut dire: à bon chat bon

rat; ou: à beau jeu, beau retour. Je n'y manquerai pas.

[dra pour dit. Oui, j'espère qu'il se le tien-Oui, ils en ont ri aux larmes,

Rire sans en avoir envie: ou, rire à contre-cœur.

Dire, rire (pp. 38, 39): Expressions Idiomatiques. Que dit-on ?-On dit que...

What do they say ?- It is said that ... To tell a person his own.

Vouloir dire: Que voulez-vous dire? To mean: What do you mean? To find fault with ...

To be in vain; to be all very well;-It is in vain for you to talk.

Dis donc! Dites donc! (familiar). I say!

It is a matter of course that ...

So to say; as it were.

Dire des injures (des sottises) à qqn. To insult (abuse) some one. [twice). To take the hint (not to require telling

Dites-lui bien des choses de ma part! Remember me to him.

It is no matter for laughing.

To burst out laughing.

Let him laugh who wins. To make fun (light) of some one.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) the Pres. and Impf. Ind. of—I say what (=ce que) I know; (2) I must say what I know; (3) I make light of his threats.

B. 1. What do you say?—I say that it (= cela) is a matter of course. 2. Do not always repeat the same thing. 3. You must not repeat it. 4. Do not contradict your parents. say, Harry, don't speak ill of him. 6. It is said that he has written a poem. 7. She does not know what to (= que) say. What do you mean? 9. What does this proverb mean? 10. It is in vain for him to say that he is ill, I don't believe it 11. Remember me to them. 12. What would (= will) he have me say? 13. Have you said it for fun (pour rire)?—Of course! A. 1. Pourquoi ne faites-vous pas attention?

146

2. Ne vaut-il pas mieux faire envie que pitié? — Cela va sans dire.

3. Ferez-vous un tour de jardin avec nous?

4. Fallait-il que je le fisse ou non?

- 5. Voulez-vous que je leur fasse une visite?
- 6. Ne faites pas tant de façons, je vous en prie.

7. Pourquoi le chat fit-il le mort ?

Faites-moi le plaisir de faire attention vous-même.

Je me ferai un grand plaisir

de vous accompagner.

Non, il ne fallait pas le faire. Oui, cela leur fera plaisir de vous revoir.

Je fais à ma guise, ne vous souris.

Pour faire main basse sur les

(a) Faire (pp. 38, 39), used with a Noun-Object:—

Les abeilles s'occupent à faire du The bees are busy making honey. Il faut faire son devoir.

Je vais faire une promenade. Faire un tour de jardin.

Ils vont faire des démarches. Cela doit lui faire plaisir.

Cela a dû lui faire de la peine. Veux-tu faire une partie de whist? Il vous faut faire attention.

Elle compte vous faire une visite. She intends to pay you a visit.

Pourquoi faire des façons? Faire sa prière.

Faire main basse sur... Faire une question.

Faire voile pour ... Se faire soldat (matelot, etc.)

[miel. One must do one's duty.

I am about to go for a walk. To walk round the garden. They are going to take steps. That must give him pleasure.

That must have given him pain. Will you have a game at whist? You must pay attention.

Il ne vous faut pas faire le malade. You must not sham (feign) illness. Il vaut mieux faire envie que pitié! It is better to excite envy than pity. Why stand on ceremonies?

To say one's prayers. To lay violent hands on.

To ask a question. To set sail for ...

To become a soldier (sailor, etc.)

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) Je fais mon devoir; (2) Il faut que je fasse une visite; (3) Je le ferais, si j'avais le temps.

B. 1. Let us take a walk in the garden. 2. Do you know who made this discovery ?-I don't. 3. To-morrow we shall set sail for America. 4. Would you not do better to stay at home? 5. Now pay attention, I am going to show you how vou must do this, 6. Have you paid him a visit ?-No, but if you wish me to pay him a visit, I will call on him this afternoon. 7. I assure you that [cela] will give him much pleasure. 8. Is it true that your brother has become [a] sailor ?—Yes, it grieves me much. 9. That news must have given you much pain, 10. He plays truant. 11. When shall you take any steps on his behalf? 12. Five times fifteen are seventy-five.

- A. 1. Avez-vous fait venir le tailleur?
- 2. Faut-il le faire entrer dans la salle à manger?
- 3. Faites-vous grand cas de son amitié?
- 4. Vous a-t-on fait bon accueil?
- 5. Lui a-t-on fait tort?
- 6. Leur avez-vous fait part de la bonne nouvelle?
- 7. Vous êtes-vous fait mal en tombant?

Oui, le voici qui vient; faitesle entrer.

Non, faites-le monter dans mon appartement.

Il va sans dire que j'en fais grand cas.

Oui, on nous a fait voir toutes les curiosités.

Non, au contraire, on a fait des démarches en sa faveur.

Non, mais nous la leur ferons tenir cet après-midi.

Oui, je me suis donné une entorse au pied.

(b) Faire, with a Noun or Infinitive, used to form Verbal Phrases:-

faire part à...de... to acquaint...with faire bon accueil (à), to welcome. faire cas de. to value. faire semblant de $\begin{cases} to feign, \\ to do as if. \end{cases}$ faire feu sur... to fire at ... to beckon. faire mal (à), to hurt. faire signe (à), faire peur (à), to frighten. faire tort (à), to wrong. to gladden. faire plaisir (à), faire sa toilette, to dress.

faire aller. to set in motion. faire paraître, to evince, to show. faire bouillir (p. 27) to boil (trans.) faire tenir, to transmit, to hand, to send word, faire valoir, faire dire. to make the most of. to show in. faire entrer. faire venir. to send for. to show upstairs.faire voir, to show. faire monter. faire mourir, to put to death, faire savoir. to let know. faire naître. to give rise to. faire faire, to cause, etc. (see Ex. 52).

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) Je ferai venir mon médecin; (2) Il faudrait que je fisse voir mon passeport; (3) Il fallut que je le fisse entrer.

B. 1. You hurt me. 2. Show them upstairs. 3. Have you sent for the dentist? 4. We have acquainted him with the circumstances. 5. Let me know when you are ready. 6. Show me your pictures. 7. What are they doing? 8. These men do me wrong. 9. The English soldiers fired at the enemies. 10. Let us go for a walk. 11. The quarrel between the Corsican chiefs gave rise to an irreconcilable hatred between the two families. 12. Don't frighten that poor child! 13. What are you doing, John?—Nothing. 14. And what are you doing, James?—Helping (= I help) John. 15. Make the most of your talent!

148 CINQUANTE-DEUXIÈME LEÇON-FAIRE (SUITE)

- A. 1. Où faites-vous faire vos habits?
- 2. Je voudrais me faire faire une paire de bottes.
- 3. Chez quel relieur avez-vous fait relier ces volumes inquarto (u pronounced)?
- 4. Pourquoi avez-vous fait venir le tailleur?
- 5. Où vous êtes-vous fait couper les cheveux ?

- Je les fais faire à Paris; autrefois je les faisais venir de Londres.
 - Eh bien! faites venir le maître bottier.

Je les *ai fait relier* chez Rivière ; je *fais relier* tous mes livres en maroquin,

Pour me faire prendre la mesure.

Chez le coiffeur au coin de la rue.

- (c) Faire, to order, to cause, to have, to get, etc., with an Infinitive-Complement:—
 - (1) corresponding to English Active Infinitive:

Je le fais travailler. Vous me faites rire. Il le fit sortir. I make him work. You make me laugh. He ordered (caused) him to

He ordered (caused) him to go out.

(2) corresponding to the English Partic. Perf., or Passive Infinit.:—
Je fais raccommoder mes souliers. I get (have) my shoes mended.

Il a fait relier ses livres. Ils ont fait repasser leur linge,

He has had his books bound. They have had their linen ironed.

Se faire payer (punir, etc.) Se faire comprendre. Il s'est laissé tromper.

To get one's self paid (punished).
To make one's self understood.
He has allowed himself to be deceived.

Caution.—In French the *Infinitive* after faire, laisser, is never used in the *Passive* as in English. Compare the examples above (2).

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) Je me fais faire un habit; (2) Je me suis fait punir; (3) Il importe que je me fasse inscrire.

B. 1. I shall make you do it. 2. I shall get my watch mended. 3. Who has ordered you to come here?—It is the master who has ordered me to come here. 4. Can you make yourself understood in Paris?—Yes, I have thoroughly mastered Macmillan's French Course. 5. And can you manage to express yourself correctly?—Yes, I always use the active Infinitive after faire. 6. Where do you get your linen washed? 7. I get it washed at home. 8. Get these letters posted. 9. I have had my hair cut. 10. You will get yourself punished, if you do not work more assiduously, you lazybones!

- A. 1. Vous ne faites que vous amuser!
- 2. Comment se fait-il que vous soyez si triste ?
- 3. Cela fait-il votre affaire?
- 4. S'est-il fait à ce genre de vie?
- 5. Fait-il cher vivre à Londres ?
- 6. Ne ferait-il pas mieux de se taire?

Eh bien! qu'est-ce que cela vous fait?

J'ai fait de grandes pertes à la Bourse.

Oui, cela m'arrange.

Je crois qu'il finira par s'y faire.

Pas plus cher qu'à Paris. Qu'il en fasse à sa tête! Cela

(d) Faire: Expressions Idiomatiques.

le regarde.

{ Ne faire que chanter. Ne faire que de sortir. Comment se fait-il que... Se faire à une chose. N'avoir que faire d'une chose. Faire l'affaire:—

Cela ne fait pas mon affaire.
Vous feriez mieux de rester ici.
Faire bien ses affaires.
En faire à sa tête.
Cela ne fait rien.
Qu'est-ce que cela me [Dat.] fait?
Il fait* cher vivre ici.

That won't do for
You had better stay
To get on well.
To have one's way.
That does not matter
What is that to me?
It is expensive to live.

To do nothing but sing.
To have but just gone out.
How is it that...?
To get accustomed to a thing.
To have no occasion for a thing.
To suit; to meet the want:—
That won't do for me.
You had better stay here.
To get on well.
To have one's way.
That does not matter (signify).
What is that to me?
It is expensive to live here.

* For il fait, used in matters concerning temperature, see Impers. Verbs, p. 22.

DRILL: Conjugate in all tenses (1) Je ne fais que m'amuser; (2) Je ne faisais que de m'embarquer; (3) Croyez-vous que je m'y fasse?

B. 1. I shall never get accustomed to that style of living.

2. We have no occasion for your old books. 3. How is it that you get up so late? 4. What is that to him? 5. I have but just heard that he has become a sailor. 6. That won't do for them. 7. He could not make himself understood. 8. Let me know what they are doing. 9. They had better not go there. 10. Why have you suffered yourself to be cheated? 11. You must have your linen ironed. 12. I will send for the laundress this evening. 13. There are people who do nothing but eat, drink, and sleep! 14. That would not do for you, would it? 15. Is it not very expensive to live in hotels? 16. Have your way. 17. Let us have a game at chess!

Apprenez le Verbe mettre, pp. 38, 39.

- A. 1. Lui avez-vous remis ma lettre?
- 2. Il vous faut mettre à profit la lecture de cet excellent auteur.
- 3. Quand vous mettrez vous enfin à faire vos devoirs, fainéant que vous êtes?
- 4. Mets ton chapeau et suismoi!
- 5. Monsieur, le dîner est servi!
- 6. Qu'est-ce qu'il s'est mis en
- 7. Combien de temps avez-vous mis à venir ici?

Je lui ai remis votre lettre ce matin à huit heures.

J'en extrais tous les passages qui me frappent le plus.

Ne vous mettez pas en colère, je m'y mettrai dès que j'aurai donné à manger à mes lapins.

Je te suivrai, si bon me semble.

Eh bien, mettons-nous à table. Il s'est mis en tête de me suivre.

J'ai mis un jour entier à venir ici.

mettre le feu à, to set fire to. [spirits. mettre en train, to set on, to put in

mettre par écrit, to write down.

To put on. To dress.

To begin to, to set to ...

To sit down to table.

To take it into one's head.

To set about it.

To get angru.

To go to bed.

Expressions Idiomatiques.

mettre à profit, to turn to account. mettre à la voile, to set sail. mettre au jour, to bring forth.

Mettre. Se mettre.

Se mettre à...

S'v mettre.

Se mettre en colère (= se fâcher).

Se mettre au lit (=se coucher).

Se mettre à table.

Se mettre en tête.

Mettre de l'eau dans son vin [fig.] To lower one's tone.

Mettre du temps à faire quelque To be a long time doing a thing.

Le temps se met au beau (à la The weather is becoming fair (rainy). pluie).

DRILL: Put in all persons (1) Je me mets à mon ouvrage; (2) Je me mis en tête; (3) Avant que je me mette en train,

B. 1. Now let us begin to work. 2. He got angry. 3. I wish you to turn your time to account. 4. Have you put on your new coat ?-Yes, I put it on last Sunday. 5. They have promised to write it down. 6. The enemies set fire to the cottages. 7. Our opponents lowered their tone. 8. You ought to have had your boots cleaned. 9. She dresses very well. 10. They set sail for Egypt. 11. Charles XII., king of Sweden, had taken it into his head to conquer Russia. 12. They sat down to table.

Apprenez les Verbes prendre et battre, pp. 38, 39.

- A. 1. Apprenez-vous à dessiner ?
- 2. Vous a-t-on pris votre
- Cet homme voudrait m'emprunter mille francs; qu'en dites-vous?
- 4. Prendrez-vous fait et cause pour nous?
- 5. Quand passerez-vous chez
- 6. Se peut-il que vous preniez plaisir à tourmenter ce pauvre petit chien ?
- 7. Allez à la fourmi, paresseux que vous êtes!—Moi?
- 8. Prenez garde à vous!

Oui, il y a dix-huit mois que je prends des leçons de dessin.

Non, mais on m'a pris mon porte-monnaie,

Prenez garde de vous y fier; un beau matin il prendra la clef des champs.

Mal nous en prendrait de prendre votre parti, quand vous avez tort.

J'irai le prendre à midi et demi.

Apprenez à vous mêler de vos affaires, s'il vous plaît!

Oui, vous! Considérez sa conduite, et apprenez à devenir sage! Je me tiendrai sur mes gardes.

Expressions Idiomatiques.

Prendre la parole.

Prendre son parti (de).

Prendre garde à.

Prendre garde de (with Infinit.)
Prenez garde de tomber.

N'avoir garde de (with Infinit.)

Prendre l'occasion aux cheveux. S'y prendre:—

Il s'y prend bien (mal).

S'en prendre à...:-

Je m'en prendrai à vous. Bien (mal) lui (en) prendra de...

Il lui en prendra mal de...

Obs.—Apprendre means both to learn and to teach:—

Il apprend à dessiner.

He learns
Je lui apprendral à vivre

I will tea

To begin to speak.
To make up one's mind.
To take care; to mind.

To take care (to mind) not to:—
Mind you don't fall.

To take good care not to...; to be very far from...

To take time by the forelock.

To set about it .-

He sets about it in the right (wrong) way.

To lay the blame on ... :-

I shall make you responsible for it. It will be lucky (unlucky) for him...

Ill will betide him to ...

He learns drawing.

I will teach him manners.

Caution.—Verbs which express taking, borrowing, asking from, etc., govern the same case as Verbs of giving, i.e. the name of the thing given or taken becomes the Direct Object, and the name of the Person to whom it is given, or from whom it is taken, becomes the Indirect Object:-

On lui prit (vola) son argent.

They took his money from-him.

On leur ôta la vie.

Their life was taken from-them.

On lui a demandé une question.

They asked him a question.

Il emprunta cent francs à son ami. He borrowed a hundred francs of his friend.

Mon chien m'échappa.

My dog escaped from-me.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) Je m'en prends à elle; (2) Je pris mon parti; (3) Je me suis pris à rire; (4) Croit-elle que je prenne garde?

B. 1. Do they learn German?—They have already learned it. 2. He wanted to borrow my knife, but I took good care not to lend it to him, 3. They will lay the blame on us. 4. Do you understand what (=ce que) he means? 5. When did the English take the fortress of Badajoz?—I don't remember exactly what year. 6. You will have to take the steamboat at Calais. 7. Mind you don't offend him, 8. He does not set about it properly. 9. Have they made up their mind to learn the poem by heart? 10. The enemy surprised us in the midst of the night. 11. These boys do nothing but fight. our soldiers fought well ?-Yes, they fought like lions, Verses (p. 45, a) are more easily learned (= reflex. verb) than prose.

C. 1. Prince Eugene of Savoy said of the French generals: "If Villeroi is sent against me, I shall beat him; if it is Catinat, I shall be beaten; if it is Vendôme, we shall see." 2. We shall take our measures, so that we shall not be surprised. 3. I take the liberty to tell you that you have taken a resolution of which you will repent. 4. Agesilas was asked what he would wish one should teach children ?-I wish, said he, one would teach them what they will have to do when they are (= being) men.

Apprenez les Verbes en -aître, -oître, pp. 40, 41.

- A. 1. Connais-tu ce monsieur ?
- 2. Votre ami connaît-il beaucoup de monde ici ?
- 3. Ne me reconnaissez-vous pas ?
- 4. Quand est-ce que les jours commencent à croître?
- 5. Savez-vous si ce maquignon se connaît en chevaux?
- 6. La maxime Connais toi toimême n'est-elle pas une des plus belles de la philosophie ancienne?
- 7. Connais-tu cette sonate de Mozart?
- 8. Comment Robinson Crusoë connut-il que son île était habitée ?

Je le connais de vue, mais je ne sais pas son nom.

Je ne saurais vous le dire.

Mais oui, il me semble vous Ils croissent au printemps, et décroissent en automne.

Je ne le sais que trop bien.

Oui, car ceux qui se connaissent savent ce qui leur est utile.

Oui, je la *connais*, mais je ne sais pas la jouer.

En voyant des pas d'hommes sur le sable du rivage.

Expressions Idiomatiques.

Se connaître en...(s'y connaître).

Faire connaître.

Connaître à fond.—Connu! To know thoroughly.—That is an old dodge!

A ce qu'il me paraît.

Mauvaise herbe croît toujours.

To be a good judge of...

To make known, to introduce.

From what I can see.

Ill weeds grow apace.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) Je me connais en chevaux; (2) Je suis né en France: (3) Je connus mon ami à sa démarche.

B. 1. Do you know Gray's Elegy?—I know it well. 2. Do you know it by heart?—Not quite, although I have read it several times. 3. Do you know this naughty boy?—We only know him by name. 4. Do you know whether his father is at home?—He is not at home. 5. He is born [a] Frenchman. 6. Did you recognise him?—I should recognise him out of a (=among) thousand. 7. The Danube takes its rise in the Black Forest and empties itself into the Black Sea. 8. In autumn the days decrease in proportion as the nights increase. 9. When was he born?—He was born (Preterite active) on the 27th of October 1831. 10. Your brother seems [to be] in very good humour.—Yes, he has a son (a son is born to him). 11. The cows are grazing in the meadows. 12. Can you box?—No, in France we hardly know that fine sport.

Apprenez le Verbe croire, pp. 40, 41.

- A. 1. Croyez-vous cette vieille dame?
- 2. Vous en a-t-elle fait accroire?
- 3. Croyez-vous pouvoir venir aujourd'hui?
- 4. Lui croyez-vous des talents?
- 5. Qui aurait jamais cru cela?
- 6. Pourquoi confondez vous toujours crû avec cru?

Autrefois je *croyais* tout ce qu'elle racontait,

Oui, elle voudrait me faire croire aux revenants.

Non, je *crois devoir* vous avertir de ne pas m'attendre.

Oui, je crois qu'il en a.

Pas moi; les bras m'en tombent!

Paræ qu'il n'y a que la différence d'un accent circonflexe.

Emplois du Verbe croire :-

Croire quelque chose (quelqu'un). Croire à quelque chose.

Croire à quelqu'un (Croire en Dieu). ∫ Je crois que oui (que si). ∫ Je crois que non. To believe something (some one).

To believe (to put one's trust) in something.

To believe in the existence (skill, etc.) of some one.

I think so.

I think so.
I do not think so (I think not).

Croire suivi de l'Infinitif:-

Je crois devoir vous informer.

I think I ought (I think it my duty) to inform you.

Je croyais vous avoir averti.

I thought I had warned you.

Constructions Elliptiques:-

Je le crois honnête homme. Je lui crois des moyens. (Possess. Dative.) I believe him to be an honest man.

{ I believe him to have } talents.

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) Je crois l'avoir vu; (2) Je le crus sur parole;
(3) Faut-il que je le croie.

B. 1. Do you, then, believe this story?—As for me, I don't believe it. 2. I have believed him once, but I shall not believe him again. 3. Did you ever believe in ghosts?—When I was a child, our nurse used to tell us ghost stories. 4. But do not fancy that I believed in ghosts. 5. He thought he could sing. 6. We thought we were doing well. 7. Do you think he will come?—We think (it) not. 8. I thought I had told you so. 9. We believe them to be capable of anything. 10. They believe us to have great wealth (plur.) 11. We (p. 75, b, 1) enlightened people of the 19th century do not believe in sorcerers.

Parce que nous avons déjà

Nous relisons les aventures

de Robinson Crusoë.

Apprenez les Verbes plaire, taire, lire, boire, conclure, pp. 40,41.

A. 1. Vous plairait-il de m'accompagner? Je le veux bien.

2. Mlle. votre cousine se plaît-Non, elle ne s'y plaît pas, il elle à Naples? v fait trop chaud.

trop bu.

3. Pourquoi donc ne buvezvous pas?

4. Vous êtes toujours à lire : que lisez-vous là ?

Parce qu'il n'avait pas envie 5. Pourquoi ne s'est-il pas tû? de se taire ; il a la langue bien pendue,

Taisez - vous le premier, si 6. Taisez-vous donc, je ne sais pas ce que je lis. vous voulez qu'on se taise.

7. Quand j'ai de l'eau, je ne bois que du vin ; Je bois de l'eau, quand l'eau manque au moulin!

Expressions Idiomatiques.

Cela lui plaît à dire. He (she) is pleased to say so. A Dieu ne plaise! Plût à Dieu! God forbid! Would to God! Vous plaisez-vous dans ce pays ?--Do you like this country?-Oui, je m'y plais beaucoup. I like it very much. Faites ce qui (bon) vous plaira. Do what you like. (Ex. 10.) What did you say? What is it, please? Do be silent, if you please! Taisez-vous donc, s'il vous plaît! Comme bon vous semblera. (Ex. 10.) As you please. Je suis content (bien aise) que... I am pleased * that ...

* Caution.—As a rule, only transitive Verbs which take a Direct Object can be used in the Passive Voice in French; see Ex. 25; now plaire takes a, i.e. it takes an Indir. Obj., and hence we cannot say, as in English-I am pleased; say-Je suis bien aise, etc.; nor, He is believed to be...; say—On croit qu'il est...; or, On le croit...

DRILL: Conjugate in all persons (1) Je me plais ici; (2) Je me suis plu å la campagne; (3) Je me tais; (4) Je ne me suis pas tû; (5) Je lis (lus) pour m'amuser; (6) Je bois pour me rafraîchir.

B. 1. These books do not please me. 2. How do you like the country ?- I like it very well. 3. We should be pleased to see you. 4. What do you infer from his speech? 5. What is he reading?—He is reading the works of Shakspeare. 6. When shall you read these French newspapers ?—I should have read them already, if you had been silent. 7. What do they (=on) drink in (p. 188, 1, b) Germany?—They drink beer and wine (there). 8. As for us, we drink water. 9. Be silent! 10. I won't be silent; I will do as I please. 11. A young man like you ought to be silent. 12. They are believed to be rich.

Apprenez le Verbe vivre, et ceux en -oudre, pp. 42, 43.

- A. 1. Pour qui cousez-vous ces chemises?
- 2. Combien en avez-vous déjà cousues?
- 3. Qu'allez-vous résoudre, messieurs?
- 4. Le prévenu a-t-il été absous?
- 5. Peut-on dissoudre le sel dans l'eau?
- 6. A-t-il de quoi vivre?
- 7. Ne faut-il pas bien vivre pour bien mourir?
- 8. Pourquoi fait-il la mine?

Nous les cousons pour les pauvres.

Vingt-quatre; hier nous en cousîmes douze.

Nous nous résoudrions, si nous le pouvions.

Non, mais sa complice a été absoute à l'unanimité.

Oui, l'eau est le dissolvant des sels.

Oui, il vit de ses rentes.

Oui, car on meurt d'ordinaire comme on a vécu.

Parce qu'on lui a coupé les vivres.

Expressions Idiomatiques.

Ne savoir que résoudre. Vivre au jour la journée. Qui vive ? Vive le roi ! Etre sur le qui-vive. Not to be able to make up one's mind. To live from hand to mouth. Who goes there? Long live the king! To be on the alert.

Savoir vivre; or, Avoir du savoir-vivre. To be well bred. On ne sait qui meurt, ni qui vit. Life is uncertain.

Examples illustrating the difference between vivre and demeurer:— Vivre quatre-vingts ans. Il vécut heureux. Il vit bien. Ces oiseaux vivent de grains, etc. Les poissons vivent dans l'eau.

Demeurer (or, vivre) à la campagne, à la ville, à la cour. Où demeurez-vous?—Je demeure dans telle rue. Il a demeuré trois ans à Madrid.

B. 1. He cannot make up his mind. 2. They lived from hand to mouth. 3. Is it not expensive to live in Paris? 4. I have made up my mind to go [and] live in France. 5. How do you grind your coffee?—We grind it in a coffee-mill. 6. Does sugar dissolve itself in water?—Yes, else we could not sweeten our tea and (our) coffee. 7. I don't think the criminals have been acquitted. 8. Did he live happy? 9. Long live the Queen! 10. In what century did Columbus live?—In the fifteenth century; he discovered America in 1492. 11. What difference is there between vivre and demeurer?—Vivre means to live in the sense of to exist, to subsist, to be alive, to spend one's life; whilst demeurer means to live in the sense of to dwell, to inhabit, to reside.

Apprenez les Verbes Défectifs, pp. 42, 43.

B. 1. Do you like (the) fried fish?—Yes, I do. 2. Then I shall order the cook to fry these haddocks. 3. The water is gushing from the rock. 4. This door does not close well. 5. These beautiful roses and tulips will soon blossom. 6. The waves of the sea were roaring. 7. What [a] noisy demonstration! 8. It begins to dawn. 9. We found him lying in the straw. 10. We are resolved to conquer or to die!

Soixante-et-unième Leçon. Shall, will; should, would. Caution.—Bear in mind—

- (1) the peculiarities of English Conjugation:—
 I shall-go, you will-go, he will-go.
 I should-go, you would-go, etc.
 J'irais, tu irais, etc.
 - (2) the difference between-
- (a) a mere Wish (or, Willingness) and Determination:—
 I shall-go. I will (want to) go.
 I should-like to go there.
 Je voudrais bien y aller.
- (b) should, would, in a Principal Clause, expressing Contingency, and should in a Dependent Clause, as the sign of the Subjunctive:—

Conditionnel.

We should-go, if we had time.

You would-go, if you had time.

Nous irions, si n. avions le temps.

Vous iriez, si v. aviez le temps.

Subjonctif.

- It is necessary { we should-go there. Il faut { nous y allions. that { you should-go there. que } vous y alliez, etc.
- (c) should, as used in (b), and should in the sense of ought to:— You should-go (ought-to-go) at once. Yous devriez y aller tout de suite. You should-have gone (ought-to-have Yous auriez dû y aller de ce pasgons) at once.

Obs.-Will you have wine or beer? Voulez-vous du vin, ou de la bière?

B. 1. I shall see him to-morrow. 2. I want to see that. 3. We should like to see that. 4. I should see it, if it were not so dark. 5. You should see it now. 6. It is strange that you should not see it. 7. I am to see him to-morrow. 8. Will you have apples or pears?—I will have apples, if you please. 9. You would see better, if you used spectacles. 10. You will soon see what he wants. 11. Will it be necessary for me to go away?

Récapitulation.

- I. 1. Go away! 2. I shall not go away. 3. We should send you a letter, if it were necessary. 4. Brutus! art thou asleep? 5. Do not bring the water before it boils. 6. My nieces have gone out. 7. They have repented of it. 8. They ran home. 9. Is the duchess dead?—No, but she is dying. 10. Have your aunts come at last?—They will come to-morrow. 11. Their ill-gotten property will soon be squandered. 12. We shall gather the cherries this evening. 13. You must keep what you have promised. 14. That smells very nice (good). 15. Help yourself to some cherries. 16. Help yourself, and Heaven will help you. 17. The Egyptian soldiers ran away. 18. By whom was America discovered? 19. By whom was Mexico conquered? 20. And by whom were the Carthaginians conquered? 21. Why are all the windows open? 22. I open them every morning.
- II. 1. We are to stay at home. 2. Ought he to have done it? 3. How much do you owe him?—I owe nothing. 4. You must be tired! 5. You must have been very angry! 6. Can it be that he does not know the good news? 7. Knowing myself, I know that I am not perfect. 8. Know ye that I will not consent to it. 9. Can you tell me what I am to do? 10. What do you want?—I want some potatoes. 11. The pupils must pay attention. 12. It would be better to be silent. 13. I don't want you to come. 14. Sit down! 15. He had just sat down to dinner, when the thunderstorm broke out. 16. I shall never see them again.
- III. 1. Did they not behave very badly? 2. The Romans destroyed Carthage. 3. Show me the letters that you have written. 4. I wrote yesterday to my partner. 5. What do you want me to write? 6. Do you like the meat overdone or underdone? 7. What do you say?—I say what I know. 8. They are believed to be very extravagant. 9. It is in vain for you to repeat that. 10. We have but just returned from the country. 11. They set great value on your friendship. 12. Is your sister

dressing? 13. To-morrow it will be very fine. 14. Is it daylight?—No, it is still dark. 15. I have had a new coat made.

16. He will get himself punished. 17. How do you like the
sea-side? 18. We did not believe that he was ill. 19. I fear
it is too late. 20. What do you complain of? 21. He was (is)
born on the 31st of December. 22. What are you doing?—
We are doing our duty. 23. They learn nothing. 24. The
measures you have taken are useless. 25. The old man has
lived a hundred years.

Soixante-troisième Leçon: Sommaire des Irrégularités de la Conjugaison Française.

DRILL: Give-

- (1) the Present Partie. of—choisir; partir, répartir, servir, asservir, vêtir, fuir, ouvrir, gésir, fleurir; concevoir, devoir, savoir, échoir, voir, s'asseoir, seoir; craindre, instruire, luire, écrire, traire, vaincre, suffire, dire, maudire, faire, prendre, paraître, paître, croître, naître, croîre; plaire, taire, lire, conclure, boire, absoudre, résoudre, moudre, coudre.
- (2) the Present Indicative (and of those marked * the Present Subjunctive) of—s'en aller, * s'endormir, se repentir, bouillir, faillir, cueillir, tressaillir, couvrir, souffrir, acquérir, * tenir, * mourir, * courir, apercevoir, devoir, * savoir, * mouvoir, pouvoir, * vouloir, * talloir, * s'asseoir, * peindre, * traduire, luire, écrire, * extraire, suivre, vivre, rire, * dire, faire, * mettre, prendre, * connaître, naître, * boire, résoudre; * appeler, céder, appuyer, acheter, se promener, partager, percer, prier, haîr.
- (3) the Preterite (1st person sing. and plural) and the Participle Perfect of—acquérir, venir, mourir, courir; devoir, savoir, mouvoir, pleuvoir, pouvoir, voir, s'asseoir; se plaindre, déduire, nuire, cuire, écrire, rire, dire, faire, mettre, prendre, connaître, croître, croire, naître, se plaire, se taire, lire, boire, résoudre, coudre, vivre.
- (4) the Future of—aller, envoyer; cueillir, acquérir, tenir, mourir, courir; avoir, devoir, savoir, mouvoir, pleuvoir, pouvoir, vouloir, valoir, falloir, déchoir, voir, s'asseoir, seoir; faire, être.
- (5) the *Present Perfect* (Past Indefinite) of—s'en aller; partir, sortir, courir, se repentir, venir, mourir, acquérir; devoir, savoir, pouvoir, voir, s'asseoir; se taire, naître, se plaindre, prendre, mettre, rire, suivre, croître, coudre, vivre, résoudre, plaire, lire, boire.
 - (6) the Conditional Perf. of-s'en aller; devoir, pouvoir.
- (7) the Imperative (2d pers. sing. and plur.) of—s'en aller (negatively); s'asseoir; savoir; vouloir; dire, prédire; faire-

I.—Le Substantif déterminé par l'Article défini, pp. 44, 45.

- A. 1. Quels sont les principaux métaux?
 - et le zinc.
- 2. Le latin est-il difficile?
- 3. Quel est le symbole de la sagesse?
- 4. Que préférez-vous, le café ou le thé ?
- 5. L'Italie n'est-elle pas un beau pays?
- 6. Le général Wolseley a-t-il vaincu le pacha Arabi?

L'or, l'argent, le mercure, le cuivre, le fer, le plomb, l'étain et le zinc.

Oui, mais il n'est pas si difficile que le grec.

C'est le sel, et le lys (s sounded) est le symbole de l'innocence.

Ni l'un ni l'autre, je préfère le chocolat.

Sans doute ; néanmoins je voudrais plutôt rester en Angleterre.

Oui, il l'a battu à plate couture.

Obs.—Notice (1) French Def. Art., = English Indef. Article:— Dix francs la livre (weight, measure). Ten francs a pound.

- (2) French par, = Engl. Indef. Article:— Deux fois par jour. Un franc par tête. Twice α day. One franc each.
- (3) Fr. Def. Art.+Noun+Predic. Adj.,=Engl. Attribut. Adj.+Noun:—
 Il a les yeux bleus, les cheveux blonds. He has blue eyes, fair hair (lit. He has the eyes blue).
- B. 1. Man is mortal. 2. Men are mortal. 3. Beer is cheaper than wine. 4. What mountains divide France from Spain?—The Pyrenees. 5. Is it expensive to live in England?—Yes, it is dearer than in Germany. 6. Has Dr. Raymond come back from Italy?—Yes, and in a week he will set out again for France. 7. Is not tea dearer than coffee?—Yes, it is sold from three to five shillings a pound. 8. Has Captain Rouget travelled in Japan and in China?—Yes, he also visited the Brazils and Mexico. 9. Tea is ready. 10. Lombardy is the garden of Italy. 11. Adversity is the touchstone of friendship. 12. Truth inspires confidence. 13. The spendthrift breakfasts with Plenty, he dines with Poverty, and sups with Distress.



Pluriel des Substantifs et des Adjectifs, pp. 48-51.

- A. 1. Avez-vous lu les détails de cette malheureuse expédition au Soudan?
- 2. N'admirez-vous pas ces beaux tableaux du Corrège?
- 3. Vos aïeuls ne sont-ils pas originaires de la Grèce?
- 4. Avez-vous mal aux yeux?
- 5. Votre frère cadet n'a-t-il pas une collection de *timbres*poste de tous les pays?
- 6. Où trouve-t-on ces minéraux précieux?

- Oui, je les ai lus dans les journaux du soir; j'en ai le cœur navré.
- Oui, ce sont de vrais chefs-d'œuvre.
- Si; ils comptent des héros parmi leurs aïeux.
- Non, mais j'ai froid aux mains.
- Oui, il en a des *Pays-Bas*, des *Etats-Unis*, du Mexique et même de la Nouvelle Zélande.
- On tire tous ces métaux des entrailles de la terre.
- DRILL: Give the Plural of (1) mon cher ami; leur beau cristal; votre ancien château; le moindre détail; ce jeune Anglais; son œil bleu; le corail rouge; du fromage de Hollande; de l'eau douce; son bijou précieux; le travail assidu.
- (2) un * nouveau timbre-poste; le bel arc-en-ciel; votre beau-frère; un * vrai chef-d'œuvre; le gentilhomme anglais; son bijou; le vice-roi de l'Inde; l'avant-coureur de la saison; le chef-lieu du canton; le ver-à-soie infatigable; ton vieux porte-manteau.
 - * The plural of un to be rendered by the Partitive Article.
- B. 1. Silkworms are very interesting insects. 2. Pumice stones are very porous. 3. The omnibuses start every quarter of an hour. 4. What ails your little friend?—He has a pain in his knees. 5. The cattle are grazing in the green pastures of the Alps. 6. In what countries are humming birds found?—I think most of them are to be found (=find themselves) in South America. 7. And where do corals come from?—They come from the bottom of the sea. 8. The Bourbons were as unfortunate as the Stuarts. 9. The servant has broken three teacups and two wineglasses. 10. I had (=took) two cups of tea. 11. Pebbles are more useful than jewels. 12. Postscripts very often contain the gist of a letter. 13. In the kingdom of the blind, the one-eyed are kings. 14. We could see two rainbows at once.

Le Substantif déterminé par un Adverbe de quantité; voir § 12, II, r. 46.

- A. 1. Avez-vous bu du vin?
- 2. Ce marchand de poisson vend-il des crevettes?
- 3. Comment se fait-il que vous n'avez point d'amis?
- 4. Avez-vous eu des nouvelles d'Egypte ?
- 5. Apportez-moi, s'il vous plaît, du vin blanc, du pain bis et du fromage.

Non, i'ai bu de la bière,

Oui, il vend d'excellentes crevettes.

Parce que je n'ai point d'argent.

Oui, l'armée anglaise s'est emparée de plusieurs forteresses.

Voici une demi-bouteille de vin blanc, une croûte de pain et un morceau de fromage.

B. 1. Will you have beef or mutton?—Bring me some veal. 2. Last night I received news from Japan. 3. Who is ringing? —They (= ce, p, 69, a) are poor men asking for bread. 4. Are there many mistakes in my French translation?—Yes, I have underlined them with red ink. 5. If I had any money about (=upon) me, I should buy you a jew's harp, my dear little Charley! 6. I would rather have some buns. 7. I want some salt !- Salt ?- Yes, to season the meat you are going to give me. 8. Horses are useful animals. 9. Birds have feathers. 10. Blackberries were plentiful last autumn, 11. Children are fond of sweets. 12. More flies are taken (sav-One takes more...) with honey than with vinegar. 13, An ounce of vanity spoils a hundredweight of merit.

U. Un voyageur mouillé par la pluie et grelottant de froid arriva avec son cheval dans une auberge de campagne. Il y avait beaucoup de monde, et il ne pouvait approcher de la cheminée pour se chauffer. Appelant le garçon, il lui dit: "Allez porter de la salade à mon cheval."—" De la salade?" demanda le garçon; "du foin et de l'avoine plutôt."-"De la salade," répéta le voyageur, "et n'oubliez pas d'y mettre tout ce qu'il faut : du poivre, du sel, des oignons, un peu de moutarde et surtout du vinaigre et de l'huile." Le garçon obéit, et tout le monde sortit pour voir le cheval qui mangeait de la salade. Bientôt on revint, et on trouva le voyageur assis devant le feu. "Monsieur," dit le garçon, "votre cheval n'a pas voulu [de] la salade."—" Pas voulu?" dit l'autre, "eh bien! donnez-lui du foin; et la salade, je la mangerai à mon souper, quand je serai bien sec."

Le Nom déterminé par un Nom attributif, pp. 50, 51.

- A. 1. Avez-vous une montre d'or ou une montre d'argent?
- 2. Comment distinguez vous les différents genres de moulins ?
- 3. Vous oubliez les moulins à café!
- 4. Et quelle est la fonction de la préposition à dans café au lait; glace à la vanille?
- 5. Et quels rapports la préposition de sert-elle à marquer?
- Veuillez bien me citer des exemples à l'appui; vous savez qu'un bon exemple vaut dix préceptes.
- 7. Qu'est-ce qu'une dorade?
- 8. Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?

Non seulement j'ai une montre d'or, mais aussi des breloques en or.

Selon leur force motrice; il y a des moulins à vent, des moulins à eau, des moulins à vapeur, etc.

Oh, ça, c'est tout autre chose; ici à s'emploie pour marquer la destination.

La préposition à, dans une infinité de cas, sert à indiquer avec son complément la qualité essentielle.

De sert à marquer des rapports de départ, d'extraction, d'origine, d'appartenance, de matière, de contenu, etc.

Volontiers: la pomme de terre, le bleu de Prusse, le chemin de fer, l'huile d'olive, le port de mer, une tasse de thé.

C'est un poisson de mer à écailles dorées.

C'est un service à thé en porcelaine de Sèvres.

B. 1. Is not the north wind very cold? 2. The town hall is in the midst of the chief town. 3. Go to the post-office and fetch me a postage-stamp. 4. Have you read Vanity Fair? 5. I wish (that) this money-bag were full of money. 6. I prefer Champagne to Burgundy. 7. The English steamboat entered the port at half-past twelve. 8. I have had a cup of tea and a cream tart. 9. Green's History of England is a masterpiece. 10. "An iron hand in a velvet glove," answers to the Latin, "Fortiter in re, suaviter in modo." 11. The town mouse invited the country mouse to a sumptuous supper.

Féminin et Pluriel des Adjectifs, pp. 52-54, 181, 182.

A. 1. Mettrez-vous votre nouvel habit demain?

2. Si vous avez soif, voici un verre d'eau fraîche.

3. Cette Italienne est-elle bonne actrice?

4. Que représente cette belle statue antique?

5. Les nuits d'hiver ne sontelles pas très longues?

6. Fait-il sec dans les rues maintenant?

Non, je mettrai mon vieil habit; je n'ai pas d'habit neuf.

Donnez-moi plutôt un verre de bière anglaise.

Oui, et elle est aussi excellente cantatrice.

Elle représente la Diane chasseresse.

Oui, les nuits sont bien longues à qui ne dort point

Non, les rues ne sont pas encore sèches.

Position of Adjectives.

Most French Adjectives are placed after the Noun; not a few, however, are placed before; and others, again, may be placed before or after, but generally with a different meaning (see Appendix V, p. 206).

(1) Place after the Noun-

(a) Adjectives derived from Proper Nouns:—
La langue française. The French language.
Le culte catholique. The Catholic worship.

(b) Adjectives denoting colour, shape, or taste:—
Le vin rouge; un chapeau rond. Red wine; a round hat.
Un goût amer; la Barbe bleue. A bitter taste. Blue-Beard.

(c) Participles, and Adjectives derived from Participles:— Le roi conquérant. The conquering king. L'ordre accoutumé. The accustomed order.

(d) Adjectives much longer than the Noun they qualify:—
La vie champêtre. The country life.

(e) Adjectives ending in -al, -il, -if, -ique, -ible, -able, -eur :— Le monde idéal. The ideal world, Le jardin zoologique, etc. The zoological garden.

(f) Adjectives with a complement:— Une action digne de récompense. An action deserving a reward.

(2) Place before the Noun-

(a) the Adjectives—bon, mauvais, méchant, beau, joli, grand, gros, petit, jeune, vieux:—

Un bon cheval; le beau jardin.
La grande rue; le petit enfant.
Une mauvaise prononciation.
Le joli chat; une grosse somme.
Le jeune homme; la vieille
femme; mon cher ami!

A good horse; the fine garden.
The large (high) street; the little child.
A bad pronunciation.
The pretty eat; a large sum.

The young man; the old woman. My dear friend, etc.

(b) Adjectives used figuratively, or as a merely ornamental epithet: compare—

Les noirs (gloomy) chagrins. Le cruel tyran. Le vaillant capitaine. Le savant professeur. Un habit noir. Un homme cruel. Un peuple vaillant. Les Femmes Savantes.

In habit noir, the Adjective is necessary to distinguish habit from other habits not of the same colour; whilst in noirs chagrins, the Adjective is not necessary (griefs as a rule being gloomy), but is simply added for the sake of emphasis or picturesque effect. (As, for instance, in English—The gallant captain, etc.)

The same distinction holds good with the other examples.

DRILL: Give the Feminine of—Le martyr chrétien; le bon voisin; ce jeune jardinier; un fils obéissant; mon cher ami; votre petit frère; quel gentil enfant; leur père heureux; un dieu vengeur; son riche parrain; les pêcheurs écossais; leur maître bénin; ces lions furieux; ce vieux juif; ton joli petit chien blanc (see pp. 52-54 and 202-204.

B. 1. Your black ink is very thick, is it not? 2. This Greek history is very fine, but rather long. 3. The dry figs that we have bought are very sweet. 4. I am afraid (that) he deludes himself with foolish hopes. 5. All men ought to be equal before the law. 6. What enchanting music! 7. Which is your favourite colour?—Yellow. 8. Yellow! what a funny taste you have! 9. The thistle is armed with (=of) sharp points. 10. He was attacked by a malignant fever; his pains were very acute. 11. This news is false. 12. His conduct is not frank. 13. The enchanting voice of the sirens was very deceitful. 14. Is not a mutual esteem the first foundation of a true friendship?—Of course! 15. He has red hair. 16. Grandmother, do tell us the story of "Little Red Ridinghood!"

Soixante-neuvième Leçon. Formation du Féminin, pp. 52-54, 202-204.

DRILL: Give the Feminine of—L'ambassadeur anglais; ce gouverneur grec; votre humble serviteur; le grand duc; le prêtre romain; Louis, le jeune chasseur; l'empereur allemand; le héros grec; le loup affamé; le vieux devin; mon fidèle compagnon; leur esclave nègre; ce célèbre chanteur; le vieil enchanteur; le jeune maître; mon gendre; mon beau neveu; le pécheur endurci; le pêcheur italien; le mulet (l'âne) têtu.

- A. 1. La tempérance n'est-elle pas le meilleur médecin?
- 2. Vous n'êtes pas homme à vous laisser rebuter par les difficultés; n'est-ce pas?
- 3. Quels sont les pires des ennemis?
- 4. Cet étang est plus profond que vous ne croyez.
- 5. N'aimez-vous pas mieux la soupe au riz que la soupe aux choux ?
- 6. Ce bavard ne ferait-il pas mieux de se taire?

Oui, et le travail est le meilleur cuisinier.

Non, car plus une chose est difficile, plus il y a de mérite à la faire.

Ce sont les flatteurs, la plus vile engeance du monde.

Il n'y a de *pire* eau que l'eau qui dort (Prov.)

Si, à mon goût, la soupe au riz est beaucoup meilleure.

Oui, quand on n'a rien à dire, le meilleur est de se taire.

Degrees of Comparison (p. 55): Observations.

(α) Any Verb depending on a Comparative must take ne:—
 Cela est plus difficile que That is more difficult than you vous ne croyez.

The use of ne is easily explained by inverting the sentence:—You do not think how difficult that is.

(b) After plus . . . plus . . . , moins . . . moins . . . , the Noun or Adjective compared stands after the Verb :—

Plus on est riche, (et) plus on The richer one is, the more friends one has.

Moins on a de soucis, plus on The fewer cares one has, the happier est heureux.

- (c) After a Superlative the English in is generally rendered by de:—

 La plus belle ville du monde The finest town in the world (de la France).

 (in France).
- (d) A Verb depending on a Superlative is put in the Subjunctive:—C'est le plus méchant garçon que He is the most naughty boy I know. je connaisse (see p. 98).
- B. 1. Which is, in your opinion, the best French dictionary?
 2. Littré's large French Dictionary is incomparably the best of all. 3. [The] more you use it, [the] more you will like it. 4. That is certainly the worst apple that I have ever eaten. 5. [The] less luggage you have, [the] more easily you will travel. 6. I have not the least idea of his plans. 7. Of two evils we must avoid the worse. 8. The weather is better to-day than it was yesterday. 9. This is the best rule that I can give you. 10. There are none so deaf as those who will not hear.

Dimensions (pp. 56, 57).

Le mur est haut de trois mètres.

Le mur a 3 m. de hauteur.

Ce jardin a cent trente-cinq pieds de long (de longueur).

Une maison longue de soixante

A house sixty feet long.

pieds.

Excess or Difference of measure is expressed by de:-

Il est plus âgé que vous, de deux { He is two years older than you.
Or—Il est votre aîné } ans. { He is your senior by two years.
Le chameau portait plus de dix
quintaux.

The camel was carrying more than
ten quintals.

Un chameau peut porter plus que trois chevaux.

A camel can carry more than three horses (i.e. can carry).*

* It will be seen from these examples that the common Rule, "Render than by de before Numerals, and by que before other words," is quite misleading.

The correct Rule, in the case of Numerals standing after plus, is—

use de before a Numeral qualifying an Object or Complement, as above;
 use que before a Numeral qualifying a Noun (or Pron.) which is virtually the Subject of a Dependent Clause (expressed or implied).

A. Les pyramides d'Égypte étaient au nombre de vingt. La plus grande, dont le circuit est de deux cent dix mètres, fut mise au nombre des sept merveilles du monde. Cent mille ouvriers y travaillèrent pendant trente ans de suite; elle coûta des sommes immenses, puisqu'une partie des légumes fournis aux ouvriers coûtèrent plus de quatre-vingt-quinze mille sept cents francs. Elle occupe à elle seule quatre hectares de terrain; les quatre faces ont chacune deux cent soixante mètres de hauteur.

Système métrique.—On mesure les longueurs avec le mètre. Le décimètre est dix fois plus petit que le mètre. Le centimètre est cent fois plus petit. Le mètre est contenu quarante millions de fois dans le tour de la terre. Mille mètres font un kilomètre.

B. 1. What is the height of this pine-tree?—It is forty-five feet high. 2. The river is twelve feet deep. 3. How much do $\frac{3}{4}$ and $\frac{1}{8}$ make?— $\frac{7}{8}$. 4. Molière, the great French poet, was born in Paris in 1622, and died there in 1673. 5. How old is your grandmother?—She is ninety-two. 6. In an hour and a half I shall have done. 7. The new man-of-war is three hundred [and] twenty-five feet long. 8. The old hunter used to eat two pounds of beefsteak; he could eat more than three ordinary mortals. 9. He is a head taller than his brother. 10. Who is the richest man in the town?—It is the banker.

Adjectifs numéraux, pp. 56, 57.

A. 1. Quelle heure croyez-vous qu'il soit ?

2. A-t-il sonné midi?

3. Il est sept heures cing à ma montre; elle va comme le soleil.

4. A quelle heure passerezyous chez nous?

5. Quel jour du mois avonsnous aujourd'hui?

6. Je croyais que nous étions déjà au premier février.

Je crois qu'il est onze heures vingt minutes.

Il est déjà midi et quart.

Votre montre avance de dix minutes, car il n'est que sept heures moins cing.

Nous comptons passer chez vous sur (vers) les dix heures.

C'est aujourd'hui le trente et un janvier.

Vous vous trompez d'un jour, c'est évident.

7. Qui fut le successeur de Henri IV? Ce fut Louis XIII.

Il y a huit jours (quinze jours). A week (a fortnight) ago. D'aujourd'hui en huit (quinze) This day week, fortnight.

(six mois).

Il y a quinze (dix-huit) mois que je ne l'ai vu.

Quelle heure est-il ?-Cinq heures (et) un quart.

Il est cinq heures et demie. Il est six heures moins dix minutes.

A midi; minuit.* Il est midi et demi.

Trois heures viennent de sonner (or, sont sonnées).

Il s'en va minuit. Il s'en faut d'un jour ou deux.

Je l'ai vu il y a (de cela) trois mois I saw him a quarter of (half) a year

ago (since). I have not seen him for a year and

a quarter (half). What o'clock is it?-A quarter-past five. It is half-past five.

It is ten minutes to six. At twelve o'clock (noon): midnight.

It is half-past twelve It has just struck three o'clock.

It is going to strike twelve (midnight). It wants a day or two.

* Never douze heures-which can only mean-twelve hours.

B. 1. Do you know what o'clock it is ?- It is half-past eleven. 2. I thought (that) it was already a quarter to twelve, 3. Your watch gains a quarter of an hour. 4. Could you tell me what day of the month it is ?-To-day is the 21st. 5. Shall you return to-day week ?-No, we shall return to-day fortnight. 6. Please to lend me the nineteenth volume of the works of Voltaire. 7. You will find that passage in the forty-first chapter. 8. Where did we leave off yesterday?—We left off at page 497. 9. A quarter of a year ago we bought this house for £980, now it is worth more than £1000. 10. We have been in Italy a year and a half. 11. To-day week I shall be in Germany.

Apprenez les Pronoms Personnels Conjoints, pp. 58, 59.

- A. 1. Je vous demande de m'écouter! Prêtez-moi l'oreille, je vous en prie!
- 2. Permettez-moi de vous accompagner jusqu'à la gare.
- 3. Leur avez-vous dit de rester à la maison?
- 4. Ne vous ai-je pas défendu de les fréquenter?
- 5. Allez-vous-en! et qu'on ne vous revoie plus ici.
- 6. Ne vous en allez pas encore!
- 7. Laissez-moi en repos! Vous m'agacez les nerfs (f silent).
- 8. Dépêche-toi donc!
- 9. Vous avez eu bon nez de venir nous voir!—Pourquoi?

Eh bien, hâtez-vous de me dire en quoi je puis vous servir.

Je vous défends de m'accompagner où que ce soit.

Au contraire, je leur ai dit d'aller se promener.

C'est vrai, vous me l'avez répété maintes et maintes fois.

Je m'en irai, quand bon me semblera.

Nous ne nous en irons pas avant vous.

Et vous, mêlez-vous de vos affaires!

Dépêchez-vous vous-même.

Parce que nous avons une heureuse nouvelle à *vous* apprendre.

B. 1. I offer you my friendship. 2. We shall send them to Brussels. 3. Has the gardener gathered the walnuts ?—He has not yet gathered them. 4. Has the cook boiled the eggs ?-She has boiled them long ago. 5. Do you know the truth ?-I know it. 6. Are you looking for me?-No, I am not looking 7. Tell (to) him to stay. 8. You did not expect him, did vou ?-Yes, I did. 9. Does he feel the draught ?-He does feel it. 10. We wrote to them last week. 11. Did you know my nephew? - Yes, I knew him very well. 12. Speak to him! 13. Follow me!-I am ready to follow you to the end of the world! 14. Then, don't follow me! Stay rather at home! 15. Don't bring me any wine, but bring me a glass of fresh water, 16. Why won't you listen to him?—Because he never tells me the truth. 17. An old lady whose maid had asked her (=to-whom her maid ...) for a Christmas-box, replied to her: "Go to; I give and forgive you all that you have robbed me of in the course of the year!"

- A. 1. Si vous venez nous voir, amenez votre frère.
- 2. Apportez-vous les journaux que vous nous avez promis?
- 3. Emmenez ce marmot, il me rompt la tête avec ses cris continuels!
- Prêtez-moi cette revue pour un moment, je voudrais en lire quelques pages.
- Veuillez me prêter votre voiture, j'en ai besoin pour aller à Genève.
- 6. Ne m'avez-vous pas dit que vous m'en voulez ? (Ex. 41.)
- 7. Je conviens que ma faute est grave, mais ne me la pardonnerez-vous pas ?

- Je ne manquerai pas de l'amener et de vous le présenter.
- Nous vous les apporterons ce soir ; comptez-y!
- Eh bien, puisqu'il vous ennuie, je l'emmènerai.

Emportez-la chez vous, vous la lirez à loisir; en voici encore une autre qui vous intéressera.

Je le veux bien, si vous me promettez de me la ramener demain.

Oui, et je vous le répète : je vous en veux de m'avoir trompé.

Si vous vous en repentez, je vous la pardonnerai.

- 8. Ton thé t'a-t-il ôté ta toux?
- B. 1. Do you tell me the truth?—I always tell it to you.

 2. What a fine dog! will you give it to me?—I will give it to you with pleasure.

 3. But you must promise me to treat him well.—I promise it to you.

 4. What a difficult passage this is; please explain it to us.

 5. If you like these pictures, I will give them to you.

 6. Have I already shown you my collection of natural curiosities?—No, you have not yet shown it to me.

 7. Bring your friend with you when you come to see me.—We shall not fail to bring him.

 8. Bring me a cup of coffee.—I have already brought it to you.

 9. How many times have I not told it to him!

 10. He took up a stone and threw it at him.
- C. Un paysan alla un jour chez son voisin, pour le prier de lui prêter son âne. Ce voisin lui répondit qu'il l'avait prêté à un autre. Comme il s'excusait ainsi, l'âne se mit à braire. "Ah!" dit le paysan, "il faut avouer que vous êtes fort obligeant!" "Je vous trouve bien singulier," lui répliqua le voisin, "de croire plutôt mon âne que moi-même."
- D. 1. Lend me your ass, I pray you (of-it)! 2. I have already lent him to somebody else. 3. Have you really!—I thought I heard him bray just now! 4. That may be; at the same time, you ought to believe me rather than my ass.

Apprenez les Pronoms-en, y, le, pp. 59, 60.

- A. 1. Venez-vous de Londres ?
- 2. Vous souvenez-vous de cet incident?
- 3. Ce négociant n'est-il pas digne de ma confiance?
- 4. Avez-vous besoin de votre parapluie?
- 5. Votre élève a-t-il obtenu un prix ?
- 6. Votre plume ne va-t-elle pas bien?
- 7. Le temps ne passe-t-il pas bien vite?
- 8. Allez-vous à Douvres aujourd'hui?
- 9. Mademoiselle votre nièce est-elle malade?
- 10. On m'a dit que vos cousines sont enrhumées; est-ce vrai?

Oui, j'en viens, et j'y retourne.

Non, je ne m'en souviens plus du tout.

Je crois qu'il en est digne.

Oui, j'en ai besoin; il pleut à verse.

Il en a obtenu un; et moi, j'en ai obtenu deux.

Non, elle ne vaut rien; donnez-m'en une autre.

En effet, il passe sans que nous nous en apercevions.

Non, je n'y vais pas; j'y ai déjà été.

Elle *l'est*, et *le* sera encore longtemps.

Oui, elles le sont depuis le dégel.

- 11. Quand on parle du loup, on en voit la queue (PROVERBE).
- B. 1. Was he not coming from home?—Yes, he was (i.e. coming from there). 2. Does he consent to our staying here?—No, he does not. 3. Are you the three Romans selected for the fight?—Yes, we are. 4. Are you ready?—Yes, we are. 5. Are the masters satisfied with your conduct?—No, they are not. 6. Do not think of it! 7. We repent of it. 8. We have expected it a long time. 9. If I want any money, I know that you will give me some. 10. How many letters have you received from home?—I have not received any at all. 11. Have you not been to the horse-fair?—No, but my brother-in-law has been there this morning. 12. I have not remembered it. 13. I don't like these steel pens, they are too sharp; give me some others. 14. Here are some better ones; I use them every day.

Apprenez les Pronoms Personnels Disjoints, p. 63.

- A. 1. Parlez-vous de lui ou d'elle ?
- 2. Parle-t-on de la guerre?
- 3. Le bruit court que l'Angleterre y prendra part; qu'en crovez-vous?
- 4. Ne pensez-vous jamais à lui?
- 5. Tu oublies qu'il est sans aucune ressource, songes-y bien!
- 6. Vous adresserez-vous à lui ou aux directeurs?

C'est de lui que je parle, et non pas d'elle.

Oui, on en parle continuellement.

Je n'en crois rien, nous n'aurions rien à y gagner.

Non, mais je pense très souvent à elle.

J'y songerai, je te le promets.

Nous nous adresserons à eux. c'est à eux, et non aux directeurs qu'il appartient de s'en occuper.

Caution.—Distinguish Indirect Obj.: He gave it (to) me. Il me le donna: from Adverbial Compl.: He came to me. Il vint à moi.

It will be seen that the Conjunctive form (me, to, lui, etc., before the Verb) is used only if standing objectively (as the Dative case); whilst the Disjunctive form (à moi, à toi, à lui, etc.) is used adverbially or emphatically.

The Principal Verbs after which this rule holds good, are:courir (accourir) à, to run (hasten) to. être (appartenir) à, to belong to. penser (songer) à, to think of. s'adresser à, to apply to. renoncer à, to renounce. aller à, to go to. venir à, to come to. and other Verbs of motion.

DRILL: (1) Conjugate in all persons Je suis chez moi; (2) Put in all persons Celui qui n'est pas pour moi est contre moi,

B. 1. Do you sometimes think of me ?-I often think of you, I assure you. 2. Are they speaking of us or of you?—They are not speaking of us, they are speaking of him. 3. Did you know that the war had been declared ?-I knew nothing about (of) it. 4. Shall you contribute to the fund?—No, but my brothers will certainly contribute to it. 5. Are you not sorry for it? 6. Is he angry with you?—No, it is with you (that) he is angry. 7. Remember it well !—I shall remember it. Don't blame me for it. 9. The victory is ours! 10. Shall you be at home ?-Yes, we shall be at home from seven till half-past eight in the evening. 11. My friend and I have returned home.

Apprenez les Pronoms Possessifs, pp. 64, 65.

- A. 1. Vous êtes bien pâle, qu'avez-vous ?—J'ai mal à l'estomac.
- 2. M'apportez vous quelque chose de bon?
- 3. J'ai bien froid aux mains et aux pieds.
- Oui, fermez les yeux, et. ouvrez la bouche.
- Eh bien, approchez-vous du feu, et chauffez-vous les pieds et. les mains.
- 4. Vous m'avez marché sur le pied! Je vous demande mille pardons.
- 5. Viendrez-vous à ma rencontre? Je crains de me tromper de route.
- 6. Ce cheval est-il à vous ou à eux ?
- 7. Quelle mauvaise écriture que la vôtre! Quel griffonnage illisible!
- Il n'est pas à nous, il est à. elles.

Vous trouvez? -- Oui, vos lettres sont de véritables pattes de mouches!

Caution.—The Definite Article is used instead of the Possessive-Pronoun, in speaking of parts of the body, whenever the context clearly shows who the possessor is :-

I have a pain in my head. (My head aches.) J'ai mal à la tête. Il a mal aux dents. He has the toothache. Il a mal (froid) aux pieds. His feet are sore (cold). Elle a perdu la vue. She has lost her sight. Donnez-moi la main. Give me your hand.

Notice also—French Pers. Pron. + Def. Art., = Engl. Possess. Adj. :-He has broken his arm. Il s'est cassé le bras. Un boulet lui emporta la jambe. A cannon ball carried off his leg.

Obs .- On the other hand, the French use the Possessive Pron. in a few idiomatic expressions where the English use the Personal Pron. :-

Avez-vous eu de ses nouvelles? Iront-ils à sa rencontre? Saluez-le de ma part! Serez-vous des nôtres?

Have you heard from him? Will they go to meet him? Greet him from me. Shall you join us?

B. 1. What is the matter with him ?—He has a pain in hischest. 2. Shall we soon hear from you?-Yes, you will hear from me in a week. 3. We shall send our coachman to meet them. 4. This poor child has cold hands. 5. What ails your sister?—She has sore eyes. 6. Are these postage-stamps his or yours ?- They are mine. 7. What an awkward fellow! he trod upon her toes (=foot). 8. He has sprained his foot. 9. My feet are warm. 10. His foot slipped. 11. Have you the toothache?

Apprenez les Pronoms Démonstratifs, pp. 66-70.

- A. 1. Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela? C'est de la compote aux pommes.
- 2. Quelle est cette montagne majestueuse?
- 3. Ceci est bon, cela est mauvais.
- 4. Quel livre est-ce?
- 5. Quelle heure est-il?
- 6. N'est-ce pas Molière qui est votre auteur favori?

C'est le Mont Blanc, la plus haute montagne de l'Europe.

Eh bien, donnez-moi de ceci.

C'est un livre très intéressant.

Il est midi et demi.

Oui, c'est un grand poète, il est incomparable.

- B. 1. Who has said that ?—It is Cicero who has said that.

 2. It is possible that they are right.

 3. They are wrong, it is easy to see.

 4. What sort of a (= quel) man is he?—He is an honest man.

 5. Is it not Spanish wine that you prefer?—Yes, it is excellent.

 6. That is excellent.

 7. Why do you not read Shakspeare instead of those insipid novels?

 8. I know that he is the greatest poet, but he is so difficult to understand.

 9. This is his, and that is hers.

 10. Does he know these gentlemen or those?

 11. That does not concern us.
- C. Un paysan coupait un arbre au bord d'une rivière. Sa cognée se détacha, tomba dans l'eau et il ne la retrouva plus. Ses plaintes attirèrent Mercure. "Est-ce là ta cognée, mon ami!" dit le dieu en lui montrant une cognée d'or. Le paysan répondit que non.—"Celle-ci peut-être!" continua le dieu en lui présentant une cognée d'argent.—"Non plus," dit l'honnête paysan.—"C'est alors cette cognée-là que tu as perdue!" C'était, cette fois-ci, une cognée ordinaire en fer. "Oui, oui," s'écria le paysan, "la voici!" Le dieu des voleurs fut charmé de trouver tant d'honnêteté parmi les hommes: "Prends tous ces instruments," dit-il, "tu les as mérités par ta bonne foi."
- D. An Emperor of the Turks, having heard (=learned) that the famous General Scanderbeg had a sabre with which he cut off, with (of) one blow, the head of the greatest ox, asked him [for] it. (After) having received it, the fancy took him to try it, but he could not succeed in it. Then he reproached Scanderbeg with having deceived him. "Sire," Scanderbeg wrote to him, "I had sent you my sabre, but not my arm."

Pronoms Interrogatifs, p. 71.

- A. 1. Quel général a remporté la victoire de Tel-el-Kebir ?
- 2. Lequel de ces deux généraux a été blessé?
- 3. De qui parlez-vous donc? Est-ce de moi ou de lui?
- 4. De quoi s'agit-il? De quoi est-il question?
- 5. Qui avez-vous invité?
- 6. Que faites-vous là (Qu'est-ce que vous faites là)?
- 7. A qui vous adresserez-vous?
- 8. A quoi aboutissent leurs raisonnements?

C'est le général Wolseley qui l'a remportée.

C'est celui de la 1re division qui a été blessé.

Ce n'est pas de vous que nous parlons! De quoi vous mêlez-vous?

Il s'agit de vaincre ou de mourir, n'est-ce pas ?

Nous avons invité tous nos amis.

Que vous importe? Nous faisons nos devoirs pour demain.

Je m'adresserai au ministre de l'intérieur.

Ils n'aboutissent à rien du tout! À quoi bon me demander cela ?

Caution. - The English way of putting the Preposition, governing an Interrogative or Relative Pronoun, at the end of the sentence, is never allowed in French :-

What is it about? The house I live in.

De quoi s'agit-il? La maison dans laquelle je demeure.

B. 1. In which form are you?—In the sixth. 2. To which of these two forms would you give the preference ?- To the one in which you are, of course. 3. What prevents you from going for a walk more frequently?—It is the bad weather. 4. To what do you attribute his failure? 5. What is that magnificent building vonder on the hill? 6. What does this word mean? 7. On whom will the choice of the king fall? 8. What did he die of? 9. What is that? 10. Whose are all those mills? 11. Does he know what this word means? 12. What do they complain of? 13. What are you thinking about? 14. What are you laughing at ?-I cannot help laughing, because you said -"Que pensez-vous de," and "Que riez-vous de?"-which is execrable French. (See pp. 184, 186.)

Apprenez les Pronoms Relatifs, pp. 74-76.

- A. 1. Vous occupez vous de botanique?
- 2. Connaissez-vous cet homme? Savez-vous qui il est?
- 3. Pensez-vous à l'affaire dont je vous ai entretenu, et dont le succès me tient au cœur?
- 4. Avez-vous des amis sincères, sur l'assistance de qui vous pouvez compter ?
- 5. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'une boussole? N'est-ce pas un instrument très utile?
- 6. Et qu'est-ce qu'il y a de remarquable dans cette aiguille? À quoi sert-elle?

Oui, c'est une science à laquelle je m'intéresse.

Oui, c'est un homme à qui (auquel) on peut se fier.

Non, car c'est une affaire à la réussite de laquelle je ne suis pas intéressé.

Oui, j'en ai dans l'expérience de qui (or, desquels) j'ai une entière confiance.

C'est une sorte de cadran au centre duquel est fixée une aiguille.

C'est une aiguille dont la pointe aimantée se dirige toujours vers le nord.

B. 1. Where is the messenger who has brought me this parcel? 2. Here is the messenger whom he has sent to you.

3. Do you know the man of whom we are speaking? 4. Yes, he is the man whose son obtained the first prize. 5. This is the friend to whom I owe everything. 6. (The) botany is a science to which I devote all my time. 7. The pens with which I write are steel pens. 8. The traveller with whom we went to Venice has not yet returned. 9. That is an event which I do not recollect. 10. Those are actions (of) which you will repent.

11. Every family is a natural society whose chief is the father.

12. He is rich who earns more than he spends; he is poor whose expenses exceed his (= the) income.

Pronoms Relatifs (Suite).

- A. 1. We must be careful in the choice of the persons to whom we give our confidence. 2. You have habits (to) which you must renounce. 3. Conscience is a judge whose decisions must be respected. 4. I perceive in the distance an object the form of which I cannot distinguish. 5. A man on whose promises we cannot rely does not deserve our confidence. 6. The Alps are mountains the summits of which are covered with (=of) snow. 7. The first person is the one that speaks, the second is that to whom one speaks, the third is that of whom one speaks. 8. Stop! said the soldier from whose hands the prisoner tried to escape. 9. I have friends on whose faith I can rely. 10. The place in which you have hidden your treasure is not safe.
- B. 1. What one has is better than what one hopes [for]. 2. Enjoy (of) what you possess. 3. He asked the king what he was thinking about so seriously. 4. He gives a pleasant turn to everything that he says. 5. I cannot (= do not) see in what I can be useful to you. 6. They consented at last to that which I proposed. 7. What surprises me is the audacity with which he maintains his falsehood. 8. Tell me what you complain of. 9. They say it will rain, which is not probable. 10. We know what you know. 11. He never returns what one lends to him.

Quatre-vingt-deuxième Leçon. Pronoms Indéfinis, pp. 75, 76.

B. 1. We travelled the whole day and the whole night. 2. There was such a crowd of people that one could not move. 3. No power on earth can help us. 4. Give me another glass of wine. 5. They avoid each other. 6. The heavenly bodies act upon each other. 7. Both have come. 8. Neither the one nor the other has come. 9. Such a man is rewarded who deserves to be punished. 10. Has the minister received reliable intelligence? 11. We Englishmen are Not so frivolous as you Frenchmen! 12. The whole town knows [of] it. 13. Such behaviour is unworthy of an honest man. 14. Such terms will not be accepted. 15. These rose-trees cost five francs each. 16. Is there anybody at the carriage-gate? 17. If he is fond of pine-apples, give him a few. 18. You are wanted. Apprenez les Adverbes, pp. 77-80.

- A. 1. Vous avez placé cela trop haut 1
- 2. Pourquoi ces œufs sentent-ils mauvais?
- 3. Cette plante est-elle rare?
- 4. Sa conduite n'est-elle pas inconsidérée?
- 5. Ces écoliers sont-ils attentifs? Vous prêtent-ils l'oreille?
- 6. Les nôtres ne se sont-ils pas montrés très courageux dans cette affaire?
- 7. Ces demoiselles ne sont-elles pas fort bien?
- 8. Comment dit-on en français pour The more the merrier?
- 9. Que veut dire le proverbe: "Le mieux est l'ennemi du bien ?"

Ton exercice est bon, il est bien

Celui-ci est meilleur, il est mieux

Celui-là est le meilleur, c'est le

That one is the best, it is written mieux écrit. the best. Form Adverbs from the following Adjectives: - constant, vif, entier, bon, mauvais, grand, petit, frais, exprès, doux, sec, nouveau, brave,

joli, lent, décidé, beau, énorme, valeureux, bref, vite.

Et moi qui croyais l'avoir placé trop bas!

Parce qu'ils ne sont pas frais pondus.

Oui, on la trouve assez rarement dans cette contrée.

Oui, je trouve qu'il a agi très inconsidérément.

Je crois que oui, du moins ils semblent écouter très attentivement.

Oui, ils se sont battus fort courageusement; ils ont complètement dérouté les ennemis.

Oui, l'aînée n'est pas mal du tout ; elle a le teint frais.

"Plus on est de fous, plus on rit."

Il veut dire que quand on est bien, il faut s'y tenir : Let well alone!

Your exercise is good, it is well

This one is better, it is better

B. 1. Is not his letter very well written ?—Yes, it is better written than yours. 2. Do not speak so low. 3. I cannot hear you distinctly. 4. Gently, my friend. 5. These fresh roses smell very sweet. 6. These landscapes by Turner are (= cost)very dear. 7. It is better late than never. 8. I think quite differently. 9. Don't speak so quick, if you wish me to understand you. 10. Six persons can sit very comfortably in this carriage. 11. Do you know anything new ?-Yes, Queen Anne is dead. 12. If you explained yourself more clearly, I should understand better what you mean.

Pronoms indéfinis et Adverbes employés négativement, pp. 76, 78, 79.

- A. 1. Pourquoi Alexandre le Grand adopta-t-il les coutumes des Perses?
- 2. Il faut faire de nécessité vertu, n'est-ce pas?
- 3. N'est-ce pas en 390 avant J.C. que les Gaulois s'emparèrent de Rome?
- 4. Ne savez-vous pas qu'on ne doit pas disputer des goûts?
- 5. Cet homme n'est-il pas très défiant?
- 6. N'avez-vous pas un peu embelli le joli conte que vous venez de nous débiter?
- 7. Personne oserait-il nier cela?

Pour leur prouver qu'il voulait être pour eux un roi, et non pas un conquérant despote.

Oui, il faut vouloir ce qu'on ne peut empêcher.

Oui, et peu s'en fallut qu'ils ne détruisissent presque à son berceau la future maîtresse du monde.

D'accord; mais cela n'empêche pas qu'il n'y ait un bon et un mauvais goût.

En effet; il ne croit que ce qu'il voit.

Non, je ne retranche ni n'ajoute rien aux histoires que je raconte.

Je doute que *personne* s'avise de se refuser à l'évidence.

B. 1. Shall you ever forgive me?—Yes: but don't do it (say—do not come to-it) again. 2. I do not owe you anything; do I? 3. Nothing passes more quickly than time. 4. Is it well done?—I think so.—But I think not. 5. I thank you very much. 6. He has only done five sentences. 7. She has never refused (to) her children anything. 8. Has anybody been here?—Nobody. 9. This sick child hardly eats anything. 10. I do not eat anything either. 11. There is nothing that I would not do (Pres. Subj.) to oblige you. 12. I have never seen anything so beautiful as the sunrise in the Alps. 13. He nearly fell down. 14. Is there anybody here who can tell me what has become of him?—I cannot tell you,—Nor I either!

Government of Verbs (Syntax of Prepositions).

(a) Verbs which require no Preposition in English, but à in French:—

to allow (permit), { permettre à. accorder à.

to answer, répondre à.

to ask, demander à (or de). to command, commander à.

to order, ordonner à.

to forbid, défendre à.

to forgive, pardonner à. to injure (wrong), nuire à.

to like (a place), * se plaire à.

to obey, obéir à.

to persuade, persuader à.

to please, plaire à (p. 155).

remédier à. porter remède à.

to relieve, subvenir à. to renounce, renoncer à.

to resemble, ressembler à. to be like,

to resist, résister à.

to succeed, succéder à.

to survive, survivre à. to touch, toucher (à).

to trust, se fier à.

to which must be added those numerous English Verbs of qiving, telling, etc., which—though virtually requiring to (i.e. an indirect personobject)—are frequently used without to, especially if the Person-Object is placed before the Thing-Object:-

I gave him my money.

I gave my money to-him.

He owes his friend everything. He owes everything to-his friend. Je lui donnai mon argent.

Il doit tout à son ami.

(b) Verbs which require no Preposition in English, but de in French:—

to abuse (misuse), abuser de.

to approach, s'approcher de.

to call (names), traiter de.

to change, changer de. to doubt (suspect), (se) douter de.

to enjoy, jouir de.

to mistake, se tromper de.

to own (admit), convenir de.

to mistrust, se méfier de. to distrust, se défier de.

to remember,) se souvenir de (se rappeler).

to recollect, to use, user de,

(user, with acc., to wear out).

to play (music), jouer de. to lack (want), manquer de.

* And thus many Verbs which are reflexive in French, but not in English :s'apercevoir de, to perceive, to notice; etc.

Cautions.—(1) In English either the Direct (Nearer) Obj. or the Indirect (Remoter) Obj. of an Active Verb may be made the Subject of the same Verb in the Passive Voice; but in French only the Direct Object. Compare-

Active :-I told him that; i.e.— Je lui ai dit cela. I told that (Dir. Obj.) to-him (Ind. Obj

Passive:-

The truth was told him. La vérité lui a été dite. but-He was told the truth. On lui a dit la vérité. (but not on any account—il a été dit la vérité).

- (2) If followed by an Infinitive, as—They are forbidden to stay; turn (a) by the Active, with on for Subj.:—On leur défend de rester. or (b) by the Passive, with il (Imper.):—Il leur est défendu de rester.
- A. 1. Lui ont-ils demandé s'il leur est permis de toucher à cet album?
- Comment vos parents se plaisent - ils aux bains de mer? S'y délassent - ils de leurs fatigues?
- 3. Ne lui pardonnerez-vous pas de vous avoir nui dans cette affaire?
- 4. Ces jumeaux ne ressemblentils pas frappamment à leur père?
- 5. N'abusez pas de sa patience, ou bien il vous en cuira!
- 6. Puis-je me fier à cet homme?
- 7. Vous apercevez-vous enfin de votre erreur?
- 8. Il ne manque de rien, n'estce pas?

Oui; mais il leur a répondu qu'il leur est défendu d'y toucher.

Ils s'y plaisent tellement qu'ils ont grande envie d'y rester jusqu'à la rentrée des classes.

Je *lui pardonne* pour cette fois ; mais je *lui conseille* de n'y pas retourner.

Oui, et ils se ressemblent comme deux gouttes d'eau.

Je vous sais gré de votre avis.

Non, méfiez-vous-en; c'est un chevalier d'industrie.

Oui, j'en conviens; je me suis trompé de date.

Au contraire, il jouit d'une honnête aisance.

B. 1. Ask them if we are allowed to stay another fortnight.

2. Forgive them; they won't do it again! 3. Do you remember him!—No, I don't remember having known him. 4. How do you like this country!—I don't like it; it is too expensive to live in it. 5. Don't trust that mealy-mouthed man!

6. Do you doubt his sincerity!—I do. 7. Children should obey their parents. 8. I play the violin, and my youngest sister plays the piano. 9. I have advised her not to answer his letters.

10. What mistakes you have made in your French exercise!—One would say you had never been taught your grammar. 11. As he lacks authority he cannot make himself obeyed. 12. You are forbidden to go there. 13. That cannot be remedied.

14. He has been persuaded to renounce his claims. 15. He fell downstairs and broke his arm.

Summary of the different equivalents of to in French:-

(a) To, before a Noun standing as INDIRECT OBJECT (§ 12):-

I am writing to my banker.

Apply to the doorkeeper.

J'écris à mon banquier. S'adresser au concierge.

Thus also before *Pronouns* (other than Personal Conjunctive, see c, 1).

Obs.—to listen to, écouter:—Écoutez la raison.

- (b) to, before a Noun standing as Adverbial Complement after a Verb of Motion:—
- (1)=a, if the Noun is the name of a Locality (town, village, public or private edifice):—

He is gone to Antwerp. Il est allé à Anvers. Let us go to church, to school, etc. Allons à l'église, à l'école, etc.

(2)=en, if the Noun is the name of a Continent, Country, Province etc.:—

They have emigrated to America. Ils ont émigré en Amérique.

Thus—Le papillon voltige de fleur en fleur.

Cela va de mal en pis (from bad to worse).

Obs.—Before names of Countries, however, which (by exception) are mass., or used in the plural only, à is preferred:—

Aller au Canada, au Pérou, au Japon, aux Etats-Unis, etc.

- (c) TO, before a PERSONAL PRONOUN-OBJECT:-
- (1) by the objective form of the Pronoun, if it is Conjunctive (§ 25):—They give it to-me, to-you, to-him, On me (te, lui, etc.) le donne.

Send it to-me, etc.

Envoyez-le-moi, etc.

(2) by a, if the Pron. is Disjunctive (Emphatic, § 31, and Ex. 76):—Apply to-him, and not to-her. Adressez-vous à lui, et non pas à elle.

Obs.—After Verbs of motion, however, complemented by Nouns or Pronouns denoting Persons, à is often best avoided:—

Venez auprès de moi.

Venez me voir.

Allons chez lui.

(d) TO, before a VERBAL NOUN (Infinitive, or Gerund in -ing) must be rendered according to Exs. 18-20:—

I prefer to stay.
I am pleased to see you.
We are ready to start.

J'aime mieux rester. Je suis charmé de vous voir. Nous sommes prêts à partir.

- A. 1. Comment voulez-vous que je subvienne à tous leurs besoins?
- 2. Est-il résigné à son sort?
- 3. Est-ce à votre cuisinier ou à votre cocher que vous voulez parler?
- 4. Est-ce bien là la route de Paris ; ou me serais-je trompé de chemin ?
- Veuillez, je vous en prie, me prêter l'oreille pour un moment!
- 6. Lui avez-vous fait savoir à qui s'adresser?
- 7. Leur avez-vous entendu dire cela?

Donnez toujours, car donner aux pauvres c'est prêter à Dieu.

Oui, il y est résigné.

Ni à l'un ni à l'autre; c'est au jardinier que j'en veux.

Allez tout droit devant vous, et quand vous serez arrivé à la fontaine, prenez à droite, et ensuite à gauche.

Vous n'avez qu'à parler, je vous écoute.

Oui, je lui ai envoyé dire de s'en remettre au ministre.

Non, au contraire, nous leur croyons assez de discrétion pour se taire.

B. 1. The way to hell is said to be paved with good intentions.

2. Help thyself, and heaven will help thee!

3. If you will not listen to reason, you will rue it when it is too late.

4. Come to us and tell us what has happened to you.

5. Bring him a wine-glass.

6. Where has your grandfather gone to —He has gone to Spain; and my aunt has gone to Brazil.

7. The approach of night made him quicken his steps.

8. The conceited raven listened to the flattering voice of the sly fox.

9. Let them know to whom they are indebted for this important service.

10. I have never heard him say that he is not ready to listen to you.

11. What is (say—does) that to me?

12. We shall be pleased to go and meet them.

13. Our journey to France has been postponed.

14. Am I to apply to him or to them?—You had better apply to us.

Summary of the different French equivalents of OF :-

(a) OF, before a Noun, or Pron. standing as Indir. Obj. or Compl., = de:

Le retour de l'hirondelle annonce l'approche du printemps. Le flambeau des lettres a dissipé la nuit de l'ignorance.

Obs. 1.—Verbs of thinking, however, take à:-

to think of, penser (songer) à; * réfléchir à; to dream of, rêver (songer) à:—
A qui penses-tu?—A lui.

Y songez-yous? (Seriously?)

* Penser de, means to have an opinion about :—

Que pensez-vous de cette entreprise?

Qu'en pensez-vous?—What do you think of-it?

Notice also-

It is very kind (unkind) of him. A friend of mine.

What will become of me?

C'est fort aimable (mal) à lui. Un ami à moi. Que deviendrai-ie?

Obs. 2.—The following take no preposition:—
to admit of, admettre; to accept of, accepter; to approve of, approuver, trouver bon:
J'approuve vos sentiments. Cela n'admet aucune exception.

(b) OF, before a Pers. Pron. of the 3d pers. denoting a thing (§ 26):—We shall speak of-it again. Nous en reparlerons.

(c) Of, before a Relat. Pronoun (§ 35):—

An enterprise the success of which is doubtful.

There is the very man of whom I was speaking.

The entreprise dont le succès est douteux.

Voilà l'homme même dont (de qui, or duquel) je parlais.

B. 1. Was it not very kind of them to have come to see us?

2. What on earth (= done) are you thinking of?—I am thinking of you.

3. Reflexive Verbs are conjugated with être in the compound tenses: that is a rule which admits of no exception.

4. What has become of him?—That is no concern of mine.

5. Do you approve of his staying here another week?—I do.

6. I have a house of my own.

7. There is nothing of (about) which I am (Ex. 13) more certain.

8. That is a venture the end of which it is difficult to foresee.

9. Since I have lost my companion, I always dream of her.

10. What do you think of it?

English Prepositions and their renderings in French.

ABOUT.

(1) in the sense of around—

Look about you. Regardez autour de vous. Prenez garde à vous. Why keep such people about you? Pourquoi garder de telles gens auprès de vous?

(2) denoting nearness in time and space—

He is about ten years old.

It is about noon.

About eight o'clock. I am (I was) about to leave. Il a environ dix ans. Il est vers midi. Il s'en va midi.

Sur les (vers) huit heures. Je vais (j'allais) partir.

Je suis (étais) sur le point de partir. Have you your knife about you? Avez-vous votre couteau sur vous?

(3) in the sense of concerning, with regard to-What are you talking about? De quoi parlez-vous?

What are you thinking about? I am uneasy about him. Much ado about nothing.

A quoi songez-vous ? Je suis inquiet sur son compte. Beaucoup de bruit pour rien. What is it all about? De quoi s'agit-il? De quoi est-il question?

ABOVE.

In the sense of higher than, more than, upwards of-2000 feet above the sea-level. 2000 pieds au-dessus du niveau de la mer. Above an hour. Plus d'une heure. Ichose. He is above doing such a thing. Il est trop fier pour faire une telle

N.B.—Adverbially:—en haut; là-haut; d'en haut (from above). Above-mentioned. Ci-dessus mentionné.

AFTER.

(1) with respect to time, place, order, rank— Après midi.

After noon. After a time. Day after day. The day after.

will start.

Au bout de quelque temps. De jour en jour. Le lendemain. Let us breakfast, after which we Déjeunons, après quoi nous nous mettrons en route.

> (2) in the sense of from, according to— D'après nature.

After nature. After the French fashion.

A la (mode) française.

(1) Time when; Place where-

At what time?—At noon. At night. A quelle heure?—A midi. De nuit. At the same time. At that time. At home.

At the confectioner's. At school; at church. At sea; at hand. He entered at the window.

At a fountain.

En même temps. A cette époque. A la maison (chez moi, etc.) Chez le confiseur. A l'école ; à l'église. Sur mer; sous la main. Il entra par la fenêtre. Auprès d'une fontaine.

(2) answering to the question at what?-

To play at cards. To be at war (at peace).

To be good (a good hand) at.

What is he at? Life is at stake.

To be astonished (surprised at)...

To rejoice at. To laugh at. To be at an end.

To look at; to aim at.

Jouer aux cartes.

Etre en guerre (en paix). S'entendre (se connaître) en.

Qu'est-ce qu'il fait ? Il y va de la vie.

Etre étonné (surpris) de...

S'étonner de (§ 6)... Se réjouir de.

Rire de ; se moquer de.

Etre fini.

Regarder; viser.

BEFORE.

(1) in time, rank, order-Avant dix heures.

Before ten o'clock. The day before yesterday. The adjective in English is put before the noun.

Avant hier.

En anglais l'adjectif se place avant le substantif.

(2) in place—

Before the house. Before my eyes. N.B.—(a) A year before (adverb).

(b) Before you go there (conj.)

Devant la maison. Sous mes yeux. Un an auparavant. Avant d'y aller; or avant que vous y alliez.

BY.

(1) indicating neighbourhood, nearness—

By the fire. Close by. By the wayside.

Sit by me. I have none by me. Près du feu. Tout près. Sur le bord de la route ; au bord

du chemin. Assieds-toi à côté de moi.

Je n'en ai pas sur moi. (2) indicating time—

By day; by night. By the end of the week.

De jour ; de nuit. Vers la fin de la semaine. By this; by this time twelvemonth. A ce moment; d'ici à un an.

By post; by this means. By land and by water. To know by name, by sight. He is an Englishman by birth. He is by trade a greengrocer. It is six by my watch. To judge by his appearance. You will gain nothing by it. To sell by the pound; by weight. By the week.

(3) denoting instrument, medium, way, test, etc. — Par la poste ; par ce moyen. Par terre et par eau. Connaître de nom, de vue. Il est Anglais de naissance. Il est fruitier de son état. Il est six heures à ma montre. A en juger d'après son air. Vous n'y gagnerez rien. Vendre à la livre; au poids.

A la semaine.

(4) denoting comparison, proportion— Plus âgé (or-mon, ton, etc. aîné) de dix ans. Older by ten years. The wall is 10 feet high, by 15 long. Le mur a 10 pieds de hauteur, sur 15 pieds de longueur.

FOR.

(1) in the sense of instead of, in exchange, in behalf (for the sake) of— To die for the fatherland. Mourir pour la patrie.

He offered me a pound for my dog. Il m'offrit vingt - cing francs de (pour) mon chien.

That will serve me for a blanket. In reward for his services. For example, for instance,

Cela me servira de couverture. En récompense de ses services. Par exemple.

(2) in the sense of concerning, about, as regards, with respect to-As for me (for my part). Quant à moi.

(3) in the sense of because of, out of-

He cannot contain himself for joy. For fear of offending him. I am sorry for it.

Il ne se sent pas de joie. De crainte de l'offenser. J'en suis fâché.

(4) denoting fitness, meetness, duty, etc.—

It is for tyrants to fear. It was for you to obey.

C'est aux tyrans à trembler. C'était votre devoir (à vous) d'obéir.

Notice also—Engl. for, (5) = French Accusative (Dir. Obj.)-To ask for, demander, To hope for, espérer.

To look (search) for, chercher. To wish for, désirer.

(6) = French de-

To answer for, répondre de. To care for, se soucier de.

Sorry for, fâché de. To thank for, remercier de.

(7) = French à-

Fit for, propre (convenable) à. Ready for, prêt à.

To be...for...to, être à...de (or à) (see 4).

(8) = French Verb in the Infinitive-

To call for, venir (aller) prendre. To go for, aller chercher (aller faire).

To send for, envoyer chercher, faire venir.

Caution.—For, denoting a period (past or pending), is generally not to be rendered by pour, see p. 91:-

I have not seen him for a long time. Il y a longtemps que je ne l'ai vu. He has been playing for this hour. Voilà une heure qu'il est à jouer. He only stayed for a week.

He travelled for several years.

We have watched him for hours.

Il ne s'arrêta qu'une semaine.

Il voyagea pendant plusieurs années.

Nous l'avons regardé faire des heures entières, or, Nous avons passé des heures à le regarder faire.

He has been known for many years.

On le connaît depuis bien des années.

FROM.

(1) in the sense of away from—

From Paris to Lyons. I come from there. He was from home.

De Paris à Lyon. J'en viens. Il était sorti.

(2) in the sense of down from—

He looked from the hill.

Il regarda du haut de la colline.

(3) in the sense of on the part of-

Greet him from me. Have you heard from him? I have not heard from home. Saluez-le de ma part. Avez-vous eu de ses nouvelles? Je n'ai pas eu de nouvelles de chez

(4) in the sense of according to, after-

From what I can see.

D'après ce que je puis voir.

(5) in the sense of because of, out of-He did it from ignorance. I speak from my heart.

Il le fit par ignorance. Je parle du cœur.

(6) in the sense of since, from the time of-From his infancy. From this day henceforward. On and from the 1st of July.

Depuis (dès) sa jeunesse. A partir d'aujourd'hui. A partir du premier juillet.

Caution. - From, after Verbs of taking, removing, concealing, etc., is generally rendered by a; if followed by a Personal Pronoun, by the Indirect Objective case :-

They took his watch from him. ThusOn lui prit sa montre.

To borrow from, emprunter à. To escape from, échapper à (de).

To hide from, cacher à. To snatch from, arracher à.

IN.

(1) in the sense of inside, into, place where, time when-

(a) before Nouns qualified by an Article, Adjective, or Pronoun:-

In this house (town). In Southern France.

Dans cette maison (ville). Dans la France méridionale, or

In the winter of 1812.

dans le midi de la France. Dans l'hiver de 1812.

In the Crimean War. In a month (fortnight). Early in the morning.

Dans la guerre de Crimée. Dans un mois (quinze jours). De grand matin; de bonne heure.

(b) before Nouns not qualified by any Determinative Art. or Adj. :-

In town; in France. In winter; in times of war. In a month's time.

En ville; en France. En hiver; en guerre.

Obs.-Not infrequently, no preposition is used :-La fourmi jouit l'hiver du fruit cueilli pendant l'été. (c) before Names of Towns, Villages, Localities, etc. :-

In Paris; in Dom Remy.

A Paris; à Dom Remy

In the first floor.

Au premier étage.

In the kitchen, garden, etc. A la cuisine, au jardin, etc

Sword in hand. L'épée à la main.

(d) after a Superlative:-

The finest house in the town. La plus belle maison de la ville.

(e) in the sense of during:—

In this bad weather. Par ce mauvais temps; or,
Par le mauvais temps qu'il fait.

(f) in the sense of under-

In the reign of William the Third. Sous le règne de Guillaume III.

(2) in the sense of with respect to, according to-

In this manner. De cette manière.

The manner in which he sets about it. La manière dont il s'y prend.

(3) denoting proportion—

One in a thousand, Un sur mille.

Nine times in ten. Neuf fois sur dix.

For in, followed by a Verb in -ing, see p. 105:—

He succeeded in escaping. Il réussit à échapper. N.B.—in it, dedans:—S'il n'est pas dedans, il est dehors.

INTO.

(1) generally dans or à :- Tomber dans l'eau.

but (2) after Verbs of changing, dividing, translating, = en :-

To change into, changer en. To divide into, diviser en. To transform into, transformer en. To translate into, traduire en.

OFF.

A mile off the coast. A un mille de la côte.

The ship lay off Dover. Le vaisseau était à la hauteur de Douvres.

Dido dined, it is said, off the back "Didon dîna, dit-on, du dos d'un of a fat turkey."

ON, UPON.

(1) denoting position above—

On (upon) the table. Sur la table.

Frankfort-on-the-Main. Francfort-sur-le-Mein. On our knees. A genoux.

On board a ship.

On horseback; on foot.

A bord d'un vaisseau.

A cheval; à pied.

(2) denoting position, nearness, direction, etc. —

On the right (left) side

On the right (left) side.

A droite, à gauche; du côté droit (gauche).

On this side; on my side.

De ce côté-ci; de mon côté.

(3) denoting time, dates, circumstances, occasion, etc.—

On the 30th of June : on the eve. Le 30 juin : la veille.

On Monday next; on the next day. Lundi prochain; le lendemain.

On a dark night. On his arrival.

On being told. On (upon) it.

N.B.-With names of-

(1) Titles, headings:—On Usury.
(2) Instruments:—To play on the flute.
(3) Clothing:—With his gloves (boots) on. Ganté. Botté; chaussé.

Par une nuit sombre. A son arrivée. Lorsqu'on lui-dit.

Dessus.

OUT OF.

(1) in the sense of outside, without—

He ran out of the house. To throw out of doors.

Il courut hors de la maison.

Mettre à la porte.

(2) in the sense of through, across—

She looks out of the window. Elle regarde par la fenêtre.

(3) in the sense of from out—

He drank out of my glass.

Il but dans mon verre.

(4) in the sense of on account of—

Out of spite (cowardice). Out of fun (fear).

Par dépit (lâcheté). Par plaisanterie (peur).

OVER.

(1) implying motion, excess, across, beyond, etc.—

The dog leapt over the table. The fog spreads over the town, He is over head and ears in debt.

To wander over the whole land. The sailor swam over the river,

Le chien sauta par-dessus la table. Le brouillard se répand sur la ville. Il a des dettes par-dessus la tête. (Il est criblé (abîmé) de dettes.)

Errer par (parcourir) tout le pays. Le matelot traversa la rivière à la nage.

(2) implying rest, situation, etc.—

The heavens over our heads. Over the hills. The house over the way.

Le ciel au-dessus de nos têtes. Par delà les montagnes. La maison vis-à-vis (en face).

(3) implying superiority, sway, etc.—

Cæsar gained a victory over Pompey. César remporta une victoire sur Pompée.

(4) implying duration of time-

I cannot stay over the week.

Je ne puis rester au delà de la semaine.

Keep it over the winter. It is all over with him. Gardez-le pendant l'hiver. C'en est fait de lui.

N.B.—For SINCE, see p. 91.

THROUGH.

(1) in the sense of across, athwart, vid-

He cut his way through the enemy. Il se fit jour à travers (au travers de) l'ennemi.

On going to Paris, I passed through En allant à Paris, je passai par Rouen. Rouen.

(2) in the sense of because of, owing to, thanks to, by means of—

Through neglect (want of skill). Through the senses.

ADVERBIAL :- To be wet through. To read a letter through. I have heard him through.

Par négligence (maladresse). It is through him that I obtained it. C'est grâce à lui que je l'ai obtenu. Au moven des sens.

> Etre trempé jusqu'aux os. Lire une lettre d'un bout à l'autre Je l'ai écouté jusqu'au bout.

TILL, UNTIL.

Till to-morrow. It was not until then. Not until this evening.

N.B.-Till, conjunction :-Stay till he returns (Ex. 16).

Jusqu'à demain, d'ici à demain. Ce ne fut qu'alors.

Pas avant ce soir.

Attendez jusqu'à co qu'il revienne.

UNDER.

(1) in the sense of below, beneath, underneath—

Under my roof; under lock and key. Sous mon toit. Sous clef (clé). He carried a parcel under his arm. Il portait un paquet sous le bras.

(2) in the sense of less than-

All men under seventy.

Tous les hommes au-dessous de soixante-dix ans.

francs.

You will not get it under a hundred Vous ne l'aurez pas à moins de cent francs.

Sens dessus dessous (topsy-turvy) se dit en parlant de la situation d'un objet tourné de manière que ce qui devrait être dessus ou en haut, se trouve dessous ou en bas.

WITH.

(1) denoting together with, attended by, material or instrument—

Come with me. To pave with bricks. To write with a pen.

Venez avec moi. Carreler avec de la brique. Ecrire avec une plume.

(2) denoting the manner—

To defend one's self with courage. With all my heart. To light with gas.

Se défendre avec courage. De tout mon cœur. Eclairer au gaz.

(3) denoting an accessory circumstance or characteristic feature—

With tears in his eyes. The man with the red nose. Les larmes aux yeux. L'homme au nez rouge.

(4) in the sense of at the house (home) of, in possession of—

How is it with you? Such was the custom with the Telie était la coutume chez les Romans.

Comment cela va-t-il chez vous? Romains.

(5) denoting measure, fulness—

Supplied (replete, filled, covered, Fourni, pourvu (rempli, couvert, crowned, etc.) with.... couronné, etc.) de....

Thus-

To arm with, armer de. To endow with, douer de. To honour with, honorer de. To load with, charger de. Attended with, accompagné de.

To overwhelm with accabler de. combler de. To present with { faire cadeau de. faire présent de. To surround with, entourer de, etc. To comply with, se conformer à; accéder à; satisfaire à; observer.

(6) denoting cause, feeling-

To blush with shame. To be satisfied with.

Rougir de honte. Etre content (satisfait) de.

Thus-

Delighted with, charmé (ravi) de. To die with, mourir de. Disgusted with, dégoûté de.

Enchanted with, enchanté de. Impressed with, frappé de. Smitten with, épris de.

Notice also-

To be acquainted with, connaître.

To reproach some one with..., reprocher...à quelqu'un:-

What have you to reproach him with? Qu'as-tu à lui reprocher? I profess the same faith with you. Je professe la même foi que vous.

Prépositions: 88ième Leçon: about, above, after, at, before (pp. 185-186).

1. What were they talking about?—About nothing. 2. How old is she ?- She says she is about seventeen: but I think she is above twenty-seven. 3. We were just about to go to church when he entered. 4. Pray, don't be uneasy about me: I know what I am about. 5. Is it not very hot to-day?—Yes. the thermometer is at eighty degrees above zero. That is equivalent to about thirty degrees centigrade. 6. Don't throw the helve after the hatchet. 7. I shall pay you the day after tomorrow; that is to say, if I happen to have any money about me. 8. Is not this etching after Rembrandt ? 9. Before starting, let me know your address. 10. You ought to have told me that before. 11. I expect to be there before you. 12. The tree stands (is) before the house. 13. We were dressed after the Greek fashion. 14. Let us have a game at chess! 15. We heartily rejoice at his success. 16. What are you laughing at ? -I laughed, because you used the preposition à after rire, and de after songer! 17. Just look at her! What is she at? 18. Are you not surprised at his discomfiture? 19. Our honour was at stake. 20. We were delighted at having succeeded at last.

89ième Leçon: by (p. 186).

1. My partner came and sat by me. 2. The King ended by giving his consent. 3. Where is the post-office?—It is close by the Exchange. 4. Robinson Crusoe travelled a great deal by land and by water, by day and by night. 5. Do you know these gentlemen?—We know them by sight. 6. There are people who grow richer by giving than others by receiving. 7. What time is it?—It is a quarter-past twelve by my watch. 8. The chief was preceded by scouts and followed by his retainers. 9. Who is he?—He is an Italian by birth and a musician by profession. 10. By what I have heard and read, these Indians are by far the most bloodthirsty tribe in this district. 11. It is by persevering that you will succeed. 12. The poor slave was bitten by a rattlesnake.

90ième Leçon: for (p. 187).

1. Is it not glorious to die for one's country !-- Of course! 2. Don't wait for me. 3. Have you sent for the doctor -We have. 4. As for me, I don't ask for anything better. 5. This blanket will serve me for a rug. 6. It is for them to do it, and not for us. 7. Are you not sorry for his mishap?—No, we are not at all sorry for it, for he has well deserved it. 8. When the raven heard the flattering voice of the fox, he could not contain himself for joy. 9. For heaven's sake, don't tell him that! Why not?—For fear of arousing his anger. 10. Call for me at half-past twelve, 11. We have not seen them for a long time. 12. The naughty boy was punished for telling an untruth !- Serves him right. 13. Translate this passage word for word. 14. This horse is too dear for me to think of buying it. 15. As for me. I shall not ask them for anything. 16. I don't care for it; do you !- No, all I wish for, is to be let alone.

91ième Leçon : from (p. 188).

1. Where did the pupil come from ?—From school. 2. When you look down from the top of the Righi, you can see eleven lakes. 3. Have you heard from your friends in Canada?—We have not heard from them for a long time. 4. From what we gather, they are now in the United States. 5. France extends from the Mediterranean and the Pyrenees in the south to the Channel in the north. 6. The Italian brigands took all our money from us. 7. The poor sparrow was so hungry that he picked the breadcrumbs from my hand. 8. Men do not gather figs from thistles. 9. Look at those naughty little urchins; they are actually playing with a matchbox! take it from them. 10. Our gallant soldiers took several hundred prisoners from the enemy. 11. If you have a secret, don't conceal it from me; I am discretion itself!—So am I!

92ième Lecon: in, into (pp. 188-189).

1. In summer we get up before sunrise. 2. In the summer of last year it rained almost continually. 3. Rubens lived in Belgium. In what part of Belgium III Antwerp. 4. Molière was born in 1622. In what town 1-In Paris. 5. Walter Scott wrote that novel in a fortnight. 6. In a fortnight we shall leave for the Engadine. In what country is the Engadine situated ?—In South-Eastern Switzerland. 7. In the winter of 1812 a great part of the French army perished in the snow (plur.) of Russia. 8. Don't go out in this damp weather, or you will catch a cold. 9. Translate this beautiful passage of Pascal's Pensées into English. 10. When the miser Harpagon found that some one had taken his money from him, he flew into a passion. He declared he would have everybody hanged for it. 11. He persists in repeating that old story, although nobody will believe in it. 12. The Jacobins entered the royal palace sword in hand. 13. We shall have great pleasure in seeing you next week. 14. In this manner you will never succeed in persuading anybody.

93ième Leçon : off, on, upon (pp. 189-190).

1. On Christmas Day we dined off a fat turkey. 2. The French fleet lay off Cape Gibraltar. 3. Some of the guests came on horseback, others on foot. 4. On our arrival we were shown into the dining-room, where the family were (was) sitting at table. 5. Put your hat on. 6. On being told that the house was inhabited by ogres, the poor babes burst into tears. 7. "Have pity on us poor starvelings," cried they in a lamentable voice, on the ogress desiring them to enter the parlour. 8. I insist upon your returning there at once. 9. The rich upstart had heavy gold rings on his fingers. 10. The traveller came on an important business. 11. Racine was born on the 20th of December 1639. 12. Shall you come on Monday ?-No, I shall be on duty. 13. That depends on you.

94ième Leçon: out of, through, till, towards, over, under (pp. 190-191).

1. Turn these brawlers out of doors. 2. Whilst we were looking out of the window, the thieves rushed out of the house. 3. The bird was so tame that it drank out of my glass. 4. Taking snuff is now quite out of fashion. 5. Travelling from England to Switzerland we passed through Calais, Rheims, and Belfort. 6. It is through the minister that I obtained my situation. 7. When we reached home, we were wet through and through. 8. Will you not wait until we have made up our minds to start? 9. I shall wait for you until next Wednesday. 10. We shall not reply to this letter until we know with whom we have to deal. 11. Towards the end of the week we shall sail to Antwerp. 12. Can you jump over this hedge?—I can. 13. Robinson Crusoe wandered over his island. 14. My nephew and I are living under the same roof. 15. Children under twelve will have free admission.

95ième Leçon: with (p. 192).

1. Will you come with me?—With great pleasure. summits of the Alps are covered with snow even in summer. Are you angry with me, dear Charlie ?-Yes, it is all over with our friendship. 4. You ought to blush with shame! 5. What is the matter with him?—He is dying with rage. 6. Do you think he will comply with my request?-With all his heart. 7. The poor captives entreated the proud conqueror in a low voice and with tears in their eyes to deal leniently with them. 8. What will you take ?-Steak with potatoes, and coffee with milk. 9. We nearly died with laughter. 10. It is customary with the English and Germans to keep Christmas as a merry festival. 11. Are you acquainted with that man there with the red nose !-No, I don't keep company with snobs. 12. It does not rest with me to comply with your demand. 13. On being told that I was bringing him money, the miser received me with open arms. 14. With these words the poor girl burst into tears. 15. I have nothing to reproach myself with.

APPENDICES.

I.	Rules of Gender: Gender of Nouns ascertained—		PAGE
	(a) by Meaning		198
	(b) by Ending	•	198
	(c) by Derivation	•	199
	(c) by Deribution	•	100
II.	Nouns of both Genders, with Different Meaning	vgs	
	(a) Masc. denoting a being; fem. a thing (or action)		200
	(b) Homonyms of different origin and gender .		200
	(c) Names of colours		201
	(d) Names of produce, etc		201
	(e) Feminine Names applied to Males		202
III.	IRREGULAR FEMININE-FORMATIONS—		
	(a) Feminine in -sse; (b) Feminine in -eresse		202
	(c) Feminine in -ice, -ante, -ine, elle, etc		203
	(d) Names of Males and Females altogether different		203
	(e) Alphabetical List of Irregular Feminine Forms	of	
	Adjectives		204
IV.	Plural of Nouns—		
	(a) Nouns not used in the Singular		204
	(b) Nouns with additional meaning in the Plural		205
V.	Adjectives with Different Meanings before	OR	
	AFTER THE NOUN	•	206
WI	Alphabetical List of Irregular Verbs .		207
٧1.	ALPHABETICAL LIST OF TRREGULAR VERBS .	•	201
VII.	COMPARATIVE TABLE OF FRENCH, LATIN, AND ENGLI	SH	
	Suffixes		208
VIII.	DIVISION OF SYLLABLES		209

I.—GENDER OF NOUNS.

(a) GENDER OF NOUNS ASCERTAINED BY MEANING:-N.B.—Exceptions to Rules are not given,

MASCULINE: the Names of :-

(1) Males:-l'homme; le lion.

(2) Days, Months, Seasons, and Winds:-

le lundi : le mai : le printemps : l'aquilon ; le mistral.

le fer ; le Vésuve ; le pommier.

FEMININE: the Names of:—

(1) Females:—la femme: la lionne.

(2) Virtues and Vices :-

la foi : la charité : l'espérance : la paresse; l'avarice.

(3) Metals, Mountains, Trees: (3) Arts and Sciences: la médecine; la botanique. Plur. Names of Mountains: - les Pyrénées.

(4) Countries and Towns:-

not ending in -e mute:le Portugal; le Danemark. Paris est bien beau.

ending in -e mute:la France : la Grande Bretagne. Venise la belle.

(5) Flowers, Fruits, and Precious Stones:-

not ending in -e mute:le raisin (grape); le lis (lily). le diamant : le rubis.

ending in -e mute:la pomme; la rose. la topaze; la perle.

(6) Other Parts of Speech used as Nouns:-

le boire et le manger : le pourquoi et le parce que.

(b) GENDER ASCERTAINED BY ENDING:-

MASCULINE: Nouns ending in-(1) a Sounded Vowel or

Diphthong :l'opéra; le café; le feu; le clou; le château ; l'emploi.

(2) a Consonant (b, c, d, g, l, p, q, z, without exception)-

le plomb; le suc; le lard; le sang; le col; le soleil; le moment; le cap; le coq; le nez.

(3) -aire; -age, -ège; -asme, -isme; -iste; -cle; -ème, -ôme:le dictionnaire; le voyage; le cortège; l'enthousiasme; le schisme : un article ; un obstacle ; le système ; le diplôme.

FEMININE: Nouns ending in-(1) e mute preceded by a Vowel or Double Consonant :-

la proie, la pluie.

la bataille; la consonne.

(2) -eur; -ion, -son, -çon; if abstract -- la peur; la nation; la raison; la leçon.

Masc. if concrete :- le semeur : le poisson; le bastion; le soupcon.

(3) -ance, -ence;

-ace, -ude, -ade; une, -ure; -ière, -oire : -té, -tié :--

la constance ; la présence ; la face ; l'étude ; la salade ; la lune ; la nature; la prière; la gloire; la beauté; la pitié.

(c) GENDER ASCERTAINED BY DERIVATION

(for Latin Students).

Upwards of 90 per cent of French Nouns have the same gender as the Latin Nouns from which they are derived, reckoning the French Masculine as the substitute for the Latin Neuter Nouns (most of which were merged into the Masculine in French):—

RULES.

CHIEF EXCEPTIONS.

(1) French Nouns derived from Latin Masculine Nouns are Masculine :—

I. le poète (poëtam).*

II. le mur (murum). le livre (librum).

III. le pied (pedem). un ordre (ordinem).

IV. le fruit (fructus).

Nearly all Nouns in -or, -os, however, have become Feminine in French:—
la douleur, la fleur, la peur, etc.

la comète; la planète.

la grenouille (ranunculus).

la cendre (cinerem); la dent (dentem). la souris (soricem); la fin (finem).

Only honneur, labeur, pleurs, amour (sing.), have remained masc.

* The Accusative of Latin Nouns is given, from which form most French Nouns are derived.

(2) Most Nouns derived from Latin Neuter Nouns have become Masculine in French:—

II. le verbe (verbum). l'argent (argentum).

le voyage * (viaticum).

III. le corps (corpus).
le marbre (marmor).
le lait (lac), un os (os).

* As there are hundreds of Nouns in -age, all mass. (except six or seven only), notice this important Rule.

About 120, however, have become feminine; evidently owing to their frequent occurrence in the pluval, the endings -a, -ia of which caused them to be mistaken for fem. Nouns in -a, -ia of the first Declension. Notice especially—

une arme (pl. arma); la bible (pl. biblia); la date (pl. data); la dette (pl. debita); l'étude (pl. studia); la feuille (pl. folia); l'huile (oleum); la joie (pl. gaudia); la mer (maria); etc.

(3) Most Nouns derived from Latin Feminine Nouns have remained Feminine in French:—

I. la famille (familia). l'eau (aqua).

II. la méthode (methodus).

III. la charité (caritatem). la vertu (virtutem).

IV. la main (manus).

V. la face (faciem).

un épi (spica; Low. Lat. spicus); un ongle (ungula).

le dialecte (dialectus).

le front (frontem). un arbre (arborem); and most names of trees:—le pin, le cyprès, etc. le porche (porticus).

un rien (rem).

II.—NOUNS WHICH ARE MASCULINE OR FEMININE, ACCORDING TO MEANING.

† Not a few of these are homonyms of altogether different origin, the identity of the words being quite fortuitous.

(a) Mass. if denoting a living being; Fem. if denoting a thing (or action):

un aide, assistant.

un aigle, eagle.

le critique, critic.

un enseigne (obsol.), ensign.

le foudre (de guerre, d'éloquence), used metaphorically.

le fourbe, knave.

le garde, keeper.

le guide, quide. le manœuvre, labourer, workman,

hodman, etc. le mousse, + cabin-boy.

le page, + page (boy).

le paillasse, clown. le pivoine, bullfinch.

le statuaire, statuary (sculptor).

le teneur, holder, keeper.

le trompette, * trumpeter.

une aide, assistance.

une aigle, standard. la critique, criticism.

une enseigne, flag.

la foudre, lightning, thunderbolt.

la fourbe, knavery.

la garde, watch, nurse, hilt.

les guides (f. pl.), reins.

la manœuvre, handiwork, seamanship, rigging.

la mousse, † moss, froth. la page, + page (of a book).

la paillasse, mattress.

la pivoine, peony.

la statuaire, statuary (art). la teneur, tenour, purport.

la trompette, * trumpet.

* As a rule, however, the gender of the musical instrument is applied to the player (see p. 202).

N.B.—le mort, la morte, the dead person. | la mort, death, demise. | la pupille, pupil (of eye

la personne, person.

la pupille, pupil (of eye).

personne . . . ne (Pron.), nobody, no one.

(b) Homonyms denoting different things according to gender:—

un aune, † alder tree.

le barbe, + barb.

le couple, pair, couple.

le crêpe, crape.

le faux, + forgery. le foret, † drill, gimlet.

le greffe, record-office.

un hymne, lyric poem.

le livre, + book.

le manche, handle.

le mémoire, memorandum,

le merci, thanks.

le mode, mood, manner.

une aune, † ell.

la barbe, † beard. la couple, brace, couple.

la crêpe, pancake.

la faux, + scythe.

la forêt, † forest. la greffe, graft.

une hymne, hymn, anthem.

la livre, † pound.

la manche, sleeve.

la mémoire, memory,

la merci, mercy, pity.

la mode, fashion.

le moule, + mould, cast.

l'œuvre, collected works of an engraver or musician.

un office, office.

l'orgue (sing.), organ. le palme, hand-breadth. Pâque(s), Easter.

le parallèle, comparison. le pendule, pendulum.

le période, highest pitch.

le physique, bodily constitution.

le pique, spade at cards.

le plane, + Norway maple.

le platine, platina.

le poêle, stove, pall. le poste, post, station. le prétexte, + pretext.

le relâche, relaxation.

le remise, fly (coach).

le solde, balance (of account).

le somme, † slumber, nap. le tour, † turn, tour, trick lathe, etc.

le triomphe, triumph. le vague, † vagueness

le vapeur, steamer. le vase, † vase, vessel.

le voile, veil,

la moule, † mussel, cockle. une œuvre, work, deed.

une office, larder, pantry, servant's

les orgues (see p. 199, 2), organs.

la palme, palm-tree. la Pâque, Passover.

Pâques fleuries, Palm Sunday.

la parallèle, parallel line. la pendule, clock, time-piece.

la période, period, epoch.

la physique, + natural philosophy.

la pique, pike, pique, spite, etc. la plane,† draw-knife, etc.

la platine, lock-plate, etc.

la poêle, frying-pan. la poste, post-office.

la prétexte,† prætexta, Romantunic.

la relâche, putting into port.

la remise, coach-house, remittance, delay.

la solde, soldier's pay.

la somme, † sum, burden.

la tour, † tower. la triomphe, trump.

la vague, † wave, billow. la vapeur, steam, vapour.

la vase, + slime, mud.

la voile (see p. 199, 2), sail.

(c) Names of colours derived from names of flowers, fruits, etc., are masc., though the name of the thing from which they are derived is Fem.:—

la cerise, cherry.

la paille, straw.

la pourpre, purple, imperial dignity.

la rose, rose.

le cerise, cerise, cherry-colour.

le paille, straw-coloured.

le pourpre, purple (purpure). le rose, rose-coloured, pink.

(d) The same distinction holds good with names of wines, cigars, etc.:—

la Bourgogne, Burgundy.

la Champagne, Champagne.

la Havane, Havanna.

la Gruyère (a district in Switzerland).

la Saxe, Saxony.

le bourgogne,* Burgundy wine.

le champagne, champagne. le havane, Havanna cigar.

le gruyère, Gruyère cheese.

le Saxe, Dresden porcelain, etc.

^{*} Purists, however, will have it that vin de Bourgogne, etc., alone is correct. Compare the amusing story Le diner de l'abbé Delille.

202

(e) Nouns, feminine in gender, though denoting males :-

la caution, bail, surety. la connaissance, acquaintance. la pratique, customer. la victime, victim. la visite, visitor.

and the following military terms :-

une estafette, express messenger. la recrue, recruit.

la sentinelle, sentinel, sentry. la vedette, mounted sentry. la vigie, look-out.

la ronde, round.

la dupe, dupe.

la clarinette, clarionettist. la basse-taille, bass, base,

la flûte, flutist.

III.—IRREGULAR FORMATION OF FEMININE OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

(a) Nouns which take -sse [esse = Lat. -issa] in the Feminine—

un abbé. abbot, une abbesse. un ogre, un âne. ass. une ânesse. le pair, le chanoine, canon, la chanoinesse. le pauvre,* le comte, earl, la comtesse. le druide. Druid, la druidesse. le prêtre, host. l'hôtesse. l'hôte, le prince, le larron. thief, la larronnesse. le maître, le Suisse,* master, la maîtresse. le nègre,* negro, la négresse. le tigre, le traître,

un ogre, ogre, une ogresse.
le pair, peer, la pairesse.
le pauvre,* pauper, la pauvresse (fam.)
le prêtre, priest, la prêtresse.
le prince, prince, la princesse.
le prophète, prophet, la prophétesse.
le Suisse,* Swiss, la Suissesse.

tiger, la tigresse.

traitor, la traîtresse.

* If used adjectively, those marked * remain unchanged in the Fem.

Thus also, but with alteration of the Stem-

le dieu, god, la déesse. | le duc, duke, la duchesse.

(b) For Nouns which form their Feminine by changing their ending -eur into -eresse (instead of eur-esse), see p. 54.

(The tonic accent falling on -esse, the accented -eur- is weakened into unaccented -er-; cp.—je viēns, n. věnons, etc.)

Notice also-

le devin, soothsayer, le doge, doge (of Venice), la devineresse.

le diacre, deacon,

diaconisse; or la diaconesse, Protestant sister of mercy. (c) Nouns which form their Feminine in -ice, -ante, -ine, -elle, -e, etc. (in most cases with alteration of the Stem)—

Le chanteur, singer; la cantatrice, professional singer. but—la chanteuse, amateur singer.

l'impératrice. l'empereur. emperor, la procuratrice. le procureur, proctor. le gouverneur, la gouvernante. governor. la servante. le serviteur. servant. le pastoureau. shepherd-boy. la pastourelle. le jouvenceau. lad. la jouvencelle. le compagnon, companion. la compagne. le chevreuil, roe-buck, la chevrette. le héros. hero, l'héroïne. le czar. tzar. la czarine. king, la reine. le dindon. turkeu. la dinde. le roi. duckling, le chameau, camel, la chamelle. le caneton. la canette. high-bailiff, la baillive. le jumeau, twin, la jumelle. le bailli. fallow-deer, la daine. le cochon. la coche. le daim. pig, wolf, la louve. la cane. le loup, le canard. duck, mule, la mule. le vieillard, old man, la vieille. le mulet,

(d) Names of Persons and Animals which differ radically in the Masculine and Feminine—

le neveu.

l'homme, man; la femme, woman.
le mari, husband; la femme, wife.
monsieur, Mr., madame, Mrs.
Sir, etc.;
le père, father; la mère, mother.
le frère, brother; la sœur, sister.
le garçon,* boy; la fille, girl.
l'oncle, uncle; la tante, aunt.
le gendre, son-in-la bru, daughterlaw; in-taw.
le parrain, god- la marraine, godfather; mother.
le bélier, ram; la brebis, ewe.

horse, la cavale.

son,

la fille

le cheval,

le fils,

le bouc, he-goat; lachèvre, she-goat. le bœuf, ox: la vache, cow. la poule, hen. le coa, cock: l'étalon, stallion; la jument, mare. le jars, gander; l'oie, goose. le lièvre, hare; la hase, doe-hare. le perroquet, la perruche, henparrot: parrot. le sanglier, wild la laie, wild sow. boar: [monkey. le singe, monkey; la guenon, shele taureau, bull ; la génisse, heifer. le verrat, boar; la truie, sow.

nephew,

le nourricier, foster-father, la nourrice.

la nièce.

Obs. 1.—Many names of living beings have no special forms to denote their sex, and are either mass. or fem. in gender, irrespective of sex: as

le léopard, la panthère, le renne, la souris, etc. The distinction of sex is expressed by adding mâle, or femelle: as,

Un canari male, un canari femelle; un démon femelle, a she-devil.

Thus also with names of plants:—un palmier mâle, un palmier femelle.

Obs. 2.—Most names of Professions remain unaltered, if applied to women:—
l'amateur, le docteur, le défenseur, l'auteur, l'écrivain, etc.

Thus also-un ange, un témoin.

^{*} la garce is only used in a bad sense.

(e) Alphabetical List of Adjectives which form their Feminine irregularly.

N.B.—Not included in the list are—Adjectives ending in -e mute (unchanged in the fem.), those in-f (f. -ve), in -x (f. -se), in -c (f. -que), in -eur (f. -euse or -eure), and those in -n (f. -nne), or -ell, -ell (f. -elle, -elle). Cf. pp. 52-54.

Mase		Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	
absous	9	absoute.	fat, faux,	no fem. fausse.	mou (mol), muet,	molle. muette.	
bas, beau (l	bel),	basse. belle.	favori, fluet,	favorite. fluette.	net, nouveau(nou	nette.	
bénin, bigot,		bénigne. bigotte.	fou (fol), frais,	folle. fraîche.	nul,	nulle.	
blanc, brunet		blanche. brunette.	franc, (but, langu	franche.	oblong,	oblongue.	
,			gentil,	gentille.	pécheur, profès,	pécheresse. professe.	
châtair coi,	•	no fem.	gras,	grasse.		provocatrice.	
no mas		coquette.	grec, gros,	grecque. grosse.	roux,	rousse.	
créater		créatrice.	hébreu,	no fem.	sec,	sèche.	
dispos,		no fem.	jumeau,	(hébraïque.) jumelle.	sujet,	sujette.	
dissous domina doux,		dissoute. dominatrice. douce.	las, long,	lasse.	tiers, traître,	tierce. traîtresse.	
épais, exprès,		épaisse. expresse.	maître,	maîtresse.	vengeur, vieux, vieillot,	vengeresse. vieille. vieillotte.	
Prouj	,			arrent Baros	11011100,	11011100000	

IV.—PLURAL OF NOUNS.

(a) List of Nouns not used in the Singular:-N.B.—Those marked * are occasionally used in the Singular. les aguets, m., watch, look-out. les frais, m., expenses, les alentours, m., neighbourhood, les funérailles, f., funeral, *les ancêtres, m., ancestors, les gens, m., people (la gent, fam.), *les annales, f., annals, records, les hardes, f., wearing-apparel, les appointements, m., salary, les intestins, m., entrails, emoluments, Coffices. les mânes, m., manes, les archives, f., archives, recordles mœurs, f., manners, morals, *les armoiries, f., coat of arms. les mouchettes, f., snuffers, les arrérages, m., arrears, les nippes, f., clothes, apparel, *les arrhes, f., earnest-money, les obsèques, f., obsequies, les atours, m., attire, les oubliettes, f., trap-dungeon, les pénates, m., household gods, les balayures, f., sweepings, les catacombes, f., catacombs, les pierreries, f., jewels, les confins, m., borders, les pleurs, m., tears, les décombres, m., rubbish, les prémices, f., first-fruits, *les délices, f., delight, les proches, m., relatives, les dépens, m., cost, expense, les sévices, f. (law) cruelty, les entrailles, f., + entrails, bowels, les ténèbres, f., darkness, les environs, m., environs, les thermes, m., hot springs, baths, les épinards, m., spinach, les vêpres, f., vespers, les fonts, m., font (baptismal), les vivres, m., provisions, victuals.

† And thus all words ending in -ailles [Lat. -alia]: les fiançailles, betrothal.

(b) Nouns which in the Plural assume an additional meaning:—

Obs. - Most of these are also used in the Plural with the same meaning as in the Singular.

l'aboi, m., bark, barking,

l'arme, f., weapon, l'arrêt, m., stoppage, judgment, l'assise, f., layer, stratum. l'auspice, m., augury, la bonne grâce, gracefulness,

le ciseau, chisel. la défense, defence, le denier, farthing, l'échec, m. (c=k), check, repulse, l'effet, m., effect, l'enfer, m., hell, l'esprit, m., spirit, ghost, mind, l'état, m., state, condition,

l'être, m., being, le faste, pomp, show, le fer, iron, le gage, pledge, pawn, la harde, herd of deer, leash, l'honneur, m., honour, l'instance, f., instance, lawsuit, le jour, day, la lettre, letter, la limbe, limb (of sun, moon), la lumière, light,

la lunette, telescope, le neveu, nephew, le papier, paper, la poursuite, pursuit, la pratique, practice, customer, la tablette, shelf, lozenge, la troupe, band, drove,

la trousse, bundle, truss, la vacance, vacancy, la veille, watch, vigil, eve,

les abois, last extremity, aux abois, at bay,

les armes, coat of arms, bearings,

les arrêts, arrest, les assises, assizes,

les auspices, auspices,

les bonnes grâces, good graces, favour,

les ciseaux, the scissors, les défenses, tusks,

les deniers, funds,

les échecs (c silent), chess, les effets, goods, effects,

les enfers, infernal regions, les esprits, senses, spirits,

les états (généraux, etc.), the States-General.

les êtres, parts of a house, les fastes, annals, records,

les fers, fetters, chains,

les gages, wages, les hardes, clothes,

les honneurs, dignities, honours,

les instances, entreaties,

les jours, life,

les lettres, literature,

les limbes, limbo, outskirts of hell. les lumières, intelligence, know-

ledge, les lunettes, spectacles,

les neveux, descendants, les papiers, documents, passport,

les poursuites, proceedings (law), les pratiques, intrigues, observances,

les tablettes, writing-tablets,

les troupes, troops, forces,

les trousses, breeches (fig. heels),

les vacances, vacations, les veilles, night labours.

V.—ADJECTIVES THE MEANING OF WHICH IS AFFECTED BY THEIR POSITION BEFORE OR AFTER THE NOUN.

une certaine chose, some thing, cher père, dear father, différentes choses,) several (sundry) diverses choses. things.

une fausse clef, a skeleton key, une fausse porte, a secret door, un honnête homme, honest man, un malhonnête homme, dishonest

un pauvre auteur, indifferent author, un plaisant conte. ridiculous tale. mon propre habit, my own coat, mon seul ami, my only friend, un vrai conte, a regular fib,

une chose certaine, a sure thing, un habit cher, an expensive coat, des articles diffé-

various, differrents. ent things, des articles divers. une clef fausse, wrong key (mus.), une porte fausse, sham door, un homme honnête, civil man, un homme malhonnête, uncivil

un auteur pauvre, needy author, un conte plaisant, amusing tale, un habit propre, clean coat, un ami seul, a friend alone,

un conte vrai, a true story, tale,

A few change their meaning only occasionally—

un brave homme, worthy man, d'une commune voix, unanimously, la dernière année, the last year of a period,

un grand homme, man of genius, une grande dame, lady of rank, un méchant homme, wicked man,

de méchants vers, poor verses, un petit homme, a short man, un homme brave, courageous man, une voix commune, vulgar voice, l'année dernière, last year,

un homme grand, tall man, une dame grande, tall lady, un homme méchant, slanderous man.

des vers méchants, stinging verses. un homme petit, mean fellow, etc.

VI.-ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

N.B.—For Compound Irregular Verbs, see the *simple* Verbs from which they are severally derived; thus, for s'endormir, see dormir; for ressortir, see sortir; for rasseoir, see asseoir, etc. Except the following, the simple forms of which are quite obsolete or wanting:—

For those in -saillir (as tressaillir), see assaillir, pp. 28, 29.

- ,, ,, -cevoir (as apercevoir, etc.), see recevoir, pp. 32, 33.
- ,, ,, -duire (as produire, etc.), see conduire, pp. 36, 37.
- ,, -(s)truire (as instruire, etc.), see construire, pp. 36, 37.
- ,, ,, -(s)crire (as transcrire), see écrire, pp. 36, 37.
- ,, ,, -aindre, -eindre (as contraindre), see plaindre, ceindre, pp. 36, 37.

The Compounds in -soudre, -choir, -clure, -fire, -seoir, are all given separately; see absoudre, résoudre, p. 42.

	P	AGE		P	AGE		P	AGE		P	AGE
absoudre		42	croître		40	maudire		38	requérir		31
acquérir		30	cueillir		28	mentir		26	résoudre		42
aller .	-	24	cuire		36	mettre		38	rire .		38
apparoir		34	déchoir		34	moudre		42	saillir		28
assaillir		28	devoir		32	mourir		30	savoir		32
asseoir		34	dire .		38	mouvoir		32	seoir.	34,	35
asservir		27	dormir		26	naître		40	sentir		26
battre		38	échoir		34	nuire		36	servir		26
boire,		40	éclore		42	oindre		37	sortir		26
bouillir		26	écrire		36	offrir		28	souffrir		28
braire		39	s'en aller		25	ouïr .		28	sourdre		42
bruire		42	s'enquérir		31	ouvrir		28	suffire		38
ceindre		36	envoyer		25	paître		40	suivre		38
choir.		35	faillir		26	paraître		41	surseoir		34
clore .		42	faire.		38	partir		26	taire .		40
conclure		40	falloir		32	peindre		37	teindre		37
conduire		36	feindre		37	plaindre		36	tenir .		30
confire		39	férir .		30	plaire		40	traire.		38
connaître		40	frire .		42	pleuvoir		32	tressaillir		29
conquérir		31	fuire.		28	poindre		37	vaincre		38
coudre		42	gésir.		30	pourvoir		35	valoir		32
couvrir		28	haïr .		17	pouvoir		32	venir.		30
courir		30	issir .		31	prendre		38	vêtir .		28
courre		31	joindre		36	quérir		31	vivre .		42
craindre		37	luire.		36	recevoir		32	voir .		34
croire.		40	lire .		40	repentir		26	vouloir	a	32

VII.—TABLE OF FRENCH, LATIN, AND ENGLISH SUFFIXES.

(a) Suffixes generally spelt alike in French and English-

```
-al (alis): -canal, original.
-able (abilis) :- affable, capable.
-ible (ibilis) :- possible, sensible.
-ence (entia) :- absence, science.
ent (entem):—prudent, impudent.
-ant (antem):—constant, abondant.
-acle (aculum) :—spectacle, oracle. -ion (ion-em) :—opinion, oration.
-age (aticum) :- age, voyage.
```

```
-ège (egium) :- sacrilège, cortège.
-ude (udo):-platitude, altitude.
-ice (itium) :- vice, solstice.
-ice (itia) :- notice, avarice.
```

-ile (ilis):-fragile, agile. -ine (ina): médecine.

-ure (ura) :- nature, figure.

(b) Suffixes generally spelt differently in French and English—

French.	Latin.	English.	Examples.
-aire	(arius, arium)	ary:	ordinaire = ordinary.
-ain	(anus, a, um)	an:	humain = human.
-oire	(orius, a, um)	ory:-	victoire = victory.
-ance	(antia)	ancy:-	enfance = infancy.
-eur	(or)	our:-	honneur = honour.
-teur	(tor)	or:-	pasteur = pastor.
-eux	(osus)	∫ous ·—	copieux = copious.
		\ y :-	spongieux = spongy.
-ée	(ata)	y:	armée = army.
-é	(atus)	y:	député=deputy.
-té	(tas)	y:	charité=charity.
-ie	(ia)	y:	furie=fury.
-ide	(idus)	id:—	frigide=frigid.
-isme	(ismus)	ism:—	prisme = prism.
-iste	(ista)	ist:—	copiste = copyist.
-ien	(ianus)	ian:—	chrétien = Christian.
-if (f. ive)	(ivus)	ive:-	captif = captive.
-ique	(icus, a, um)	ic:	musique = music.

(c) Verbal Suffixes-

-er = ate: - terminer = to termi-	-iser = ise, ize: fraterniser = to		
nate.	fraternise.		
-fler=fy:—glorifier=to glorify.	-user = use: -refuser = to refuse.		
-ir = ish:—établir = to establish.	-uter = ute:-computer = to compute.		

DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

In French the division of words into syllables is radically different from English, no regard being paid to the *etymological* components of a word. Compare—

English—Sumpt-uous; dict-ion-ar-y; pre-emin-ence.
French—Somp-tueux; dic-tion-nai-re; préé-mi-nen-ce.

The general Rules are that-

(1) every successive syllable should, so far as practicable, begin with a consonant (a consonant between two vowels belonging to the following vowel):—

gé-né-ro-si-té, ré-vo-lu-tion.

(2) two successive consonants are separated:—

feuil-le, im-mo-dé-ré, im-pos-si-ble,* ex-tinc-tion, etc.

* Except—bl, cl, fl, gl, pl; br, cr, dr, fr, gr, and r preceded by b, c, f, g, p; and r preceded by b, c, d, f, g, p, pr, tr, vr; and ch, ph, th, and gn, as:—

pro-blè-me, é-clair, pan-tou-fle, pro-gram-me, ap-pren-dre, é-troit, poi-vre, é-pi-ta-phe, a-po-stro-phe, cam-pa-gne, etc.

- (3) two or more successive vowels should, if possible, not be separated:
 - pa-pier, in-dus-trieux, im-pé-tueux, vou-laient, cin-quiè-me, etc.
 - Thus—bien, rien, ciel, miel, pays, hier, fler (adj.), vieux, vieil, Dieu, lieue, fruit, etc., being monosyllables, cannot be divided at all.

Obs.—An inflectional e mute added to an Adjective, Noun, or Verb, forms an additional syllable with the preceding consonant:—

m. rond (one syllable); f. ron-de (two syllables).
 Il vend (one syllable); qu'il ven-de, Subjunctive (two syllables).
 m. heu-reux (two syllables); f. heu-reu-se (three syllables), etc.

VOCABULARIES.

N.B.—The Numbers refer to the pages, except those preceded by a \$, which refer to the Sections.

I.—FRENCH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

ail, aulx, 49 (d), Obs.

A

à, to, at, in, 105, 180-186; in compound Nouns, 50 (3) abat-jour, m., lamp-shade, 51 (d) abattoirs, les, m., slaughter-house aboutir à, to end in absolu, absous, P. P. of absoudre absoudre, to absolve, 156 absous, absoute, absolved, 54 s'abstenir de, to abstain from accès, m., fit accompagner, to accompany accomplir, to accomplish, fulfil accord, m. agreement; d'-, agreed accourir, to hasten (run) to, 31 accroire, faire -, to make believe, accroître, to grow, 40 accueil, m., reception accueillir, to welcome, 29 acheter, to buy, purchase, 16* achever, to finish, accomplish, 16 acquérir, to acquire, 30, 128 acquitter, s', to pay one's debt actrice, f., actress, 54 (g), 3 adieu, good-bye, farewell! s'adresser à, to apply to affliger, to afflict, to grieve âgé (de), 168 agir, to act; il s'agit de, 23 aroul, arouls, grandfather aïeux, ancestors, 49 (d) aigu, sharp, 52, Obs. 1 aiguille, f., needle

aimanté, magnetised aimer, to love, to like aimer (a), to be fond of, 105 aimer mieux, to prefer, have rather aîné, elder, eldest, 168 ainsi, thus, so aisance, f., easy circumstances, competency aise, glad, happy (aisé, easy) ajouter, to add Allemagne, f., Germany allemand, German aller, s'en aller, to go (away), 122, 123; y aller, § 7; aller prendre, to call for alors, then âme, f., soul amener, to bring, lead ami, f. amie, friend amitié, f., friendship amusant, amusing amuser, to amuse an, m., year ancien, -ne, ancient, old âne, m., ass anglais, English Anglais, -e, Englishman (woman) Angleterre, f., England année, f., year, year's duration annoncer, to announce à peine, hardly, scarcely, 92 apercevoir, to perceive, 32, 129 apparoir, 34

appartenir, to belong, 30
il appartient (à), it behoves
appat, m., 49 (d), Obs.
appeler, to call, 16
s'appeler, to be called, 118
s'appliquer, to apply (one's self)
apporter, to bring, carry
apprendre, to learn, 38; to teach,
151
approche, f., approach

approche, f., approach approcher, to approach, to come near appui, m., support, corroboration

après, after, prep., 107 après que, after, conj., 92 après-demain, day after to-morrow à présent, now arbre, m., tree arc-en-ciel, m., 51 (b), rainbow argent, 1', m., silver, money arranger, to arrange, to suit

arriver, 13, to arrive; to happen,

impers., 22
assaillir, to assail, 28
asseoir, to seat, 34
s'asseoir, to sit down, 141
asservir, to enslave, 26
assez de, enough, 78
astreindre, to compel, 37

attaquer, to attack atteindre, to reach, 37, 142 attendre, to wait (for), expect, 83 attente, f., waiting, expectation

attirail, m., 48 (b), Obs. attirer, to attract, draw on au, aux, to-the, at-the, for-the, inthe, 44, 45

auberge, f., inn aubergiste, m., innkeeper, landlord

aucun,...ne, no, none, 75 (b) aujourd'hui, to-day, this day

aune, f., ell; savoir ce qu'en vaut l'aune, to know by experience, to have learnt at one's cost auprès de, near

aussi, adv., also; conj., with inversion of verb and subject, = consequently

aussi bien, in fact, anyhow

aussitôt, adv., immediately, instantly

aussitôt que, conj., as soon as, 92 autant(de),77(c),as much,as many auteur, m., author, authoress automne (m silent), m., autumn

autre, other, 75, 76 autrefois, formerly

avancer, to advance, to gain avant, prep., before, 101

avant de, avant que, conj., before avant-hier, the day before yesterday avec, with

avertir, to inform, warn avis, m., advice, warning

s'aviser (de), to think of, to take it into one's head

avoine, f., oats avoir, to have, 4, 5; y —, 23 avouer, to own, to confess, to admit

B

baigner, se, to bathe bal, le, pl. of, 48 (b), Obs. banc, le, bench, seat, form bannir, to banish bas, basse, low, 54, § 17 batir, to build

battre, to beat, 38, 151
se battre, to fight
beau, bell, belle, fine, bee

beau, bel, belle, fine, beautiful, 53 beaucoup, 46 (b), 77 (c), much, many, a great deal

bégayer, to stammer

bénin, bénigne, benign, 54, § 17 bénir, to bless, 17

bercail, le, pl. of, 48 (b)

besoin, le, need, want; avoir besoin de, to be in need of, to want besogne, f., work, job

bête, la, beast, animal, brute; adj., stupid

beurre, le, butter bien, well, very, very much, 79

bientôt, soon bienvenu, -e (le, la), welcome

bière, la, beer, ale bijou, le, trinket, 48 (a), Obs. 2

bis, brown

blanc, blanche, white, 54 blesser, to wound, hurt bleu, blue, 48 (a), Obs. 1 blond, blonde, fair boire, 40 (g), to drink bois, le, wood bon, bonne, good, kind faire bon, to be comfortable bonheur, le, happiness, luck bon mot, le, witty saying borne, la, limit botanique, la, botany botte, la, boot, truss, thrust bottier, le, bootmaker bouche, la, mouth bouillir, to boil, 26, 125 boulanger, le, baker bourse, la, purse, exhibition, bursary, Exchange boussole, la, compass bout, le, end, bit, short space braire, to bray, 39 bras, le, arm; les bras m'en tombent, I am dumfoundered breloque, la, trinket brique, la, brick bruire, to rustle, to roar, 42 bruissement, le, roaring bruit, le, noise brûler, to burn brun, brown bu, P.P. of boire, 40 (g) buvard, le, blotting-pad

C

cacher, to conceal
cacheter, to seal
cadavre, le, corpse
cadeau, le, present
cadet, le, younger, youngest, junior
cadran, le, dial, face (of a watch)
café, le, coffee, coffee-house
cahier, le, copybook
caillou, le, pebble, 48 (a)
cal, le, pl., 48 (b)
camarade, le, comrade
camp, le, camp
campagne, la, country, fields,
country-seat, campaign

canapé, le, sofa, sofa-bedstead cantatrice, la, 203 capituler, to capitulate car, for (conjunction) carnaval, le, pl. of, 48 (b) carte, la, card, map casser, to break cavalerie, la, cavalry ce, cet, cette, adj., this, 66; ce, pron., 67 c'est and il est compared, 70 ceci, cela, 67 (b) ceindre, § 11 (a), to gird celui, celle, ceux, 68(d)celui-ci, celui-là, 68 (c) ce que, ce qui, 74 censé, supposed centimètre, le, = 100 mètre cependant, yet cerf-volant, le, kite, 51 (a) cerise, la, cherry certain, 75 chacal, le, pl. of, 48 (b) chacun, each, every one, 76 (c) chaque, adj., each, every, 75, 76 chambre à coucher, la, bedroom champ, le, field chandelle, la, candle changer, to change, alter, 16, 17 chant du coq, cock's crowing chanter, to sing chapeau, le, hat chaque, each, every, 75 (a) charge, la, load charmé (de), charmed, delighted chasseur, le, huntsman, hunter, 54 chat, le, cat châtain, chestnut coloured château, le, castle, country-seat chaud, warm, hot; il fait chaud, it is warm chauffer, to warm chaux, la, lime chef, le, chief chef-d'œuvre, le, 50 (1) \beta, masterpiece chemin, le, road, way; grand -, high road; faire du -, to get on cheminée, la, chimney chemise, la, shirt

47

chêne, le, oak
cher, f. chère, dear, expensive
chercher, to seek, search, look for
cheval, le, horse
chevalier, le, knight; — d'industrie, swindler
cheveu, le (capillum), hair, single

cheveu, le (capillum), hair, single cheveux, les, (la chevelure), hair (collectively) chez, at the house of, 63 (5)

chez, at the house of, 63 (5) chien, le, dog

choir, to fall, 35 (d)

choisir, to choose, select choquer, to shock

chose, la, thing; blen des choses de ma part, my kind regards

chou, le, cabbage chou-fleur, le, cauliflower, 51;

-ci, 66, 68 ciel, le, heaven, 49 (d)

cinq, five

circonstance, la, circumstance citer, to cite, quote

clef, la (pron. = clé), key; prendre la clef des champs, to make off, to bolt

clore, to close, 42 cocher, coachman cœur, le, heart

cognée, la, axe, hatchet coiffeur, le, hair-dresser

coin, le, corner, wedge, mark colère, la, anger

combien, how much, how many, 46 (b); — de temps, how long,

comme, as, like, 78 comme il faut, properly comment, how, 78

commettre, to commit commission, la, errand compagnon, m., compagne, f.,

companion
complaisance, la, kindness
complice, le or la, accomplice

compote, la, aux..., stewed... comprendre, to understand, 38 (e) compte, le, account, bill, reckoning compter, to count, to reckon, num-

ber, rely, expect

comte, le, count, earl (conte, le, tale; compte, le, account) concevoir, to conceive, 33 conclure, to conclude, 40 (g) condisciple, le, fellow-student conduire, to conduct, lead, 36; se—to behave

conduite, la, conduct, behaviour conflance, la, confidence, trust

(confidence, la, secrecy)
confier, to trust, confide
confire, to preserve, to pickle, 39
confondre, to confound
connaître, to know, 40 (f), 153
connaître and savoir compared,

conquérant, le, conqueror, 31 (c)

conquérir, to conquer conquête, la, capture, taking conseil, le, council, counsel, advice conseiller, to advise

conserver, to keep, preserve consommer, to consume

construire, to construct, build, 36 (b), 143

contenir, to contain, 31 (c) content, content, satisfied, pleased contenter, to satisfy, please, gratify contenu, le, contents

continuellement, continually contraindre, to compet, 37 (a) contraire, au, on the contrary

contraire, au, on the contrary contrarier, to counteract, thwart, vex, etc.

contre-amiral, le, pl., 51 contre-cœur, à, reluctantly, grudgingly

contradire, to contradict, 39 (d) convaincre, to convince, 39 (c)

convenir, to agree, suit, 31 (c) copier, to copy

coq, le, cock corne, la, horn corriger, to correct

coucher, se, to go to bed, to set (intr.) coudre, to sew, 42 (h)

coup, le, blow

à coup sûr, surely couper, to cut

courant d'air, le, draught

déjà, already, 77 (b)

courir, to run, 30 (c), 128 couronner. to crown coûter, to cost couture, la, seam : à plate -. completely, utterly couvrir, to cover, 28, 125 craindre, to fear, 38, 142 crainte, la, fear; de - de, for fear of; de — que...ne..., lest crevette, la, shrimp cri, le, cry crier, to cry croire, to believe, think, 40 (g), 154 croître, to grow, 40, 153 crosse, la, crosier, bat, butt-end, etc. cueillir, to gather, 28, 125 cuire, to cook, 36, 143 cuisinier, le, cook cure-dents, le, toothpick, 51 (c) curiosité, la, curiosity, inquisitiveness, rarity

D

dame, la, lady, dame dangereux, -se, dangerous, critidavantage, more (used absolutely), de, of, from, at, with, possess., 44, 184; partit., 46, 162; in Compounds, 50, 51; with Infinit., 104 débattre, to discuss débiter, to retail, to relate décerner, to award décevoir, to deceive, disappoint, 33, 129 déchoir, to decay, 34, 140 décimètre, le, $=\frac{1}{10}$ mètre découvrir, to discover, 28 décrire, to describe, 37 décroître, to decrease, 41 dedans, dehors, 77 (a) défendeur, le, 54 (4) défendre, to defend, forbid, prohibit déflant, distrustful défilé, le, defile, mountain pass dégainer, to unsheath, to draw dégel, le, thaw

déjeuner, to breakfast délasser, se, to rest from demain, to-morrow, 77 (b) demander, to ask, to demand demandeur, le, 54 (4) demeurer, to stay, to live, to reside demi, half, 57, 168 dent, la, tooth 1e, departure, leaving, départ, starting se dépêcher, to make haste, to hurry dépense, la, expense, score, outlay dépenser, to spend (money) (to spend time = passer)déplaire, to displease, 41 (q) depuis, since, prepos., 90, 91 dernier, last, latter derrière, behind, 77 (a) des, of the, some, any, 44, 46 descendre, to descend, to go (come) down (stairs, etc.), 13 désespéré, despairing désirer, to desire, 102 désir, le, desire, wish dès que, as soon as, 92 dessein, le, design, plan desservir, to serve a bad turn dessin, le, design, drawing dessiner, to draw dessus, dessous, 77 (a) détacher, se, to become loose détail, le, pl. of, 48 (b), Obs. détester, se, to hate one another détour, le, turn détruire, to destroy, 37 (b) deux, two devant, before, 77 (a) devenir, to become, 31, 126 deviner, to guess, divine devoir, le, duty, task, lesson devoirs, les, m., task, home lesson devoir, to owe, 32 (a), 102, 130 dévorant, ravenous dictionnaire, le, dictionary difficile, difficult, hard digue, la, dyke, embankment diner, le, dinner dire, to say, tell, 38 (d), 145

diriger, se, to turn towards disconvenir (de), to deny, disown disparaître, to disappear, § 11 (a) dissolvant, le, solvent domestique, m. and f., servant dommage, le, damage; quel dommage, what a pity; c'est -, it is a pity donc, then, therefore (then, referring to time, = alors)donner, to give, to bestow, 8 dont, whose, § 35 dorade, la, goldfish doré, gilt dormir, to sleep, 26, 124 douter, to doubt, to question, 98 se douter de, to suspect, 118 Douvres, Dover doux, douce, sweet, gentle, 54, § 17 douzaine, la, dozen douze, twelve dresser, to dress ; se -, to stand up du, of the, from the, some, any, see de

E

dureté, la, hardness, hardhearted-

dû, P. P. of devoir, 32 (a)

-duire, Verbs in, 36

ness, harshness

eau, l', f., water écaille, f., scale écarter, s', to deviate échecs, m. pl., chess; échec, échouer, to run aground, fig. to fail échu, P. P. of échoir, 34 (d) éclair, m., lightning éclairer, to lighten, 22, 23 éclore, to blow, to hatch, 42 (i) école, f., school écolier, m., schoolboy économe, economical, saving écorce, f., bark écossais, Scotch écouter, to listen (to), 83, 182 écrire, to write, 36 (b) effet, m., effect; en —, truly, indeed

égal, equal, like égard, m., regard, respect égarer, to mislay, lead astray égarer, s', to go astray, to miss one's way eh bien! well then! élève, m. and f., pupil élevé, bred, brought up, reared élire, to elect, 41 (g) elle(s), she, they, 58; disj., 63 eux, m. they, disj., 63 embaumer, to embalm embellir, to embellish, to adorn embrasser, s', to embrace émerveiller, s', to be astounded emmener, to take away; amener, to bring, conduct s'emparer de, to seize, take possession of empêcher, to prevent employer, to employ, to use emporter, to carry off emprunter, to borrow en, prep., in; in Compounds, 50(4) en, pron., 59, 62, 171 enchanté, enchanted, delighted enchanteur, enchanteresse, 54 encore, yet, still, 77 (b) encore un, another endoctriner, to school enfermer, to shut (lock) up enfin, at last enfreindre, to infringe, 37 (a) enfuir, s', to run away, 29 (b) ennemi, m., enemy; adj., hostile ennuyer, to weary, bore s'ennuyer, to feel weary ennuyeux, -se, wearisome, tiresome (ennuyant, annoying) enragé, mad, enraged s'enrhumer, to catch a cold s'enrichir, to get rich enseigner, to teach, 112 ensemble, together ensuite, then entendre, to hear, understand, 89 entendre dire, to hear, to be told entier, whole entorse, f., sprain entrailles, les, f., bowels, entrails

entre, between s'entre-déchirer, to tear each other to pieces, be at daggers drawn entreprendre, to undertake, 39 entrer, to enter, to go (come) in, 83 entretenir, to maintain s'entretenir de, to converse, talk about envers, towards (feeling —) (vers, towards, direction —) envie, f., envy, longing avoir envie de, to have a mind environ, prep., about envoyer, to send; - chercher, to send for, 25, 122 épais, -se, thick épaule, f., shoulder épouvantail, m., pl., 48 (b), Obs. équivaloir, to be equal (equivalent) erreur, f., error, mistake espérer, to hope, 16, 121 esprit, m., spirit, mind, opinion essayer, to try, 17, 121 essuie-mains, m., towel, 51 (c) estime, f., esteem estomac (c silent), m., stomach étang, m., pond Etats-Unis, les, m., United States été, m., summer éteindre, to extinguish, 37, 142 étendard, m., standard stoffe, f., stuff étrange, strange, peculiar étranger, stranger, foreign, foreigner être, to be, 6, 113 s'étonner, to be astonished, 118 étude, f., study, lawyer's office eventail, 1', m., pl. of, 48 (b), Obs. éviter, to avoid examen, m., examination excepté, except(ed), save exemplaire, m., copy (of a book, etc.) exercice, m., exercise exiger, to require expliquer, to explain exprès, expresse

express, m. express train exprimer, to express extraire, to extract, 39

B

face, la, front, face se facher (de), to get angry (at) fâché contre, angry with fâché de, sorry for facile, easy façon, la, manner, fashion façons, les, f., ceremony, fuss faillir, to fail, 26, 125 faim, la, hunger avoir faim, to be hungry fainéant, le, idler faire, to do, to make, 38,146-149 il fait, impers., 22 fait, le, fact; prendre fait et cause pour, to espouse the cause of falloir, must, to be necessary, to want, 32, 100, 136-139 fardeau, le, load, burden fat, le, fop fatigué, tired, weary faut, il, must (see falloir) fauteuil, le, easy chair faux, fausse, 54, §17 favori, favorite, §16 feindre, to feign, 37, 142 fendre, to cleave, split fenêtre, la, window fermer, to shut, lock, close fermier, le, farmer feu, le, fire février, m., February fler (a), se, to trust fler (one syl.), adj., proud flèvre, la, fever figure, la, figure, face fille, la, daughter, girl fils, le (pron. = fiss), son fin, la, end, close, aim finir, to finish, end, have done, 15 fixement, fixedly flagorneur, le, toady, toad-eater flairer, to scent, to smell flåneur, le, lounger, stroller, idler se flatter, 118

flatteur, le, flatterer fleurir (florissant), to blossom, 17 flottant, waving, floating foin, le, hay fois, la, time(s), 57, § 23 fondre, to melt; fondre sur, to rush (pounce) upon

fontaine, la, fountain, well

à force de, by dint of forêt, la, forest, wood forger, to forge forgeron, le, blacksmith fort, adj., strong, solid fort, adv., very, very much fouetter (from fouet), to whip, flog foule, la, crowd fourmi, la, ant foyer, le, hearth, fig. home frais, fratche, fresh, 54, § 17 franc, franche, 54, § 17 franc, le, French coin, 5 francs= 4 shillings

franchise, la, frankness, candour frapper, to strike; frappant, striking frire, to fry, 42, 157 froid, cold, frigid fromage, le, cheese front, le, forehead fuir, to flee, 28 fusil, le (l silent), gun

français, -e, French

G

gagner, to gain, win, earn garçon, le, boy, waiter, bachelor garde, le, keeper, 51 (d), Obs. gare, la, railway-station (terminus) garnison, la, garrison Gaulois, le, Gaul gazon, le, turf geler, to freeze, 16, 121; geler à pierre fendre, to freeze hard genou, le, knee, 48 (a), Obs. 2 genre, le, gender, kind, style; (le gendre, son-in-law) gens, les, f., people, folks gentil, -le, 54, § 17

gésir, to lie, 30,-128 glace, la, ice, plate-glass, carriage window glauque, sea-green gouvernail, le, pl., 48 (b), Obs. grâce, la, grace, gracefulness, favour, mercy, etc.; graces, thanks; action de -s, thanksgiving; les bonnes grâces, favour, goodwill grammaire, la, grammar grand, great, large, big, tall, grand grandeur, la, greatness, size gras, grasse, fat, 54, §17 gré, m., bon gré, thanks, goodwill grec, f. grecque, 53 (d), Obs. grêler, to hail, 22 grelotter, to shiver grimper, to climb grommeler, to grumble gronder, to scold, rumble, boom guère, ne, hardly, scarcely, 15

Н

guerre, la, war, warfare

guise, la, own way, fancy

(N.B.—'h = aspirate h')

habit, m., coat
habitant, m., inhabitant
habiter, to inhabit
'hair, to hate, 17, 121; se hair, 118
haleine, f., breath
'haut, le; 'hauteur (la), height,
top, 159
haut, adj. and adv., high, loud,
aloud
hectare, m. (=100 ares), =2½
acres
hériter, to inherit
'héros, le, hero; l'héroïne, 203 (c)
hésiter, to hesitate

good
heureux, happy, fortunate
'hibou, le, owl, 48 (a), Obs. 2
hier (one syl. p. 209, 3), yesterday

heure, f., hour, 168; de bonne

heure, early; à la bonne

heure! that's right! well and

hirondelle, f., swallow histoire, f., story, history hiver, m. (pron. = ivère), winter homme, m., man honorer, to honour, 19 'honte, la, shame, disgrace (avoir honte, to be ashamed) honteux, -se, shameful, disgraceful, ashamed, bashful huile, f., oil huit, eight; le huit, 56, 57 huit jours, a week, 168 humide, damp, moist

ici, here, hither il, impers., 22, 23; il and ce, 70, 108 il y a, there is, 23, 90 11e, f., island imaginer, s', to imagine, fancy importe, il, § 7 (b), it is important, n'importe, no matter improviste, à l', unawares, unexpectedly inattendu, unexpected inconsidéré, inconsiderate indigène, adj., indigenous, native; subst. pl. aborigines indiquer, to indicate ingrat, ungrateful inscrire, to inscribe, 36 institutrice (f. of instituteur), governess instruire, to instruct, 37 intéresser, s', to interest one's self intérieur, interior, inward; ministre de l'-, Home Secretary interrompre, to interrupt introduire, to introduce, 37 J

jacinthe, la, hyacinth jamais, ever; à jamais, for ever; ne jamais, never, 15 jambe, la, leg jardin, le, garden jardinier, le, gardener jeter, to throw, to cast, 16, 121

jeu, le, play, game jeune, young joindre, to join, 36 (a), 142 joli, pretty, nice jouer de, to play (an instrument) jouer à, to play at (a game) joujou, le, plaything, 48 (a), Obs. 2 jour, le, day, daylight journal, le, journal, newspaper journée, la, day, day's work, etc. juste, just, right, narrow

kilomètre, le=1000 mètres

L

la, the, 44, 45 la, pers. pron., 58-62, 169, 170 là, adv., there, 66 là-bas, yonder laisser, to allow, let, leave, 102 (b), 2lait, le, milk laitue, la, lettuce langage, le, language, way of talking langue, la, tongue, language lapin, le, rabbit Laponie, la, Lapland larme, la, tear las, lasse, tired, 54, § 17 laver, se, to wash one's self, 20, 21 le, les, the, 44, 45, 160, 173 le, les, pers. pron., 58-62, 169-171 leçon, la, lesson lecture, la, reading lequel, interrog., which? 71, 175 lequel, relat. pron., 73, 176, 177 lettre, la, letter leur, pers. pron., 58-62 leur, leurs, poss. pron., 64, 65 lever, se, to get up, rise lèvre, la, lip ligne, la, line lire, to read, 40, 155 lit, le, bed littéralement, literally livre, le, book livre, la, pound, £

livrer, to deliver, hand over, give loge, la, lodge, box (theatre) loin, far, afar, distant lointain, le, distance loisir, le, leisure, spare time Londres, m., London long, long, 53(d); le long de, along longtemps, a long time, long longueur, la, length lorsque, when, 95 louer, to hire louer, to praise loyer, le, rent lui, conj. pers. pron., 58-62; disj. pron., 63, 169-172 luire, to shine, 36, 143 lundi, m., Monday

Madame, Mesdames, Mrs. mademoiselle, pl. mesdemoiselles, miss, 51 (e) mail, le, pl. of, 48 (b), Obs. main, la, hand, quire of paper maint, -e, many maintenant, now mais, but, however; interj., why ! maison, la, house, household

à la maison, at home, in doors maître, m., master; f. maîtresse mal, badly, ill, 79, 80; avoir mal à..., 173; pas mal, not amiss, not a little

malade, ill, sick, poorly

malheur, le, misfortune, mishap, ill-luck

malheureux, unhappy, unlucky, unfortunate

malin, maligne, 54, § 17

manger, to eat, devour, consume manière, la, manner, way; de -, 101, 107

manque, le, want

manquer, to miss, to be missing, to fall short

manquer à, to fail in, to be wanting in respect

manquer de, to fail, to be wanting (deficient) in, to lack

maquignon, le, horse jockey, jobber marché, le, market, bargain

(à) bon marché, cheap marcher, to march, walk, tread marée, la, tide : sea-fish marmot, le. brat, chit

matin, le ; matinée, la, forencon, morning: de grand matin, very early

maudire, to curse, 38 mauvais, bad, ill, evil, 79, 80

me, 58-62

médecin, m., medical man, physician

médire, to speak ill, back-bite, 39 méfler, se, to distrust meilleur, 79, 80, better mêler, to mix, mingle

se mêler de, to meddle with même, adj., same, self, 75; adv.,

even, very mener, to lead, conduct, 16

mentir, to lie, to tell a falsehood, 26, 124

menton, le, chin mer, la, sea merci, la, grace merci, m., thanks

mercure, le, mercury, quicksilver méridional, southern

merveille, la, marvel, wonder à merveille, capitally mésaventure, la, mishap

mesure, la, measure mettre, to put, place, 38, 150; mettre à la voile, to set sail

mi-juillet, la, middle of July midi, m., mid-day, twelve o'clock, noon, south, 168

mien, le, 65 mieux, better; le mieux, best, 79, 80

mignon, -ne, pretty, nice mince, thin

mine, la, mien, face

ministre de l'intérieur. Ex. 79 minuit, f., midnight, twelve o'clock in the night, 168

moi, conj. pr., 60, 62; disj., 63

moindre, least, 79, 80

neige, la, snow

il neige, it snows, 22 (a)

moins, less, 79, 80 pas le moins du monde, not in the least moins . . . moins, 166 mois, le, month mon, ma, mes, 64, 173 monde, le, world, people, company tout le monde, everybody monsieur, pl. messieurs, Mr., sir, gentleman, 51 (e), 160 montagnard, le, highlander montagne, la, mountain monter, to mount, to ascend, to go unstairs monter à cheval, to ride montre, la, watch montrer, to show, to display moquer de, se, to laugh at, to make fun of mort, P. P. of mourir, to die mort, la death mot, le, word bon mot, witticism, witty saying motrice (f. of moteur), adj., force —, motive (moving) power mou, mol, molle, soft, 53 (f moudre, to grind, 42 mouillé, wet, soaked moulin, le, mill mourir, to die, 30, 128 moutarde, la, mustard

N

muet, -te, mute, dumb, 54, § 17

mugissement, le, roaring

mouvoir, to move, 32

mûr, ripe, mature

nager, to swim
nattre, to be born, to rise
ne... pas (point, plus, pas
non plus, guère, jamais, rien,
personne), 79 (f), 86, 179; ne
... que, only
néanmoins, nevertheless, notwithstanding
nécessaire, necessary
négligent, careless
négliger, to neglect
négociant, le, merchant

net, nette, adj., clear, neat, 54, § 17; adv., flatly nez, le, nose; fig. scent; avoir bon nez, to be sagacious nier, to deny, 102 noir, black, dark, swarthy nom, le, name, noun nombre, le. number nombre d'années, many years non, no, not (adv.), 79 (f) nord, le, north, north wind notre, nos. our. 64, 173 le (la) nôtre, les nôtres, ours, 65 nous, pers. pron., 58-63 nouveau, nouvelle, 53 (f) nouvelle, la, news, intelligence, tidings; avoir (recevoir) des nouvelles de, to hear from nuire (à), to hurt, harm, injure, 36, 143 nuit, la, night, darkness

0

nul, nulle, 54, § 17, 76

obéir à, to obey, 83, 180 (a) obéissance, f., obedience, compliance obligeance, f., kindness s'obstiner à, with Infin., to persist in obtenir, to obtain, get, 31 occasion, f., opportunity occuper de, s', to attend to, to employ (busy, apply) one's self ceil, m., pl. yeux, eye, 49 (d) œuf, m., egg œuvre, f. work, 201 (b) offrir, to offer, 28, 125 oignon, or ognon, m., onion oindre, to anoint, 37 oiseau, m., bird ombre, une, shadow, shade on, one, they, people, 76 (c) oncle, m., uncle or, m., gold; d'—, en—, gold, adj. ordinaire, ordinary; d'-, or, ordinairement, adv., generally, commonly, usually

ordonner, to order, ordain ordre, m., order oreille, f., ear originaire, native oser, to dare, venture, 102 où, where, adv., 77 (a); rel. pr. 73 (d); d'où, whence; par où? which way? ou, conj., or; ou...ou, either ... or oublier, to forget, omit ouest, m., west, west wind oui, yes, 79 (f) ouir, to hear, 28 ours, m., bear ouvert. P. P. of ouvrir, to open a cour ouvert, candidly ouvrir, to open, 28, 125

P

pain, le, bread, loaf paitre, to graze, feed, 40 paix, la, peace pal, 1e, stake, 48 (b), Obs. palais, le, palace par, by, through, out of, 107, 191 par contre, in compensation par ici, par là, 77 (a); this (that) way: par où? which way? paraître, to appear, 41, 153 parapluie, le umbrella, 51 (e) parce que, because parcourir, to run through, peruse, travel (go) over, 31 pardonner à, to forgive, 83, 180 (a) pareil, -le, such, like, similar parents, les, m., parents, relations paresseux, idle, lazy parfois, adv., sometimes, at times parler, to speak, 14 parmi, among(st) part, la, share, allowance, portion;

part, la, share, allowance, portion; faire — de, to inform of, to communicate; blen des choses de ma — à..., my kind regards to...

parti, le, party, side, resolution; prendre le — de, to take the side of; prendre son —, to make up one's mind

partie, la, part, match (of a game) partir, to start, to set out, to go off, 26, 113, 124 parvenir à, to succeed in, 31

pas, le, step, pace, stride, footprint passé, past, last, all over

passer, to pass, spend; — chez, to call on; se —, to happen; se —

de, to do without patiner, to skate

patrie, la, native country, fatherland, birthplace, home

pauvre, poor, indigent payer, to pay

pays, le, country
les Pays Bas, Netherlands
paysan, peasant, countryman
peau, la, skin, hide
pêche, la, peach; fishing
pêcheur, le, fisherman
pécheur, le, sinner, 54 (g), 4
peindre, to paint, depict, 37
peine, la, trouble, difficulty

à peine, adv., hardly, scarcely pendant, prep., during, pending pendant que, conj., while

whilst
penser (à), to think (of), 184 (a)

perdre, to lose, to ruin
père, le, father.
permettre, to allow, permit, 38

perroquet, le, parrot personne, la, person; personne

...ne, m., nobody, 15, 86, 179 perte, la, loss, ruin; courir à perte d'haleine, to run out of breath

petit, little, small, tiny, short, 55 petit-fils, grandson

peu, adv., little, few, scanty, 77 (c), 162

peur, la, fear, fright, dread; avoir peur, to be afraid; de peur que . . . ne, lest, 101 pied le font fonting à pied on

pied, le, foot, footing; à pied, on foot; sur —, standing pierre, la, stone, rock

pire, adj., worse; le pire, worst,

pis, adv., worse; le pis, worst, 80

pitié, la, pity (piété, piety) placer, to place, 17 plaindre, to pity, 36, 142 se plaindre (de), to complain of plainte, la, complaint, lamenta. tion; (law) charge, action plaire à, to please, 40, 155 se plaire à, to take pleasure in plaisir, le. pleasure, delight planche, la, board, plank faire la planche, to float plat, flat, dull plein, full, replete pleuvoir, to rain, 22, 32 ployer, to fold, 17 pluie, la, rain plume, la, feather, pen plus, more, 55, 80; partit., 78 plus . . . ne, no more, no longer, 15 plus . . . plus, 166 plusieurs, several, 75 (b). plus tôt, sooner, earlier plutôt, rather, in preference poche, la, pocket, pouch poindre, to dawn, 37 point, le, point, dot, stitch, mark, pointe, la, point, sharp end, tag, peak poire, la, pear poitrail, le, pl. of, 48 (b), Obs. poivre, le, pepper pomme, la, apple pomme de terre, potato pommette, la, cheekbone pondu (frais —), new laid porc, le, pig, pork portail, le, pl. of, 48 (a), Obs. porte, la, door, gate porte-monnaie, le, purse porter, to bear, to carry : - à la tête, to be heady; so -, to be, to do (in health) pouce, le, thumb, inch poule, la, hen pour, with Infinit., for pourquoi, why poursuivre, to pursue, 38 pourvoir, to provide, 35 pourvu que, conj., provided, 101 pupitre. le, desk

pousser, to push, thrust, utter; - jusqu'au bout, to go through with pouvoir, to be able, 32, 132, 133 se pouvoir, to be possible prédire, to predict, 39 premier, le, first, former, foremost prendre, to take, 38, 151 préparer, to prepare présent, n. m.; adj., present présent, à, adv., now, at present présenter, to offer, to introduce presque, almost, nearly pressé, in a hurry, eager prêt (à), ready prétendre, to pretend, mean prêter, to lend preuve, la, proof prévaloir, to prevail, 33 prévenant, engaging, obliging prévenir, to inform, to forewarn, forestall, be beforehand with, anticipate, to prevent prévenu, le, prisoner prévoir, to foresee prier, to pray, beg, ask, invite, 16 printemps, le, spring-time pris, P. P. of prendre, to take, prise, la, capture, taking prix, le, price, prize probablement, probably procédé, le, proceeding, procedure, behaviour; le manque de -, want of courtesy produire, to produce, 37 profit, le, profit mettre à -, to turn to account profond, deep, profound promener, se, to take a walk promesse, la, the promise promettre, to promise propos, le, subject, matter, discourse, talk proposition, la, proposal, proposipuisque, since, as, conj., 91 punir, to punish, 8 punition, la, punishment

Q

quand, when

quant à, as for, as regards quart, le, quarter, fourth, 57, 168, 8 21 que? quel? qui? quoi? 71, 175 que, after a comparative, than que, after aussi, as que, for quand, 91 (3) quelconque, indef. pr., 75 (a) quelque, indef. pr., 75 (a) quelques, some, 75 (a) quelqu'un, some one (body), 76 (c) querir, or querir, to fetch, 31 queue, la, tail qui, que, quoi, relat. pron., 72 qui que ce soit, 76 (c) quiconque, whosoever, 76 (c) quint, the fifth, 57, § 21 quinze, fifteen; - jours, a fortnight, 168 quitter, to quit, to leave quoi? what quoique, with Subj., although, 101 quoi que, whatever, 76 (c) R raconter, to relate, tell raisin, le, grape (la grappe, bunch) raison, la, reason; avoir —, to be right raisonnement, le, argument ramener, to bring back ranger, to put (set) in order rappeler à, to remind se rappeler, to recollect rapport, le, bearing, profit, report, relation raviser, se, to think better of it

rebuter, se, to be disheartened

recevoir, to receive, 32 (a), 129

réfléchir, to reflect, to bethink one's

reconnaître, to recognise, 40

recueillir, to gather, 29

redire, to repeat, 39

self

réduire, to reduce, 37

réformer, to reform, correct refuser, to refuse, deny: - la porte, to deny one's self; se à to resist régal, le, treat, 48 (b), Obs. regarder, to look (at), concern, 83 rejoindre, to join, overtake, 37 réjouir, se (de), to rejoice (at) relier, to bind (books) relieur, le, bookbinder remercier, to thank remettre, to deliver, to hand, put off: s'en - à, to leave it to remplir, to fill, fulfil remporter, to carry renard, le. fox rencontre, la, meeting, encounter rencontrer (se), to meet, to come across, 83 rendre, to return (transit.), to give back, render, make rentes, les, f., income, funds, stocks, annuity rentrer, to enter again, to return home repentir, se, to repent, rue, 27, 118 répéter, to repeat répondre (à), to reply, to answer ; en -, to warrant réponse, la, reply, answer repos, le, repose, rest laisser en repos, to let alone reprendre, to reply résoudre, to resolve, 42, 156 rester, to stay, to remain, to be left restreindre, to restrict, 37 retard, le, delay; en retard, late, behindhand retarder, to delay retenir, to detain, secure, hold back, withhold, 31 retirer, se, to withdraw, retire retour, de, back again retourner, to return, go back retrancher, to retrench, cut off retranché, entrenched retrouver, to find again, to recover réussir, to succeed

réussite, la, success revaloir, to pay out, 33 revanche, en, in compensation réveille-matin, le, alarum, 51 réveiller, to wake, awaken revenant, le, ghost revenir, to come back revenir à, to come (amount) to, cost revêtir, to invest, 29 revoir, to see again, 35 au revoir! till I see you again révoltant, shocking rien, ne, nothing, 15, 76, 179 rire, to laugh, 38, 145 rivage, le, bank, shore, beach rive, la, bank, shore, riverside rivière, la, river, stream riz, le, rice roi, le, king Romain, Roman rompre, to break, snap, sever rond, round rouge, red route, la, road, way, route roux, rousse, red, (hair, etc.), 54, \$17 rue, la, street

S

sable, le, sand sage, wise, good (as to conduct) sagesse, la, wisdom saillie, faire, to stand out saillir, to project salé, adj., salt(ed) salir, to soil, to stain, to dirty sans, with Infinit., without, but for, 107 santé, la, health satisfaire, to satisfy, 39 sauter, to jump, spring, burst sauver, to save, rescue se sauver, to run away, to be off adj., learned; subst., savant, scholarsavoir, to know (how), 32, 102, 132; — bon gré, totakeit kindly; - mauvais gré, to take it unkindly

savoir-vivre, le, good breeding schelling, le, shilling scrupuleusement, conscientiously sec, sèche, dry, arid, 54, § 17 séduire, to seduce, 37 sel, le, salt selon, according to semblant, faire, to feign, pretend sembler, to seem sens, le, sense, opinion, direction sentier, le, footpath sentir, to feel, to smell, 26, 102, 124 seoir, to be fitting, 34 sept. seven sérieux, -se, serious, grave servante, la, maid-servant servir, to serve, 26, 124 servir à, to be good for seul, alone, only, sole seulement, only si, adv., so; in answer to a negative question, yes, 86 si, conj., if, whether, 94, 95 sien, le, 65, 173 singe, le, monkey, ape société, la, society, company sœur, la, sister soif, la, thirst soir, le, evening soirée, la evening's duration, party soldat, le. soldier soleil, le, sun sombre, dark, dusky son, sa, ses, 64, 173 songer à, to dream, to think of sonner, to ring, to ring for, to strike sorte, la, sort, kind sortir, to go out, 26, 113, 124 sot, sotte, foolish, silly sou (of a franc), halfpenny souffle, le, breath souffrir, to suffer, to allow, 28, 125 souhait, le, wish souhaiter, to wish soulagé, relieved soupe, la, soup souper, le, supper

source, la, source sourdre, to rise (water), 42 sourire, to smile, 39 sous, under souscrire, to subscribe, 37 sous-officier, le, pl. of, 51 (c) soustraire, to abstract, 39 souvenir, se, to remember, 31, 118 souvent, often soyeux, silky spectacle, le, sight subvenir à, to supply, 31 suffire, to suffice, 38 Suisse, la, Switzerland suite, la, the continuation, retinue tout de suite, instantly de suite, without intermission suivant, following, next suivre, to follow, 38, 144 sujet, le, subject, cause supérieur(e), m. or f., superior sur, on, upon sûr, sure, certain, safe, reliable surmonter, to overcome surseoir, to suspend, 34

T

tableau, le, picture, painting, blackboard, list, scene tache, la, task, job tache, la, spot, stain tailleur, le, tailor taire, se, to be silent, 40, 155 tant (de), so much, so many, 78 tante, la, aunt tapis, le, carpet, rug: — de table. table-cover tard, late tarder à (with Infinit.), to be long tarder de (impers.), to long to tasse, la, cup taupe, la, mole te, 58-62 teindre, to dye, tinge, stain, 37 tel, such; un tel, such a, 75, 76 temps, le, time, weather, tense tenir, to hold, keep, 30; se —, to keep, to behave

terrain, le, ground terre, la, earth, ground, land, estate tête, la, head thé, le, tea thème, le, exercise, theme tien, le, 65 tiers, tierce, third, 57 timbre - poste, le, postage-stamp, 51(b)tirer, to draw, pull, fire toi, conj. pr., 60, 62; disj., 63 tomber, to fall, tumble; - d'accord, to agree ton, ta, tes, 64 ton, le, tone, sound; le bon -, good manners tonner, to thunder tonnerre, le, thunder tort, le, wrong; avoir -, to be wrong; à - et à travers, at random tôt, early, soon toucher, to touch, feel, concern toujours, always, still, ever tour, la, tower; castle (at chess) tour, le, turn, circumference, stroll tourmenter, to torment tout, -e (pl. tous, toutes), all, every, whole, 75 (b) tout, adv., quite, altogether; du —, at all; tout net, flatly; tout à l'heure, just now, by and by toux, la, cough tracer, to trace traduction, la, translation traduire, to translate, 37 traire, to milk, 38 traiter, to treat tranquille, tranquil, quiet travail, work, labour, 48 (b) travailler, to work, to labour traverser, to cross, go through, athwart treize, thirteen trembler, to tremble, quake, fear très, very; before a Part. Perf., very much, highly triple, 57

tromper, to deceive

tromper, se, to be mistaken (deceived)

trop (de), too, too much, too many, 46 (b), 1, 77

troupe, f., troop, gang, band trouver, to find; se trouver, to be, to happen to be; trouver bon, to approve; trouver mauvals, to disapprove, to find

fault tuer, to kill, to destroy tutoyer, to thee and thou

TT

un, une, a, an, 47; one, 56 uni, even, smooth utile, useful, serviceable

V

vaincre, to conquer, 38 vainqueur, le, victor, conqueror valoir, to be worthy, 32; faire -, 147 vécu, P. P. of vivre, lived vendeur, le, 54(g), 4vendre, to sell, 9 vengeur, vengeresse, 54 (g), 4 venir, to come, 30, 113, 126 verbe, le, verb; theol., word verger, le, orchard vérité, la, truth verre, le, glass verse, pleuvoir à, to pour version, translation (from a foreign language into the vernacular).

language into the vernacular).
vêtir, se, to clothe (oneself), 28, 125
vide, empty, void
vie, la, life, livelihood
vieillesse, la, old age
vieux, vieille, old, 53 (f)

vif, vive, alive, lively, quick village, le, village ville, la, town, city vin, le, wine vite, adj. and adv., § 34, quick, quickly vivre, to live, to exist, to be alive, 42, 156 les vivres, m., victuals, provisions voici, here is, here are; me here I am voilà, there is, there are; - comme, that is how; le -, there he is voile, le, veil voile, la, sail voir. to see, 34, 102, 140 voiture, la, coach, carriage aller en voiture, to go for a drive voix, la, voice, vote voler, to steal, to fly voleur, le, thief volonté, la, will, wish volontiers, willingly, with pleavotre, vos, adj., 64 le (la) vôtre, les vôtres, pron., voyage, le, travel, journey vovager, to travel voyageur, le, traveller vouloir, to want, to be willing, 32, 102, 134 vous, pers. pron., 58-63 vrai, true, real, right, downright vraiment, truly, indeed, 86 vue, la (from P. P. of voir), sight

Y

y, there, thither, to-it, 59, 171 yeux, pl. of ceil, eyes, 49 (d)

II.—ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY.

A

a (an), un, f. une, 47, III. able, to be, pouvoir, 32, 132 about, to be, 122, 185 above, en haut, 185 absence, l'absence, f. abstain (from), to, s'abstenir (de) abundance, l'abondance, f. accept, to, accepter accident, l'accident, m. accompany, to, accompagner accustom, to, accoutumer; to get —, s'— à acquainted(with), to be, connaître acquire, to, acquérir, 30 acquit, to, absoudre, 42; acquitter act, to, agir action, l'action, f. active, actif acute, aigu, 52, Obs. 1 address, the, l'adresse, f. address, to, adresser la parole à admiral, l'amiral, m. admire, to, admirer admission, l'entrée, f. advance, to, avancer adversity, l'adversité, f. advice, le conseil, l'avis, m. advise, to, conseiller affair, l'affaire, f. afraid, to be, 142 Africa, l'Afrique, f. after, prep., après, 185 after, conj., après que afternoon, l'après-midi, f. or m. again, de nouveau, encore une fois ; not . . . again, ne . . . plus; with Verbs, generally re-, as :to see again, revoir; to open again, rouvrir against, contre, envers age, l'âge, m. ago, see Ex. 8

(de), 126; (=to come to terms), s'accorder, convenir (de) agreeable, agréable; to be —, 135 ail, to, avoir (personal) alas, hélas alike, to be, se ressembler all, tout (-e), (pl. tous, toutes) allied, allié (-e) allow, to, permettre, laisser almost, presque alms, l'aumône, f. ; la charité alone, seul; to let —, laisser tranquille Alps, les Alpes, f. already, déjà also, aussi although, quoique, with Subj., 101 always, toujours America, l'Amérique, f. among, parmi, chez amuse one's self, to, s'amuser (à) ancient, ancien (-ne) and, et anger, la colère angry (with), fâché, en colère (contre); to get —, se fâcher (contre); se mettre en colère Ann, Anne announce, to, annoncer annoy, to, ennuyer, rexer another, encore un, 75 (b) answer, to, répondre (à), répliquer à; correspondre antlers, le bois Antwerp, Anvers anxious(to), to be, avoir envie(de), tenir à, tenir à cœur de (impers.) any, 59 anything, 59, 76 appease, to, apaiser, pacifier, concilier appetite, l'appétit, m. apple, la pomme approach, to, (s')approcher (de) agree, to (=to admit), convenir approach, the, l'approche, f.

approve, to, approuver, trouver bon April, avril, m. arena, l'arène, f. arm, the, le bras; (= weapon), l'arme, f. arm with, to, armer de army, l'armée, f. arouse, to, exciter arrival, arrivée, f. arrive, to, arriver art. l'art. m. as, comme; as...as, aussi...que as far as, jusque, jusqu'à; as for -, quant à -; as much, autant (de): as soon as, aussitôt que, dès que ashamed, to be, avoir honte (de) Asia, l'Asie, f. ask (for), to, demander, 83 (with dative of person) asleep, to be, dormir, être endormi assail, to, assaillir, attaquer, 28 assiduously, assidument assurance, l'assurance, f. assure, to, assurer astonish, to, étonner astray, to go, s'égarer at, à (place), 44, 185; chez (person), 63 (5); at all, du tout; at last, enfin; at least, au moins; at once, immédiatement; at the same time, en même temps, à la fois; at the house of, chez Athens, Athènes, f. attack, to, attaquer, assaillir attention, l'attention, f. attentive, attentif attraction, l'attraction, f. audacity, l'audace, f. August, août (pron. = où), m. aunt, la tante Austrian, autrichien author, l'auteur, m., no fem. form authority, l'autorité, f. autumn, l'automne. m. (f. in poetry) avoid, to, éviter awaken, to, réveiller, éveiller aware of, to be, s'apercevoir de awkward, gauche, maladroit aye, oui vraiment

Ţ

babe, baby, le bébé, l'enfant, m. and f. bad, mauvais, méchant badly, mal, 79, 80 bake, to, cuire banker, le banquier banner, la bannière, le drapeau basket, le panier, la corbeille bathe, to, se baigner battle, la bataille be, to, être, 6, 7; (in health), se porter bear, to, porter; — ill will, 135 bear, the, l'ours, m. beast, la bête, l'animal, m. beat, to, battre; (bâtir=to build) beautiful, beau, 53 because, parce que become, to, devenir, 126, 184 (a) bed, le lit; to go to -, se coucher aller se coucher beef, le bœuf (f silent in plur.) beefsteak, le bifteck beer. la bière before, adv., avant, auparavant before, prep., avant (time), devant (place), 186 before, conj., avant que, with Subj., 101; avant de, with Infin., beg, to, demander, prier (de); (-alms), mendier begin, to, commencer (with à or de) to begin again, recommencer behalf of, on, en faveur de behave, to, se conduire, se comporter behaviour, la conduite, le procédé behind, derrière Belgium, la Belgique believe, to, croire bell, la cloche; house —, la sonnette belong to, to, appartenir à, être à best, adj., meilleur; adv., mieux bestir, to, se dépêcher, se hâter better, adj., meilleur; adv., mieux; to be better, valoir mieux, 140 between, entre

bill, le compte, la note; - of exchange, la lettre de change bind, to, lier; (books), relier bird, l'oiseau, m. birth, la naissance, l'origine, f. : - day, le jour (l'anniversaire) de naissance bite, to, mordre black, noir blackberry, la mûre blame, the, le blame, see also 151 blanket, la couverture bless, to, bénir, 17 blind, aveugle blood, le sang; — thirsty, altéré de sang, sanguinaire blossom, to, fleurir blow, le coup blush, to, rougir body, le corps boil, to, bowillir (intrans.); faire bouillir (trans.) book, le livre; old book, le bouquin bookbinder, le relieur boot, la botte, la bottine born, to be, naître, 40 borrow (from), to, emprunter (de or a) botany, la botanique both, (tous) les deux, l'un et l'autre, both . . . and, et . . . et bottom, le fond box, to, boxer, faire le coup de poing boy, le garçon brawler, le braillard Brazil, le Brésil bread, le pain : - crumb, la miette de pain break, to, casser, briser; intrans., poindre, 37; to - out, éclater, se déchaîner breakfast, the, le déjeuner breakfast, to, déjeuner

brick, la brique

brigand, le brigand

brook, le ruisseau

bring, to (=to carry), apporter

bring, to (=to lead), amener

brother, le frère brother-in-law, le beau-frère Brussels. Bruxelles build, to, bâtir, construire building, le bâtiment, l'édifice, m. bun. la brioche Burgundy, la Bourgogne, le vin de Bourgogne burn, to, brûler burst, to, éclater; - into tears, fondre en larmes business, les affaires, f. but, conj., mais but, adv., ne . . . que : but just, 149 butter, le beurre buy, to, acheter, 16* by, prep., par, 186 by the bye, à propos, par parenthèse by dint of, à force de

cake, le gâteau call, the, la visite call, to, appeler, 16; - for, demander, venir prendre: to - on. passer chez, aller voir, faire (une) visite; call one's self, to be called, s'appeler, 118 camp, le camp (pron. = can) can, pouvoir, savoir, 32, 132 can it be? se peut-il? 133 candle, la chandelle Cannæ, Cannes capable, capable (de) cape, le cap, le promontoire captain, le capitaine captive, le captif care, the, le soin, le souci; to care (for), tenir à, se soucier de ; to take — not to, se garder de careful, to be, avoir soin (de) careless, négligent, négligé, irréfléchi carriage, la voiture : - and pair,

voiture à deux chevaux

carriage-gate, la porte cochère

carry, to, porter; — out, exécuter

Carthage, Carthage, f. Carthaginian, le Carthaginois cat. le chat catch, to, prendre, attraper, saisir to — a cold, s'enrhumer cattle, le bétail, les bestiaux cause, to, 148 (c) cautious, prudent; - ly, prudemment cavern, la caverne cease, to, cesser century, le siècle certainly, certainement, assuréchair, la chaise; (la chaire, pulpit) champagne, le vin de Champagne Channel, la Manche chapter, le chapitre charming, charmant chatter, to, babiller, causer cheese, le fromage cherish, to, chérir cherry, la cerise chess, échecs, m. pl.; a game at -, une partie d'chest, la poitrine chestnut, la châtaigne chief, le chef child, l'enfant, m. and f. in sing.; m. in pl. China, la Chine choice, le choix choose, to, choisir Christmas, Noël, f.; - box, les étrennes, f. pl. church, l'église, f. circumstance, la circonstance claim, la prétention, le droit clean, to, nettoyer, 17 clear, clair clearly, distinctement, clairement, avec clarté clever, habile, adroit climb, to, grimper close to, près de close, to, clore, 42 cloth (linen), la toile; (woollen) le drap clothes, les habits, m., le vêtement clumsy, maladroit, gauche

coach. la voiture state -, le carrosse coachman, le cocher coat, l'habit, m. cock, le coq coffee, le café cold, froid, 22; to be (feel) -, avoir froid; to catch a -, s'enrhumer collection, la collection, le cabinet colour, la couleur Columbus, Colomb (pron. Colon) come, to, venir, 30 come back, to, revenir (not retourner) come down (stairs), to, descendre, venir en bas come home again, to, rentrer come in, to, entrer comfort, to, consoler, réconforter comfort, the, le confort, le confortable, le bien-être; le soulagement, la consolation comfortable, confortable, mode, à son aise, à l'aise company, la compagnie; to keep — with, fréquenter compassionate, compatissant complain (of), to, se plaindre (de) comply with, to, 192 compose, to, composer: to be - d, se composer (de) compound, composé comrade, le camarade conceal, to, cacher, celer, 16* conceited, suffisant; vain, fatué conceive, to, concevoir concern, to be the, regarder concert, the, le concert conduct, to, conduire, 36 conduct, the, la conduite confide, to, confier (à) confidence, la confiance conjugate, to, conjuguer conquer, to, conquérir, 31; vaincre conqueror, conquérant conscience, la conscience consecrate, to, bénir, 17 consent, to, consentir, 26

consent, the, le consentement consider, to, réfléchir (à), considérer construction, la construction

construction, la construction contain, to, contenir, 26; I cannot — myself₁for, je ne me sens pas de

continually, continuellement, sans

contradict, to, contredire, 39 contrary, le contraire; on the —, au —,

contribute, to, contribuer (à) convenient, convenable cook, to, cuire, 36 cook, the, le cuisinier, la cuisinière

copy, to, copier

copy, the, la copie; (of a book), l'exemplaire, m. copy-book, le cahier coral, le corail, 48 (b)

correct, to, corriger correctly, correctement correspondent, le correspondant

Corsican, Corse cost, to, coûter, revenir à cottage, la chaumière, la maison-

nette cough, to, tousser country (fields), la campagne country (native), la patrie country (land), le pays, la con-

trée country mouse, le rat des champs courage, le courage course, the, le cours, la course course, of, cela va sans dire cousin, le cousin, la cousine cover (with), to, couvrir (de) cow, la vache cowherd, le pâtre, le vacher coxcomb, le fat (t sounded) cream-tart, la tarte à la crême

cream-tart, la tarte à la crême create, to, créer criminal, criminel (-le)

cross, to, traverser, passer, franchir Cross, the, la croix crow, to, chanter

crowd, la foule

crown (with), to, couronner (de) crown, the, la couronne Crusaders, les Croisés, m. cry, to, crier, s'écrier, pleurer cup, la tasse curiosity, la curiosité customary, to be, être l'usage cut, to, couper, tailler; — off, trancher

D

damp, humide dance, to, danser danger, le danger Danube, le Danube dare, to, oser

Cyclops, le Cyclope

dark, sombre, obscur; to be —, faire nuit (sombre)

daughter, la fille dawn, to, poindre, 37

day, le jour, la journée day after to-morrow, après-de-

main
day before yesterday, avant-hier

dead, mort (P. P. of mourir) deaf, sourd

deal with, to, traiter; to have to — with, avoir affaire à deal, a great, beaucoup dear, cher, f., chère

death, la mort, le décès deceitful, trompeur (g), 2 deceive, to, tromper, décevoir

December, décembre, m. decision, la décision declare, to, déclarer

decline, to, refuser decrease, to, décroître, 40

deep, profond defend, to, défendre degree, le degré

delay, to, differer, remettre delay, the, le delai

delighted, enchanté, charmé, ravi, bien aise

delude one's self, to, se bercer (de), se faire illusion demolish, to, démolir demonstration, la démonstration

47

den, l'antre, m. dentist, le dentiste depend, to, dépendre (de) deserve, to, mériter (de) design (drawing), le dessin design (purpose), le dessein desire, to, désirer, vouloir : (=ask) prier (de) destroy, to, détruire, 37 detain, to, retenir devastate, to, dévaster devote (to), to, vouer, consacrer devour, to, dévorer dial, le cadran dictionary, le dictionnaire Dido (queen), Didon die, to, mourir, 30 difference, la différence different, différent, autre difficult, difficile, malaisé difficulty, la difficulté dine, to, dîner dining-room, la salle à manger dint of, by, à force de direction, la direction disappoint, to, décevoir, 33 discomfiture, la déconfiture discover, to, découvrir, 29 discovery, la découverte discretion la discrétion disorderly, mal, d'une manière déréalée displease, to, déplaire (à), 40 disposed (to), disposé (de or à) dissolve, to, dissoudre, 43 distance, la distance, le lointain distinctly, distinctement distinguish, to, distinguer, disdistress, la détresse, la misère district, le district divide, to, diviser, séparer do, to, faire, 38, 146-149; interrog. or neg., 14, 15; emphatic, 86 do, to (health), se porter, aller doctor, le docteur, le médecin dog, le chien doll, la poupée door, la porte; carriage -, la portière

doubt, to, douter doubt, the, le doute Dover, Douvres down (stairs), en bas: to come -, descendre; to fall -, tomber du haut de l'escalier dozen. la douzaine draught, the, le courant d'air, le vent coulis dread, to, craindre, redouter dress, to, se mettre, s'habiller, vêtir drink, to, boire, 40 drive, aller en voiture drop, to, laisser tomber: - a line, écrire deux lignes dry, sec, 54, § 17 to dry, sécher, essuyer duchess, la duchesse during, prep., pendant dust, la poussière Dutch, 'hollandais duty, le devoir

E

each, 76 (c) each other, l'un l'autre, les uns les autres, 76 (c), 118 (2) early, tôt, de bonne heure; - in the morning, de grand matin earth, la terre: why on -? pourauoi donc? east, l'est (t sounded), l'orient, m. easy, facile, aisé, commode eat, to, manger, 17 edifice, l'édifice, m. effort, l'effort, m. egg, l'œuf, m. (f silent in pl.) Egypt, l'Egypte, f. elder, eldest, aîné (-e) election, l'élection, f. elegy, l'élégie, f. elevate, to, élever elm, l'orme, l'ormeau, m. else, sans cela, autrement elsewhere, ailleurs embankment, le quai, la digue embellish, to, embellir emperor, l'empereur empty, to, vider; — itself, se jeter

empty, adv., vide enabled, to be, pouvoir, être à même de enchanting, enchanteur, 54 (g) encourage, to, encourager end, the, la fin, le bout end (by), to, finir (par), terminer enemy, l'ennemi, m. England, l'Angleterre, f. English, anglais: - language, l'anglais Englishman(woman)l'Anglais(e) engraving, la gravure enjoy, to, jouir de enlightened, éclairé enough, assez, 78 enter, to, entrer (dans) enterprise, l'entreprise, f. entreat, to, supplier, conjurer equal, égal equivalent to, to be, équivaloir à err, to, errer escape, to, échapper especially, surtout, particulièreestate, le domaine, la terre esteem, to, estimer esteem, the, l'estime, f. etching, l'eau-forte, f. eve, la veille even, adj., uni; adv., même. evening, le soir, la soirée event, l'événement, m. ever, jamais every, 75 (b); everything, tout everywhere, partout evil, le mal exactly, exactement, justement examination, Texamen, m. examiner, l'examinateur example, l'exemple, m. exceed, to, excéder exclaim, to, s'écrier execrable, exécrable exercise, le thème, l'exercice, m. exhibition, l'exposition, f. expect, to, attendre, s'attendre à, compter, espérer expedition, l'expédition, f. expenses, les dépenses, f.

expensive, cher, dispendieux experience, to, éprouver, rencontrer explain, to, expliquer expose, to, exposer express, to, exprimer extend, to, s'étendre extract, to, extraire, 39 extravagant, extravagant eye, l'æil, m. pl. les yeux

fable, la fable fail, to, faillir, manguer (de), échouer failure, l'insuccès, m. fair, the, la foire fair, adj., clair, blond, beau faith, la foi faithful, fidèle fall, to, tomber (choir, obsol.) false, faux, 54, § 17 falsehood, le mensonge family, la famille famous, fameux fancy, to, s'imaginer, se figurer; just -, imaginez - vous! the fancy takes me to . . . , je m'avise de . . . far (off), loin (de); to be - from, n'avoir garde de ; by -, de beaucoup fast, adv., 79 (4) fat, gras, dodu fault, la faute, le défaut favour, la faveur favourite, favori (-te) fear, to, craindre, 37 fear, la peur, crainte; for -, de crainte que . . . ne, 101 feather, la plume February, février, m. feel, to, sentir, 26 fellow, le compagnon, camarade, pareil, membre, l'égal, etc., to be rendered according to the con-

fellow, le compagnon, camarade, pareil, membre, l'égal, etc., to be rendered according to the context:—awkward—, maladroit; bad—, mauvais garnement; base—, misérable, un infâme; cunning—, rusé compère; fine

-, beau garçon; good -, bon | fond (of), to be, aimer (à, with enfant (bon garçon); lazy -, paresseux, fainéant; my good -, l'ami! mon brave; odd (queer) -, drôle de corps; old -, vieux bonhomme; poor -, pauvre diable; sad -, triste sire; saucy -, effronté; stout -, gros gaillard; young -. jeune homme festival, la fête fetch, to, aller chercher; to send to —, envoyer chercher fever, la fièvre few, peu (de); a few, adj., quelques : subst., quelques-uns fewer, moins (de) field, le champ, la campagne flerce, féroce, farouche, sauvage fig. la fique fight, to, combattre, se battre fight, the, le combat find, to, trouver fine, beau, 53 (f) finger, the, le doigt finish, to, finir, achever fire, the, le feu; the fireside, le coin du feu, le foyer fire, to, faire feu, tirer, 147 fireman, le pompier, le sapeurpompier first, le premier; adv., d'abord, premièrement fish, the, le poisson to fish, pêcher fit, to, aller, 122; convenir flatter, to, flatter flattering, flatteur flea, la puce flee, to, fuir, s'enfuir, 28 fleet, la flotte flourishing, florissant flower, la fleur fly, the, la mouche fly, to, voler; — into a passion, se fâcher, 150 fog, le brouillard, la brume foggy, to be, faire du brouillard follow, to, suivre, 38

to be followed by, être suivi de

fool, foolish, sot, fou, 53 (f) foot, footing, le pied; on —, à pied footpath, le sentier; footprint, le pas for, prep., 187 for, conj., car forbid, to, défendre foresee, to, prévoir forest, la forêt forget, to, oublier (de) forgive, to, pardonner (à) form, la forme, la classe formerly, autrefois fortnight, a, quinze jours, la (une) quinzaine fortress, la forteresse found, to, fonder foundation, la fondation fountain, la fontaine fox. le renard Francis, François Frederick, Frédéric free, libre freeze, to, geler, 16* frequently, fréquemment, souvent French, français Frenchman, le Français fresh, frais, f. fraiche, 54, § 17 Friday, vendredi, m friend, the, l'ami(-e)friendship, *l'amitié*, f. frivolous, frivole from, de, dès, depuis, 188; after verbs of taking, 152 fry, to, frire, faire frire, 42 fugitive, le fugitif fun, la plaisanterie, l'amusement, m.; for -, pour rire fund, le fonds (le fond, bottom) funny, drôle; - fellow, un drôle de corps ; - name, drôle de nom future (tense), le futur ; (coming events), l'avenir, m.; for the -, à l'avenir

gain, to, gagner; (watch), avancer (de)

gallant, vaillant, brave game, (play), le jeu; (hunt), le aibier garden, le jardin' gardener, le jardinier gather, to, cueillir, 28, 125; recueillir, (=hear) apprendre gender, le genre general, le général Geneva, Genève (Genoa, Gênes) gentleman, monsieur, pl. messieurs, 51 (e) gentlemanly, comme il faut gently, doucement, tout doux German, allemand Germany, l'Allemagne, f. get, to, faire, 148 (c) get up, to, se lever get angry (with), to, se facher (contre) ghost, le revenant gist, l'essentiel, m.; le fin mot, le point capital give back, to, rendre glad, aise, fort (bien) aise, content gladiator, see 208(b)glass, le verre glove, le gant go, to, aller, 24, 122 go away, s'en aller, 123 go out, sortir, 26, 124 go to bed, se coucher, aller se coucher go up, monter gold, l'or, m.; adj., d'or, en or good, bon, bonne govern, to (gram.), régir governess, la gouvernante grace, la grâce, la faveur the good graces, les bonnes grâces grammar, la grammaire grandfather, le grand-père grandmother, la grand'mère; mère-grand (fam.) grape, le raisin grass, l'herbe, f. graze, to, paître, 40 great, grand Greece, la Grèce

Greek, grec, f. grecque, 53 (d), Obs. green, vert greet, to, saluer grieve, to (intrans.), s'affliger: (trans.), chagriner, fâcher, faire de la peine grind, to, moudre, 42 ground, le sol; on the -, par terre, à terre grow, to, croître, devenir grudge to bear a, en vouloir (à), grumble, grommeler gudgeon, le goujon guest, l'hôte, le convié guide, le guide guilty, coupable gun, le fusil (l silent)

gush, to, jaillir, saillir, 28 H habit (custom), l'habitude, f. ; la contume habit (dress), l'habit, m. haddock, la merluche hail, to, grêler, 22 hair (collective), les cheveux, la chevelure (le cheveu, a single hair) half, adj., demi (-e); subst., la moitié half past . . . ; . . . et demi (-e) hand, la main; from - to mouth, 182 (b), 2 hang, to, pendre, suspendre happen, to, impers., arriver, survenir happy, heureux (-se) hard, adj., dur; (difficult),

happy, heureux (-se)
hard, adj., dur; (difficult),
difficile; adv., fort; it rains—,
il pleut à verse; it freezes—,
il gèle à pierre fendre; to
work—, fam. piocher
hardly, adv., ne...guère; conj.,

à peine; ne...pas plus tôt harm, le mal

to do —, nuire (d), faire mal (d) haste, la hâte; to make —, to hasten, se hâter, se dépêcher

hat, le chapeau

hatchet, la coanée hate, hatred, la haine hate, to, haïr, 17; détester

have, to (to get), 148; to have better, 149; to have just. venir de, 126; to have rather, aimer mieux, vouloir (in the Condit.) plutôt

he, il, lui, celui, 58, 63, 69 (a)

head, la tête

health, la santé

healthy, sain, salubre, bien por-

hear, to, entendre

hear from, to, avoir (recevoir) des nouvelles de, 173

heart, le cœur ; by —, par cœur heartily, cordialement

heat, la chaleur

heaven(s), le ciel, les cieux

heavenly, céleste

heavy, lourd, pesant, gros, massif hedge, la haie

heedless, étourdi, inattentif

height, la hauteur

hell, l'enfer, m.

help, to, aider, assister; to help to, servir, 124

help one's self, s'aider; — to, se servir de; I can't help..., je ne puis m'empêcher de

helve, le manche

Helvetian, l'Helvetien, l'Helvète

her, pers. pron., 58-63, 69

her, poss. adj., 64

hers, poss. pron., 65

herd, le troupeau

here, ici; — I am, me voici hero, le héros, 203 (c)

hide, to, cacher, céler

high, haut, élevé

hill, la colline, le coteau, la hauteur him, le, lui, 58-63

hold, to, tenir, 30

holiday, jour de congé, m.

holidays, les vacances, f. home, la maison, le chez soi, 63; at -, chez soi, à la maison ; at my -, chez moi; to make

one's self at -, ne pas se gêner in order that, afin que, 101

honest, honnête, probe honey, le miel

honour, l'honneur, m.

hope, l'espoir, m., l'espérance, f. hope, to, espérer, 16

horse, le cheval ; on - back, à cheval

hot, chaud, 22 hotel, l'hôtel, m.

how, comme; interrog., comment;

- long, combien de temps: - many, (much), combien (de); how old is...? quel âge a...?

however, adv., quelque, § 36 however, conj., cependant

human, humane, humain

humming-bird, l'oiseau-mouche, m. humour, l'humeur, f.

hundredweight, le quintal

hunger, la faim; to be hungry, avoir faim

hunt, to, chasser hunter, le chasseur

hurry, to be in a, être presse, avoir hâte (de); in a great très pressé

hurt, to, faire mal (à) husband, le mari, l'époux hydrogen, l'hydrogène, m.

I, je, moi, 58-63

idea, l'idée, f. idle, paresseux

idler, le paresseux, le fainéant

if, si, 94 ill, adj., malade; adv., mal

ill-gotten, mal acquis

ill-will, see 135

image, l'image, f.

imitate, to, imiter

immediately, immédiatement, aussitôt, sur-le-champ

impatient, impatient

impertinent, impertinent important, important

to be - (impers.), importer in, en, dans, 188; to be —, être à la maison, y être, être chez soi

inattentive, inattentif, étourdi incapable, incapable income, le revenu, les recettes incomparably, incomparablement increase, to, croître, 40 indebted, to be, devoir, 32, 130, 131 indeed, vraiment, en effet Indian, l'Indian(ne) infallible, infaillible infer, to, conclure, 40 inform, to, informer, instruire, 37 infringe, to, enfreindre, 37 inhabit, to, habiter inhabitant, l'habitant, m. ink, l'encre, f. insect, l'insecte, m. insist, to, insister, 97 inspire, to, inspirer instant, the, l'instant, m. ; adj., courant (in dates) instead of, au lieu de instruct, to, instruire, informer intelligence, l'intelligence, f., la nouvelle, l'avis, m., le renseignement, m. intend, to, vouloir, se proposer (de), avoir l'intention (de) interesting, intéressant interference, l'intervention, f. invade, to, envahir invite, to, inviter (a), prier (de) inwards, en dedans iron, the, le fer; adj., de fer to iron, repasser irreconcilable, irréconciliable island, l'île, f. It, il, ce, le, 70 Italian, italien (-ne) Italy, l'Italie, f. itself, même; reflex., se, 20, 117

J

James, Jacques January, janvier, m. Japan, le Japon jewel, le bijou, 48 (a), Obs. jew's harp, la guimbarde John, Jean join, to, joindre, rejoindre, 36, 142 journey, the, le voyage judge, to, juger judge, the, le juge July, juillet, m. jump, to, sauter June, juin, m. just, juste, un peu; to have just, 126, 149 (d) just now, tout à l'heure

K

keep, to, tenir, garder, observer; intrans., se tenir
kettle, la bouilloire
kid, le chevreau
kill, to, tuer
kindly, avec bonté, obligeamment
kindness, l'obligeance, f., la bonté
king, le roi; —dom, le royaume
knee, le genou, pl. —x
knife, le couteau
knocked up, to be, n'en pouvoir
plus
know, to, connaître, 40; savoir,
32, 132, 153

knowledge, les connaissances, f. L

lack, to, manquer de
lady, la dame
ladylike, comme il faut
lake, le lac
lamentable, lamentable
land, le pays, la terre
landscape, le paysage
language (tongue), la langue;
(any way of conveying one's
thoughts, or manner of speaking) le langage
last, dernier, passé; at last, enfin; last night, hier (au) soir

fin; last night, hier (au) soir late, tard; to be late, être en retard; to grow late, se faire tard

Latin, latin, la langue latine laugh, to, rire; — at, se moquer de laughter, le rire

laundress, the, la blanchisseuse law, la loi

lay, to, poser, mettre, 38; asseoir; to lay the blame on, 150

lazy, paresseux; — bones, le fainéant

lead, to, conduire, § 11 (b): mener learn, to, apprendre, § 11 (e) least, the, le (la) moindre

least, at, au moins

leave, to, quitter; - for, partir pour : - out, omettre : - off at, en rester à

left. P. P., see leave

left, adj., gauche lend, to, prêter

leniently, avec indulgence

less, moins (de), § 38

lest, de crainte que . . . ne, with Subi.

let, to, laisser faire; Aux. Verb to form the Imperat., 4, 6, 10, 19, 20; (houses, etc.), louer

letter, la lettre

liberty, la liberté lie, to, gésir, § 9 (c); to — off, être à la hauteur de

life, la vie

lift (up), to, lever

light, to, allumer light, the, la lumière, le jour

lighten, to, 22

like, to, aimer, vouloir, trouver à son gout; how do you like . . . ? Comment trouvez-vous . . . ? how do you like Paris? Com-

ment vous plaisez-vous à Paris? like, adv., comme; semblable à

line, la ligne linen, le linge

lion, le lion, la lionne

listen (to), to, écouter; (with Dir. Obj.), entendre raison, Ex. 11 (b)

little, adj., petit; adv., peu (de) live to (to be alive), vivre, § 11 (c); (=to reside), demeurer

Lombardy, la Lombardie long, long, f. longue, § 16; (a) long time, longtemps; for a --pendant longtemps; to be - in, tarder à; I long to, il me tarde de, impers.

look (at), to, regarder look for, to, chercher

looking-glass, le miroir, la glace lose, to, perdre; (watch), retarder;

- courage, se décourager loud, haut, à haute voix

love, to, aimer

love, the, l'amour, m. in sing., f. in pl.

low, bas (-se)

lower, to, baisser; see also 150 luggage, le bagage

lynx, le lynx, loup-cervier

M

Madam, madame

magnificent, magnifique, superbe maid-servant, la servante, bonne maintain, to, maintenir, soutenir

majority, la plupart

make to, faire; with an adj., rendre: to - meet, joindre . . .; to - up, se dédommager, se rattraper; to - up one's mind, se résoudre (à), prendre son parti malignant, malin; f., maligne

man, l'homme, m.

man-of-war, le vaisseau de guerre manage, to, réussir à

manner, la manière; in a -,

d'une many, beaucoup de, bien des, 46 (b), 77 (c)

March, mars, m.

march, the, la marche

marry, to, se marier, épouser master, the, le maître; (tutor), l'instituteur, professeur

master thoroughly, to, étudier à fond, se rendre maître de

masterpiece, le chef-d'œuvre, 51(b)match-box, la boîte aux allumettes matter, la matière : to be a — of

course, aller sans dire; what is the -? qu'est-ce qu'il y a? what is the - with you? qu'avez-vous?

mature, mûr : (bill), échu ; to be (become) -, échoir May, mai, m. may, 101; pouvoir, 133 maze, le dédale, le labyrinthe me, me, moi, 58-63 meadow, la prairie, le pré mealy-mouthed, doucereux mean, to, vouloir dire, signifier measure. la mesure meat, la viande Mediterranean, la Méditerranée meet, to, rencontrer; to go to -. aller à la rencontre de : to make __, joindre men (people), les gens, m. or f. mend, to, raccommoder merchant, le négociant merit. le mérite merry, gai, joyeux messenger, le messager Mexico, le Mexique; (city), Mexico midst, middle, le milieu mild, doux, tempéré milk, the, le lait milk, to, traire, 38 mill, le moulin; (= factory), l'usine, f., la fabrique, la filature mind, to, prendre garde, 151 mind, the, l'esprit, m., la raison : to have a -, avoir envie; to change one's -, changer de dessein; to make up one's -. prendre son parti minister, le ministre minute, la minute mirror, le miroir, la glace miser, l'avare misery, la misère, le supplice mishap, la mésaventure, le contretemps Miss, mademoiselle, 51 (e) miss, to, manquer mistake, la faute, l'erreur, f., la méprise mistaken, to be, se tromper Monday, lundi, m. money, l'argent, m. month, le mois moon, la lune

more, the, plus (de), 55, 78 (c), 80, 167 morning, le matin, la matinée; good morning! bonjour! I wish you a good -, Je vous souhaite le bonjour! mortal, mortel (-le) mortar, le mortier most, 80; most part, most of them, la plupart mountain, la montagne mouse, la souris : church —. le rat d'éalise mouth, la bouche ; (river), l'embouchure, f.; (cavern), l'entrée, f. move, to, remuer, mouvoir, §10 (a); (intrans.), bouger, se remuer Mr., monsieur, M. Mrs., madame, Mme, much, beaucoup (de) music, la musique musician, le musicien must, il faut, 32, 100, 138 mutton, le mouton mutual, mutuel (-le) my, mon, ma, mes, 64

N name, le nom ; by name, de nom

native, natif, natal, indigène - country la patrie, le pays natal natural, naturel (-le) nature. la nature naughty, méchant, vilain near, près, près de nearly, presque: see also 125 necessary, nécessaire; to be -. il faut, 136, 137 neck, le cou necklace, le collier neglect, to, négliger neighbour, le voisin, la voisine : in Scriptural sense, le prochain neither . . . nor, ni . . . ni nephew, le neveu never, ne . . . jamais, 14 new, neuf, nouveau, 53

news, la nouvelle

newspaper, le journal, la gazette next, prochain niece, la nièce night, la nuit no, adj., pas de, point de, 78 (c) no, adv., non, 79 (f) nobody, no one, personne...ne, or ne...personne, m., 76 (c) noise, le bruit, vacarme, tapage noisy, bruyant, tapageur noon, midi, m. north, le nord : - wind, le vent du nord nose, le nez not, ne . . . pas, ne . . . point note, le billet, la note nothing, ne . . . rien, 76 (c) nothing but, ne.., rien que (de) notice, to, remarquer, s'apercevoir noun, le nom, le substantif novel. le roman November, novembre, m. now, à présent, maintenant, or nowhere, nulle part nurse, la bonne nut (walnut), la noix; (woodnut), la noisette

)

obedient, obéissant, soumis obey, to, obéir (à) object, the, l'objet, m. oblige, to, obliger obliged, to be, être obligé de, devoir, 130, 131; falloir, 136, 137 obtain, to, obtenir occasion, l'occasion, f.; to have no - for, n'avoir que faire de o'clock, heure(s), f. October, octobre, m. of, de, 44; in compounds, 50, 184 of course, cela va sans dire of it, en, 59, 171 off, 189 offend, to, offenser offer, l'offre, f. offer, to, offrir, 28, 125 officer, l'officier ogre, l'ogre; f., ogresse

old. vieux, 53: how - are you? quel dae avez-vous? omlet, l'omelette, f. omnibus, l'omnibus, m. (s sounded) on, sur, 189 on account of, à cause de once, une fois; at once, see at one, on, 76 (c); the one, celui, 68 (d); - eyed, borgne one another, l'un l'autre, les uns les autres, 76 (c), 118 only, seulement, ne . . . que open, to, ouvrir, 28; adj., ouvert opinion, l'opinion, f., l'avis, m. opponent, l'adversaire, m. opportunity, l'occasion (de), f., (l'opportunité, f., = opportuneness) opposite, opposé, vis-à-vis, en face or, ou; either . . . or, ou . . . ou orange, l'orange, f. orchard, le verger order, the, l'ordre, m. order, to, commander; faire, 148; in order to, pour, afin de, 107 orphan, l'orphelin(e) Ostend, Ostende other, autre, 75, 76 ought, devoir, 32, 130, 131 our, notre; ours, le nôtre, 64, 65, 173 out, out of, 190 out, to be, être sorti, en ville togo -, sortir; (fire), s'éteindre over, sur, par-dessus, 190 overcoat, le pardessus, le surtout overcome, to, surmonter, vaincre overdone (meat), trop cuit(e) overtake, to, rejoindre, 36 owe, to, devoir, 130, 131 ox, le bœuf (f silent in pl.) oxygen, l'oxygène, m.

P

pain, la peine, la douleur, la souffrance; to have a — in . . . , avoir mal à . . . pair, la paire; a carriage and —.

pair, la paire ; a carriage and une voiture à deux chevaux

palace, le palais palate, le palais paper, le papier paradise, le paradis parcel, le paquet pardon, to, pardonner (à) pardon, the, le pardon parents, les parents, m. parlour, le petit salon parrot, le perroquet part, la partie particular, particulier; to be - about, tenir à, 127 partner (in business), l'associé; (at games), partenaire pass, to, passer (se) passage, le passage passion, la passion, la colère pasture, the, le pâturage pave, to, paver pay, to, payer peace, la paix pear, la poire peasant, le paysan pebble, le caillou, 48 (a) pen, la plume people, les gens, m. and f.; on, 76 per cent, pour cent perceive, to, apercevoir, s'apercevoir de, 33 perfect, parfait perhaps, peut-être Pericles, Périclès (s sounded) permission, la permission persevere, to, persévérer persist, to, persister persuade, to, persuader physician, le médecin piano, le piano pick out, to, choisir pick up, to, ramasser picture, le tableau, l'image, f., la peinture (painting) piece, la pièce; (=bit), le morceau piercing, perçant pine-apple, l'ananas, m. pine-tree, le pin pitch, to (trans.), dresser; - (a camp), asseoir

pity, to, plaindre, 36, 142; avoir vitié de pity (on), la pitié (de) place, la place plain, simple plant, la plante play, le jeu, le spectacle play, to, jouer (de with the name of a musical instrument, à with the name of a game) pleasant, agréable, aimable, gracieux; plaisant (placed after the Noun) please, to, plaire (à), 40, 155 pleased, to be, être content, 155 pleasure, le plaisir plentiful, abondant plenty, l'abondance, f.; - of, force (without de) plum, la prune plunder, to, piller Plutarch, Plutarque poacher, le braconnier poem, le poème poet, le poète point, the, le point, la pointe point, to, se diriger, se tourner policeman, le gendarme, le sergent de ville poor, pauvre; (- meal), maigre poorly, indisposé porous, poreux port, le port possess, to, posséder, 16; avoir post, to, expédier postage-stamp, le timbre-poste, postman, le facteur post-office, the, la poste, le bureau de poste postpone, to, renvoyer, remettre, différer postscript, le postscriptum, 49 (3) potato, la pomme de terre pound, la livre poverty, la pauvreté power, la puissance, le pouvoir powerful, puissant praise, to, louer prefer, to, préférer, 16

preference, la préférence prepare, to, (se) préparer prescription, la prescription present, le présent, cadeau press, to, presser pretend, to, prétendre, feindre, 37; faire le, 146 pretty, joli prevail, to, prévaloir, l'emporter prevent (from), to, empêcher (de) price, le prix prince, the, le prince prisoner, le prisonnier, le détenu prize, le prix probable, probable profession, la profession, l'état, professor, le professeur promise, to, promettre, 38, 150 promise, the, la promesse properly, comme il faut property, le bien; (landed), la propriété, les terres: (la propreté, cleanliness) proportion as, in, à mesure que proposal, la proposition propose, to, proposer prose, la prose proud, fier (one syllable) proverb, le proverbe provide for, to, pourvoir à, 35, provided that, pourvu que, with Subj., 101 province, la province prudently, prudemment, avec prudence, sagement pumice-stone, la pierre-ponce punctual (-ly), ponctuel (-lement) punish, to, punir pupil, l'élève, m. and f. (la pupille, the ward) pure, pur pursue, poursuivre, 38 put, to, mettre, 38, 150 put off, to, différer, 16 put on, to, mettre, 38, 150 to - on one's hat, se couvrir put the horse to, to, atteler, 16 Pyronees, les Pyrénées, f.

Q

quarrel, la querelle quarter, le quart; a — of an hour, un quart d'heure queen, la reine

quench, to, étancher
question, the, la question; what
is the — about? de quoi

s'agit-il? quick, quickly, vite, 79 (4); prompt, leste; to be — at answering, être prompt à la repartie; or, avoir la repartie prompte

quicken, to, accélérer quiet, tranquille, calme quite, tout à fait, complètement; as a qualifying adj., tout, très

R

radish, le radis
rage, la rage
railway, le chemin de fer
railway-station, la gare, station
rain, la pluie; — bow, l'arc-en-ciel
rain, to, pleuvoir, 22, 32
rather (= sooner), plutôt; (=
somewhat), tant soit peu,
quelque peu; to have —, aimer
mieux

rattlesnake, le serpent à sonnettes raven, le corbeau reach, to, atteindre, parvenir à,

arriver à

read, to, lire, 40, 155 reading, the, la lecture ready, prêt (à)

really, réellement, vraiment

reason, to, raisonner

receive, to, recevoir, 32, 129

reckon, to, compter (pron. = conter) recognise, to, reconnaître, 41, 153 recollect, to, se souvenir de, se rappeler

recommend, to, recommander red, rouge; (hair, etc.), roux, -sse redouble, to, redoubler (de)

reduce (to), to, réduire (en), 37 reflect, to, réfléchir reflexively, pronominalement refuse, to, refuser (a) regret, to, regretter, être fâché regular, régulier rejoice, se réjouir relate, to, raconter, conter reliable, sûr, digne de confiance rely on, to, se fier à, compter sur remain, to, rester, with être, 113 remarkable, remarquable remedy, to, remédier à remember, to, se souvenir de, 31; se rappeler, see also 145, Idioms render, to, rendre renounce, to, renoncer à repeat, to, répéter, 16; redire, 39, repent, to, se repentir, 26, 118, 124 reply, to, répondre (à), répliquer reply, the, la réponse reproach with, to, reprocher à ggn. request, to, demander, faire, 148 request, the, la demande require, to, exiger resist, to, résister (à) resolution, la résolution resolve, to, résoudre (de) respect, to, respecter rest, to, se reposer; - with, dépendre de

retainers, les gens : vassaux return, to (intr.), retourner, être de retour; (tr.), rendre; (money), rembourser

return, the, le retour; by - of post, par retour du courrier revive, to (trans.), ranimer, régénérer : (intrans.), revivre reward, la récompense

reward, to, récompenser rich, riche; (cake, etc.), lourd ride, to, aller (monter) à cheval riding-hood, chaperon

right, adj., droit; to be -, avoir raison; to think it -, croire devoir, 102(b, 3)

ring, to, sonner

ring, the, la baque, l'anneau, m. ripe, mar rise, to (get up), se lever rise, the, le lever; to take its -. prendre sa source, naître risk, the, le risque rivor, la rivière, le fleuve road, la route, le chemin roadside, le bord du chemin roar, to, bruire, 42 roast, rôti rob, to, voler, dévaliser robber, le voleur, brigand rock, le roc, rocher, la roche Roman, Romain; adj., romain roof, le toit

room, la chambre : (space), la place, l'espace, m. root, la racine round, rond rose, la rose

rose-tree, le rosier row, to, ramer, canoter; to go for a -, aller en bateau royal, royal

rue, to, 143 rug, le tapis, la descente de lit ruin, to, ruiner

rule, la règle ; as a —, règle géné-

run, to, courir, 30; - away, s'enfuir, 28; - through, parcourir. 30 rush, to, se précipiter, s'élancer

Russia, la Russie Russian, Russe; adj., russe

sabre, le sabre sad, triste safe, adj., sûr, en sûreté sail, the, la voile (le voile, veil) sail, to; set —, faire (mettre à la) voile sailor, le matelot, le marin sake, for . . . 's-, pour l'amour de salt, le sel same, le (la) même Saracen, le Sarrasin

satisfied (with), satisfait (de), content (de) Saturday, samedi, m. savage, sauvage, farouche, féroce Savoy, la Savoie say, to, dire, 38, 145 scald, to, échauder school, l'école, f.; at -, à l'scissors, les ciseaux, m. scout, l'éclaireur, m. sea, la mer seaside, le bord de la mer season, to, assaisonner season, the, la saison seat, le siège, la place; to take a -, s'asseoir second-hand, d'occasion, de rensecret, le secret see, to, voir, 34, 140 to - again, revoir seem, to, sembler, paraître, 41 seize, to, saisir, se saisir de, s'emparer de select, to, choisir sell, to, vendre send, to, envoyer; to - for, envoyer chercher; - word, voyer dire sense, le sens (s sounded), la signification sentence (gram.), la phrase, proposition; (judgment), la sentence September, septembre, m. serious, sérieux servant, le (la) domestique, la servante serve, to, servir, 26, 124 set about, to, 151; to - out, partir, 26; se mettre en route; to - sail, mettre à la voile; to - value on, faire cas de several, plusieurs, m. and f. sewing-machine, la machine à shade, shadow, l'ombre, f., l'ombrage, m. shall and will, 157 shame, la honte, vergogne sharp, aigu, tranchant, pointu

she, elle, 58-63, 69 (a) shed, to, répandre, verser shell, la coquille, le coquillage shilling, schelling, m. shine, to, luire, 36; briller shocked, choqué, indigné shoe, le soulier shore, le rivage, la rive short, court, bref, 79 (3) should and would, 96, 157 shout, to, crier show, to, montrer, faire voir; - into, faire entrer, 146 shrimp, la crevette shut, to, fermer (clore, obsol.) sick, malade, indisposé sight, la vue, le spectacle; by —, de vue signify, to, signifier, vouloir dire silent, to be, se taire, 40, 155 silkworm, le ver à soie silver, l'argent, m. since, prep., depuis, 90, 91 since, conj., depuis que, 90, 91 since (=as), puisque sincerity, la sincérité sing, to, chanter singular, le singulier siren, la sirène sister. la sœur sit (down), to, s'asseoir, 34 (e), 141 situated, situé situation, la situation, la place skate, to, patiner skin, la peau slave, l'esclave, m. and f. sleep, to, dormir, 26, 124 sleepy, to be, avoir sommeil, avoir envie de dormir slip, to, glisser; my foot slipped, le pied m'a glissé; j'ai fait un faux pas slow (to), lent à to be — in, tarder à smell, to, sentir, 26, 124; flairer smile, to, sourire, 38, 145 snob, le faquin, le poseur snow, la neige; - clad, neigeux; snow, to, neiger, 16 snuff, le tabac à priser

so, adv., si, aussi; (= thus), ainsi so, adv., le, neutral pron., 60, 171 so, conj., si so as to, de manière à, 109 so many, so much, tant, autant so so, tout doucement so that, pour que, 109 (3) society, la société Socrates, Socrate. soft, mou, 53 soldier, le soldat solidity, la solidité some, quelques, 75 (a); en, 59, 171 something, quelque chose, m. sometimes, quelquefois sometimes . . . sometimes, tantôt . . . tantôt soon, bientôt; as — as, aussitôt que, dès que no sooner, ne... pas plus tôt, à peine sorcerer, le sorcier sore, mal; to have a sore. avoir mal à . . . sorrow, le chagrin, la peine sorry (for), fâché (de) soul, l'ame, f. source, la source; to take its -, naître, 40(f)south, le sud, le midi : - eastern, sud-est (t sounded) South America, l'Amérique du Sud sovereign, le souverain sow, to, semer, 16 (c) Spain, l'Espagne, f. Spanish, espagnol, d'Espagne sparrow, le moineau speak, to, parler speak ill, médire, 39 spectacles, les lunettes, f. speech, la (les) parole(s), le discours spend, to (money), dépenser spend, to (time), passer

spendthrift, le prodigue, le dissi-

spindle, le fuseau; - shanks,

pateur, le bourreau d'argent

jambes de fuseau

sport, le divertissement sprain, to, (se) fouler, (se) donner une entorse à spread, to, répandre; to - out, étendre spreading, touffu, vaste spring (season), le printemps squander, to, gaspiller square, adj., carré (-e) stag, le cerf stairs, l'escalier, m. stake, at see 2 (b) stand, to, se tenir debout stand out, saillir, 28 stand straight, se tenir droit star, l'étoile, f., l'astre, m. start, to (=to shudder), tressaillir start, to (= to set out), partir starveling, l'affamé, le meurt-defaim station, la station, la gare stay, to, rester, demeurer steak, le bifteck steamboat, steamer, le bateau à vapeur, le vapeur, steamer (pron. stimeur) steel, l'acier, m.; steel pen, la plume d'acier, plume métallique step, le pas, la démarche; carriage -, le marche-pied still, adv., encore stirrup-leather, des coups d'étrivière stone, la pierre, le pavé stop, to, (s')arrêter story, l'histoire, f., le conte strange, étrange stranger, étranger, étrangère straw, la paille strawberry, la fraise stray about, to, errer street, la rue strike, to, frapper, battre; (clock), sonner strong, fort study, to, étudier study, the, l'étude, f. style, le style; — of living, la manière de vivre subjunctive, le subjonctif

succeed (in), to, réussir (à) success, le succès successful, heureux; to be réussir such a, un tel suffer, to, souffrir, 28, 125; to — one's self to be 149 suffice, to, suffire, 38 sufficient, adj., suffisant; adv., assez sugar, le sucre tell, to, dire, 38; (to relate), suit, to, convenir, aller, 122 summer, l'été, m. summit, le sommet, la cime, le faîte sumptuous, somptueux sun. le soleil sunriso, le lever du soleil, le soleil levant Sunday, dimanche, m. sup, to, souper superior, supérieur (-e) suppose, to, supposer surprise, to, surprendre, étonner surrender, to, se rendre surround, to, entourer, cerner, investir suspect, to, soupconner, se douter swallow, l'hirondelle, f. swarm (of bees), l'essaim, m.; la foule, la nuée Sweden, la Suède sweet, doux, 54, § 17 sweeten, to, sucrer sweets, les bonbons, m. Swiss, suisse Switzerland, la Suisse

T

sword, l'épée, f.

table, la table tailor, le tailleur take, to, prendre, 38, 151; - up, ramasser; - a walk, se promener, 16; faire un tour de promenade talent, le talent tall, grand, de haute taille

tame, apprivoisé task, le devoir, le pensum tea, le thé tea-cup, la tasse à thé teach, enseigner, instruire, apprendre tear to pieces, to, déchirer ; to - each other to pieces, s'entre-déchirer tear, the, la larme, le sanglot

raconter term, le terme, la condition tense, le temps Thames, la Tamise thank, to, remercier, rendre.

grâce(s) that, dem. pron., ce, cela, celui,

that, relat. pron., 72-74 that way, par là the, le, la, les, 44-46 theatre, le théâtre, le spectacle thee, te, toi, 58-63 their, leur; theirs, 64, 65

them, les, 58-62; eux, 63 then (=therefore), donc then (=at that time), alors there is, il y a, § 36; voilà thereupon, sur cela, là-dessus

thermometer, le thermomètre these, adj., ces, 66; pron., ceux, 68

they, ils, 58; eux, 63; ceux, 68, 69 (a); (= people), on, 76 (c) thick, épais (-se)

thing, la chose

think, to, penser, songer (a); (=tobelieve), croire; to - better

of it, se raviser thirst, la soif

thirsty, to be, avoir soif this, ce, cet, cette; celui-ci, ceci, 66-68

this way, par ici thistle, le chardon thoroughly, à fond

though, conj., quoique; interj., vraiment

thread, le fil

threaten, to, menacer three, trois throne, le trône through, par, à travers, au travers de, 191 throw away, to, jeter, 16 thunder, to, tonner thunder, the, le tonnerre - storm, l'orage, m. Thursday, jeudi, m. tight, étroit, juste till, prep., jusqu'à, 191; conj., jusqu'à ce que, 101 time, le temps time(s) (multiplication), la fois, 57, § 23 tired, fatigué; las, f. lasse to, 44, 182 to-day, aujourd'hui; - week, d'aujourd'hui en huit (jours) together, ensemble to-morrow, demain Tom. Thomas too, trop (de), 46 (b) too much, too many, trop (de) top, le haut, le sommet, la cime touch, to, toucher (à) touchstone, la pierre de touche towards, vers, envers town, la ville; - mouse, le rat de ville town-hall, l'hôtel de ville, m. train, le train, le convoi translate, to, traduire, 37, 143 translation, la traduction, la version Trasimenus, Trasimène travel, to, voyager; to - from ... to..., aller de...à... travel, the, le voyage traveller, le voyageur tread, to, marcher treasure, le trésor treat, to, traiter tree, l'arbre, m. tremble (with), to, trembler (de) tribe, la tribu, la peuplade trouble, la peine, le souci truant, to play, faire l'école

buissonnière

true, vrai, véritable trusty, fidèle, éprouvé truth, la vérité try, to, essayer (de), 17; tâcher (de), chercher (à) Tuesday, mardi, m. tulip, la tulipe Turkey, la Turquie turkey-cock, coq d'Inde, dindon turf, le gazon turn, to, tourner turn, to, intrans., retourner; - to account, mettre à profit : - out of doors, mettre à la porte, chasser turn, the, le tour; it is your -,

midi, m.; (midnight), minuit, f. U

twelve, douze; - o'clock (noon),

c'est à vous à . . .

Ulysses, Ulysse

under, sous, 191 underdone (meat), saignant underline, to, souligner understand, to, comprendre, 39; entendre undertake, to, entreprendre undertaking, l'entreprise, f. uneasy, inquiet unfortunate, infortuné, malheureux unfortunately, malheureusement ungrateful, ingrat unless, à moins que . . . ne, 101 until, conj., jusqu'à ce que; prep., jusqu'à unworthy, indigne upon, sur, 189 upstairs, en haut; see also 147 to come (go) -, monter upstart, le parvenu urchin, le moutard us, nous, 58-63 use, the, l'emploi, m., l'usage, (= custom, l'usage)to make — of, se servir de use, to, employer, 17; se servir de,

avoir coutume; see also 88

useful, utile useless, inutile, en vain usurer, l'usurier

V

vain, in, en vain: to be in - for . . . , avoir beau valet, le valet value, the, la valeur; to set on, faire cas de vanity, la vanité veal. le veau Venice, Venise, f. venture, the, l'entreprise, f., la spéculation verb. le verbe verse, le vers very, très, bien, fort very much, fort, beaucoup (never très beaucoup), infiniment vessel, le vaisseau, le navire victory, la victoire view, la vue, l'aspect, m. vinegar, le vinaigre violin, le violon visit, la visite, 146 voice, la voix volume, le volume

W

wait (for), to, attendre waiting-room, la salle d'attente walk, the, la promenade, le tour de promenade walk, to, marcher, se promener, cheminer wall, le mur; (of a room), la paroi wander, to, errer; - over, parcourir want, le besoin, le manque want, to, falloir, 32, 136, 137; vouloir, 134, 135; désirer; (= to be in need of), avoir besoin de war, la guerre warm, to be (pers.), avoir chaud; (impers.), faire chaud warn, to, avertir wash, to, laver, blanchir

watch (time-keeper), la montre water, l'eau, f. water, to (plants), arroser: (beasts), abreuver wave, the, la vague, la lame way, le chemin; which way? par où? this way, par ici: that -, par là we, nous, 58-63, 196-172 weak, faible wealth, la richesse, les richesses wealthy, riche, opulent weather, le temps, la temperature Wednesday, mercredi, m. week, la semaine; every —, tous les huit jours; to-day —, dans huit jours welcome, le (la) bienvenu (-e), pl. les bienvenu-s (-es) well, bien; interj., eh bien west, l'ouest, m., l'occident, m. western, occidental, de l'ouest what, relat. pron., que, quoi, 74; interrog. pron., quel, 71 whatever, quoique, quelque, § 36 when, quand, lorsque, que, 91 (3) when? quand whenever, toutes les fois que, chaque fois que where, où whether, si; whether . . . or, . que . . . ou which, interr., 71(b); relat., 72, while, whilst, pendant que, tandis que white, blanc, § 16 (d) who, interr., 71 (b); relat., 72, 73whoever, quiconque, 76 (c) whole, the, tout le, toute la; le . . . entier, la . . . entière why? pourquoi? why . . . not ...? que ne ...? why! interj., mais wicked, méchant, mauvais wild, sauvage, farouche will, vouloir; will and shall, 157

will, the, la volonté; ill-will,

135

willing, to be, vouloir, 32 (c), 134 willingly, volontiers win, to, gagner, obtenir, acquérir wind, the, le vent window, la fenêtre, la croisée carriage-window, la glace wine, le vin ; - glass, le verre à vin winter, l'hiver, m. wise, sage wish, to, (1) = to desire, désirer, vouloir; (2) greeting, souhaiter, to - well, 135 with, 192 withdraw, se retirer without, sans (with Infinit,), sans que (with Subj.), Ex. 20 wolf, le loup, f. la louve wont, to be, 87 word, le mot, la parole work, le travail, l'ouvrage, m. works of an author, œuvres, f. work, to, travailler; fam., piocher world, le monde, l'univers, m. worse, adj., pire, plus mauvais; adv., pis, le plus mal, 79, 80 so much the -, tant pis

worst, le pire, le plus mal, 79, 89 worth, the, la valeur worth, to be, valoir, 140 would and should, 157 write, to, écrire, 36 wrong, to be, avoir tort; to do—(to), faire tort (à)

Y

yard, le yard; (10 yards = 9 mètres)
year, l'an, m., l'année, f.
yellow, jaune
yes, oui, que oui (si, in answer to
a negative question), 79 (f)
yesterday, hier (in one syllable)
yet, adv., encore; not yet, pas
encore
yet, conj., cependant
yonder, là-bas
young, jeune
you, vous, 58-63
your, 64; yours, 65

 \mathbf{z}

zero, zéro, m.

THE END



WORKS ON

FRENCH GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

First Lessons in French. By H. COURTHOPE BOWEN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 15. 3d.

Elementary French Exercises. By Rev. B. V. F. BRACKENBURY. M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. KEY, 3s. 6d. net. L'Anglais Parlé et Écrit pour Classes Avancées. Par G. Bracken-

BURY, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d.

A Historical French Grammar. By Arsène Darmesteter. Edited by E. Murrt and L. Sudre. English Edition by A. Hartog. Crown 8vo. 15s. Book II. Morphology, or the Study of Grammatical Forms. Crown 8vo. 4s.

Lectures Maritimes. By Prof. L. Delbos, H.M.S. Britannia, Fcap.

8vo. 2s. 6d. net.

Sea Stories for French Composition By Prof. L. Delbos. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. net.

The Organic Method of Studying Languages. By G. E. FASNACHT, late Assistant Master at Westminster. Globe 8vo. I, French. 4s.

Abridged French Grammar. By G. E. FASNACHT. Crown 8vo. 3s. An Elementary French Grammar. By G. E. FASNACHT. Globe 8vo. is. od.

French Lessons for Middle Forms. By G. E. FASNACHT. Crown 8vo.

Teacher's Companion to French Lessons for Middle Forms. By G. Eugène FASNACHT. Globe 8vo. 6s. 6d. net.

Select Specimens of the Great French Writers, 17th, 18th, and 19th Centuries. By G. E. FASNACHT. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

Le Théâtre à L'Ecole. By Lady Frazer. Globe 8vo. 1s. 3d.

Dictionary of the French and English Languages. By W. JAMES and A. Molé. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Kroeh's French Course. A Three Year Preparatory Course in French. By C. M. KROEH, A.M. Globe 8vo. First Year, 3s.; Second Year, 4s.; Third Year, 5s.

Simple Dramatic Scenes in Easy French. By Mrs. A. G. LATHAM. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 18. 3d.

Macmillan's Progressive French Course. By G. E. FASNACHT. Globe 8vo.

First Year, Easy Lessons on the Regular Accidence. 18. 3d.
Supplementary Exercises to First Year. 18. 3d.
Second Year, an Elementary Grammar, with Exercises, Notes, and Vocabularies,

2s. 6d.

Third Year, a Systematic Syntax, and Lessons in Composition. 3s.

The Teacher's Companion to the above. With Copious Notes, Hints for Different Renderings, Synonyms, Philological Remarks, etc. Globe 8vo. Each Year, 5s. 6d. net.

Macmillan's French Composition. By G. E. FASNACHT. First Course, Elementary, Globe 8vo, 3s. Second Course, Advanced, Crown 8vo, 6s. Second Course, Parts I. and II., Crown 8vo, 4s.

The Teacher's Companion to the above. Globe 8vo. First Course, 5s. 6d. net. Second Course, 6s. 6d. net.

WORKS ON

FRENCH GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

Macmillan's Progressive French Readers. By G. E. FASNACHT. Globe 8vo.

Ologo 800.

First Year, containing Tales, Historical Extracts, Letters, Dialogues, Ballads, Nursery Songs, etc., with Two Vocabularies: (1) In the order of Subjects; (2) In Alphabetical order. With Imitative Exercises. 3s.

Second Year, containing Fiction in Prose and Verse, Historical and Descriptive Extracts, Essays, Letters, Dialogues, etc. With Imitative Exercises. 3s.

La Lyre Française. By GUSTAVE MASSON. Selected and arranged with Notes, Pott 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.

French Verbs and Verbal Idioms in Speech. By B. and E. J. MÉRAS. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.

A Practical Introduction to French Phonetics. By G. G. NICHOLSON, B.A. Crown 8vo. 4s. French Roots and their Families. A Synthetic Vocabulary based upon

Derivations. By E. Pellissier, M.A., Lycée Rochefort. Globe 8vo. 7s. English Phrases and their French Equivalents. With Exercises.

By E. Pellissier, M.A. Crown 8vo. 3s, 6d.

New French Course for Schools. By C. COPLAND PERRY and ALBRECHT REUM. Crown 8vo. Part I., 2s, 6d. Part II., 4s.

Continents, Cités, Hommes. A New French Reading Book. By C. C. Perry, M.A., and André Turquet. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

Selection of French Idioms. By Madame PH. PLAN. With a Preface by F. F. ROGET. Globe 8vo. 4s.

French Course for Evening Classes. By A. C. Poiré. Globe 8vo.

First Year, 18. 3d. Second Year, 18. 9d. Carnet de Notes d'un Voyageur en France. By A. C. Poiré.

Crown 8vo. 18. 9d.

Elementary French Reader. By L. A. Roux. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

French Dialogues. A Systematic Introduction to the Grammar and Idiom of spoken French. By Joh. Storm, LL.D. Intermediate Course. Translated by G. Macdonald, M.A. Crown 8vo. 3s.

A French Grammar. By Hugo P. Thieme and John R. Effinger.

Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d. net.

Preliminary French Lessons. By Otto Siepmann and L. F. VERNOLS. Crown 8vo. 25.

BY OTTO SIEPMANN

Primary French Course (First Term). Lessons in Colloquial French. Crown 8vo. 18. 9d.

Primary French Course (Part I.), comprising a First Reader, Grammar, and Exercises. Crown 8vo. 3s. KEY, 4s. 6d. net. Word and Phrase Book, 6d.

Primary French Course (Part II.). Crown 8vo. 3s. KEY, 4s. 6d. net. Word and Phrase Book, 6d.

Primary French Course (Part III.). Crown 8vo. 3s. KEY, 6s. 6d. net. Word and Phrase Book, 6d.

Primary French Course (Part III.). Crown 8vo. 3s. KEY, 6s. 6d. net. Word and Phrase Book, 6d.

Coloured Wall Picture representing Incidents in the Primary French Course. On Roller. 18s. net.

A Short French Grammar. Crown 8vo. 3s.

A Public School French Primer. By OTTO SIEPMANN and EUGENE PELLISSIER Crown 8vo. 4s. KEY, 5s. 6d. net.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD., LONDON.



A STATE OF THE PARTY OF T THE PARTY OF THE P

LaF.Gr. F248mp.2

Fitte MacMillan's progressive French reader. Vol. 2.

232763

202/0

Author Fasnacht, G. Eugène

University of Toronto Library

DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket Under Pat. "Ref. Index File" Made by LIBRARY BUREAU

